

Johann Wolfgang von **GOETHE**

**DRAMATIC  
WORKS**

Elibron Classics



Johann Wolfgang von Goethe

# DRAMATIC WORKS

Elibron Classics  
[www.elibron.com](http://www.elibron.com)

Elibron Classics series.

© 2006 Adamant Media Corporation.

ISBN 0-543-94237-6 (paperback)


ISBN 0-543-94236-8 (hardcover)

This Elibron Classics book contains the complete text of the edition published in 1850 by Henry G. Bohn, London.

Elibron and Elibron Classics are trademarks of Adamant Media Corporation. All rights reserved.



This book is an accurate reproduction of the original. Any marks, names, colophons, imprints, logos or other symbols or identifiers that appear on or in this book, except for those of Adamant Media Corporation and BookSurge, LLC, are used only for historical reference and accuracy and are not meant to designate origin or imply any sponsorship by or license from any third party.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2022 with funding from  
Kahle/Austin Foundation

# CONTENTS

TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.....	5
INTRODUCTIONS. ....	9 — 21
Faust, (The Intermezzo), Iphigenia, Torquato Tasso, Egmont	
FAUST.....	23
IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS.....	201
TORQUATO TASSO.....	273
EGMONT.....	387
GOETZ VON BERLICHINGEN, Sir Walter Scott's	
Introduction.....	483
The Drama.....	487





## TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE

NOTWITHSTANDING the numerous versions of Faust which are already before the public,\* and the ability with which fragments of this great poem have been rendered into English verse, it is, I believe, admitted, that no translator has yet succeeded in embodying its entire spirit in a metrical form. How far I have been successful in accomplishing this difficult task, I must leave others to determine; I can only say that, impelled by admiration of the splendid poetry scattered through its pages, I have laboured diligently to render my translation a faithful reflection of the original, and if I have sometimes failed, it must not be attributed to any want of earnest endeavour.

To the merit of Mr. Hayward's prose version, I gladly record my humble testimony; yet, notwithstanding the occasional freedom unavoidable in metrical translations, I cannot agree with those who regard prose as an appropriate medium for the re-production, of poetry. In original composition, a natural relation is recognized as existing between thought and verse, inasmuch as the latter is the spontaneous utterance of the poetic mind, when, in moments of inspiration, it teems with

"Thoughts which voluntary move  
Harmonious numbers."

But the inspiring influence of such thoughts is also felt, when, instead of springing from the depths of the creative spirit, they are derived from a foreign source; and as the seed, if it take root, and spring forth anew, must produce a flower

"Like to the mother-plant in semblance,"

---

\* I am credibly informed that there are upwards of twenty complete versions in print, and even a greater number of fragments.

so the poetic thought can only find adequate expression in tones which harmonize with the music of the original verse.

A poet, in describing the pleasure attending the exercise of the creative faculty, exclaims —

“Oh! to create within the soul is bliss!”

A faint echo of this emotion accompanies the endeavour to body forth the conceptions of the inspired master, and hence it is that passages of the highest beauty are those which least tax the energies of the translator. Far more laborious is the attempt to render into verse ideas not essentially poetical; and the reader, perchance,

“Aware of nothing arduous in a task  
He never undertook,”

thinks little of

“The shifts and turns,  
The expedients and inventions multiform,  
To which the mind resorts in chase of terms,  
Though apt, yet coy, and difficult to win.”

The endeavour to render into English verse the finer passages of Faust, has been to me a source of the highest enjoyment; and if others derive any pleasure from the perusal of my translation, I shall feel amply rewarded for the labour attending the less inviting portions of my task.

I shall not attempt any analysis of the poem, but merely allude to what appears to me to be the fundamental idea underlying its varied and complicated elements, and which we find expressed in the prologue, in the words —

“A good man in the direful grasp of ill,  
His consciousness of right retaineth still.”

We have here a recognition of conscience as belonging to the deepest roots of man's inner life. The soul, whose inborn tendency it is

“To rush aloft, to struggle still towards heaven,”

can never derive permanent satisfaction from low and sensual gratifications; and when, from the misdirection of its

energies, or the ascendancy of the passions, the harmony of the spiritual nature is destroyed, the voice of the inward monitor is still heard in the recesses of the heart, and the agonies of remorse attest that its dictates can never be violated with impunity. This deep moral instinct has been characterized as "the handwriting of the creator on the soul," and is the ground of that reverent faith in humanity which ever distinguishes the noblest minds. But while thus recognizing the moral truth embodied in the poem, I deeply regret the blemishes which, in my opinion, disfigure its pages; it contains passages which I would fain have omitted or modified, had I not held it to be the imperative duty of a translator to render faithfully even the defects of the original.

To those who are curious in contemplating the growth of a work of art, and tracing it through its successive stages of development, *Faust* offers a study of peculiar interest. As early as the year 1774, we find Goethe reading the first scenes of the poem to Klopstock, during the visit of the latter to Frankfort; from that period, it was resumed at intervals till the year 1790, when it first appeared before the public in the form of "A Fragment." This fragment Schiller likened to the Torso of Hercules, "manifesting a vigour and exuberance which betrayed unmistakeably the hand of the great master;" it commences with the first monologue and ends with the scene in the cathedral; the scene with Valentine, together with some other passages, were introduced at a subsequent period. After the lapse of several years, Goethe's thoughts again reverted to *Faust*, and in 1797 he produced the Dedication, the Prologue for the Theatre, and the Prologue in Heaven. The *Intermezzo* must be referred to the same year. Goethe was continually urged by Schiller to the completion of the work, and the correspondence of the two poets at this period contains several interesting passages relative to its continuation and further development. It was not, however, till the year 1808, after it had been brooded over in the poet's mind for upwards of thirty years, that the first part of *Faust* was published in its present form. In

compiling the foregoing brief sketch of the progress of the poem, I have followed Düntzer's recent work upon Faust.

My translations of Iphigenia and of the first act of Tasso have already appeared in a volume, entitled "Selections from the Dramas of Goethe and Schiller." The remainder of the Tasso, together with my versions of Faust and of Egmont, are published now for the first time.

In Goethe's "Dichtung and Wahrheit," known in England as his Autobiography, we have an account of the origin of Goëtz von Berlichingen, to which an interest attaches from its having been the first great dramatic work of the author, and also from its translation being among the earliest literary efforts of Sir Walter Scott. When he undertook the task his knowledge of German must have been very imperfect, as his version abounds with errors; these have been corrected in the present edition, and omissions of some length supplied. My publisher has assisted in the alterations, and is responsible for the greater number of them.

A. S.

LONDON,  
November, 1850.



## FAUST. — THE INTERMEZZO

As without some key this scene is utterly incomprehensible to the English reader, a brief notice of some of the allusions it contains is here subjoined; they are dwelt upon at greater length in Düntzer's work.

It may be regarded as a kind of satirical *jeu d'esprit*, and consists of a series of epigrams, directed against a variety of false tendencies in art, literature, religion, philosophy, and political life.

The introductory stanzas are founded upon the *Midsummer Night's Dream*, and Wieland's *Oberon*. To celebrate the reconciliation of the fairy king and queen a grotesque assemblage of figures appear upon the stage. Common-place musicians, and poetasters, having no conception that every poem must be an organic whole, are satirized as the bagpipe, the embryo spirit, and the little pair. Then follows a series of epigrams, having reference to the plastic arts, and directed against that false pietism and affected purity which would take a narrow and one-sided view of artistical creations. Nicolai, the sworn enemy of ghosts and Jesuits, is introduced as the inquisitive traveller, and Stolberg, who severely criticised Schiller's poem, "The Gods of Greece," is alluded to in the couplet headed "Orthodox."

Hennings, the editor of two literary journals, entitled the *Musaget*, and the *Genius of the Age*, had attacked the *Xenien*, a series of epigrams, published jointly by Goethe and Schiller; Goethe, in retaliation, makes him confess his own unfitness to be a leader of the Muses, and his readiness to assign a place on the German Parnassus to any one who was willing to bow to his authority. Nicolai again appears as the inquisitive traveller, and Lavater is said to be alluded to as the crane. The metaphysical philosophers are next the objects of the poet's satire; allusion is made to the bitter hostility manifested by the contending schools, the characteristics of

which are so well known that it is needless to dwell upon them here. The philosophers are succeeded by the politicians; "the knowing ones," who, in the midst of political revolutions, manage to keep in with the ruling party, are contrasted with those unfortunate individuals who are unable to accommodate themselves to the new order of things. In revolutionary times also, parvenus are raised to positions of eminence, while worthless notabilities, deprived of their hereditary splendour, are unable to maintain their former dignified position. "The massive ones" typify the men of the revolution, the leaders of the people, who, heedless of intervening obstacles, march straight on to their destined goal. Puck and Ariel, who had introduced the shadowy procession, again make their appearance, and the fairy pageant vanishes into air.

What relation this fantastic assemblage bears to Faust is not immediately obvious, unless, indeed, as Düntzer suggests, the poet meant to shadow forth the various distractions with which Mephistophiles endeavours to dissipate the mind of Faust, who had turned with disgust from the witch-society of the Brocken.

## INTRODUCTION. — IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS

THE drama of 'IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS' has been considered Goethe's masterpiece; it is conceived in the spirit of Greek ideality, and is characterized throughout by moral beauty and dignified repose. Schlegel\* styles it an echo of Greek song, an epithet as appropriate as it is elegant; for, without any servile imitation of classic models, this beautiful drama, through the medium of its polished verse, reproduces in softened characters the graceful and colossal forms of the antique.

The destiny of Agamemnon and his race was a favourite theme of the ancients. It has been dramatized in a variety of forms by the three great masters of antiquity; and from these various sources Goethe has gathered the materials for his drama, enriching it with touches of sublimity and beauty selected indiscriminately from the works of each. The description of the Furies in the third act is worthy of Æschylus, and in the spirit of the same great writer is the exclusion of these terrific powers from the consecrated grove, symbolical of the peace which religion can alone afford to the anguish of a wounded conscience. The prominence given to the idea of destiny, together with the finished beauty of the whole, remind us of Sophocles; while the passages conveying general moral truths, scattered throughout the poem, not unfrequently recall to our recollection those of a similar character in the dramas of Euripides.

Two dramas of Euripides are founded upon the well-known story of Iphigenia. In the 'Iphigenia in Aulis,' we are introduced to the assembled hosts of Greece, detained by contrary winds in consequence of Diana's anger against Agamemnon. An oracle had declared that the Goddess could

---

\* Dramatic Literature, Bohn's edition, page 518.

only be propitiated by the sacrifice of Iphigenia, who is accordingly allured with her mother to the camp. On discovering the fearful doom which awaits her, she is at first overwhelmed with grief. She implores her father to spare her life, endeavours to touch his heart by recalling the fond memories of by-gone times, and holds up her infant brother, Orestes, that he may plead for her with his tears. Learning however that the glory of her country depends upon her death, she rises superior to her fears, subdues her womanly weakness, and devotes herself a willing sacrifice for Greece. She is conducted to the altar, the sacred garlands are bound around her head, Calchas lifts the knife to deal the fatal stroke, when Iphigenia suddenly vanishes, and a hind of uncommon beauty lies bleeding at his feet.

In the 'IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS,' our heroine re-appears, in the temple of Diana, situated in the Tauric Chersonese, a savage region washed by the Euxine Sea, where, according to the ancients, all strangers were sacrificed at the altar of Diana. To this wild shore Iphigenia had been conveyed by the pitying goddess, and there, in her character of priestess, she presided over the bloody rites of the barbarians. The incidents in this drama have been adopted by Goethe as the groundwork of his poem, the chief interest in which, as in the drama of Euripides, turns upon the departure of Iphigenia and Orestes from the Taurian shore. A brief outline of the Grecian drama will show in what particulars the modern poet has adhered to his classic model, and where he has deviated from it.

The scene of both is in the vicinity of the temple of Diana. In the opening soliloquy of the Grecian drama, Iphigenia, after lamenting her unhappy destiny, relates her dream of the previous night, from which she infers the death of Orestes. She determines to offer a libation to his memory, and while engaged in performing this pious rite, she is informed that two strangers have been captured on the shore, for whose sacrifice she is commanded to prepare. Orestes and Pylades are shortly after introduced, and, learning from the former that he is a native of Argos, she offers to spare his



life provided he will carry a letter for her to Mycene. He refuses to abandon his friend; Pylades is equally disinterested; a generous contest ensues, and the latter, yielding at length to the entreaties of Orestes, consents to accept life on the proposed conditions. The letter addressed to Orestes is produced, and Iphigenia discovers her brother in the intended victim. They anxiously consider how they may escape, and Iphigenia suggests that in her character of priestess she shall lead them, together with the image of Diana, to the sea, there to be purified in the ocean waves, where they may find safety in the attendant bark. With all the wily subtlety of a Greek, she imposes upon the credulity of the barbarian monarch, and induces him not only to sanction her project, but to assist in its execution, which she at length successfully achieves. In this drama, Iphigenia, though exhibiting some noble traits, offends us by her unscrupulous violation of the truth, and by the cunning artifice which Goethe, with admirable art, has attributed to Pylades. We are the more displeased with this portrait, because we are unwilling to recognize in the crafty priestess the innocent victim, who so strongly awakens our sympathy in the beautiful drama of 'Iphigenia in Aulis.' In the Iphigenia of Goethe, on the contrary, we discover with pleasure the same filial tenderness, and the same touching mixture of timidity and courage which characterized that interesting heroine.

In the drama of Euripides we are chiefly interested in the generous friendship of Orestes and Pylades: in that of Goethe the character of Iphigenia constitutes the chief charm, and awakens our warmest sympathy. While contemplating her, we feel as if some exquisite statue of Grecian art had become animated by a living soul, and moved and breathed before us: though exhibiting the severe simplicity which characterizes the creations of antiquity, she is far removed from all coldness and austerity; and her character, though cast in a classic mould, is free from that harsh and vindictive spirit which darkened the heroism of those barbarous times when religion lent her sanction to hatred and revenge.

The docility with which, in opposition to her own feelings, she at first consents to the stratagem of Pylades, though apparently inconsistent with her reverence for truth, is in reality a beautiful and touching trait. The conflict in her mind between intense anxiety for her brother's safety, and detestation of the artifice by which alone she thinks it can be secured, amounts almost to agony; in her extremity she calls upon the Gods, and implores them to save their image in her soul. The struggle finally subsides; she remains faithful to her high convictions, reveals the project of escape, and thus saves her soul from treachery. From the commencement of the fifth act she assumes a calm and lofty tone, as if feeling the inspiration of a noble purpose. The dignity and determination with which she opposes the cruel project of the barbarian king, remind us of the similar qualities displayed by the Antigone of Sophocles, who is perhaps the noblest heroine of antiquity. Thus when called upon by the king to reverence the law, Iphigenia appeals to that law written in the heart, more ancient and more sacred than the ordinances of man; and Antigone, when by the interment of her brother Polynices, she has incurred the anger of the tyrant Creon, and become subjected to a cruel death, justifies herself by an appeal to the same sacred authority.

The remaining characters of the drama, though subordinate to the central figure, are in admirable keeping with it, the poet having softened down the harsh features of the barbarians, so as not to form too abrupt a contrast with the more polished Greeks, and thereby interfere with the harmony of the piece. The colossal figures of the Titans appearing in the background, and the dread power of Destiny overarching all, impart a character of solemn grandeur to the whole.

## INTRODUCTION. — TORQUATO TASSO

THE annals of biography offer no page the perusal of which awakens a greater variety of emotions than that which records the fate of Torquato Tasso. This great poet, distinguished alike by his genius and his misfortunes, concentrates in his own person the deepest interests of humanity; while the mystery which broods over his derangement and his love, imparts to his story the air rather of poetic fiction than of sober truth. Goethe's poem, founded upon the residence of Tasso at the court of Ferrara, is justly celebrated for its fine delineations of character and its profound insight into the depths of the human heart. It exhibits a striking picture of the great bard at the most momentous period of his existence, which was signalized by the completion of his immortal work; and though the action of the drama embraces only a few hours, by skilfully availing himself of retrospect and anticipation, Goethe has presented us with a beautiful epitome of the poet's life.

Thus, in the third scene of the drama, Tasso alludes to his early childhood, the sorrows of which he has so pathetically sung; we accompany the youthful bard, in his twenty-second year, to the brilliant court of Ferrara, where he arrived at a period when the nuptials of the Duke with the Emperor's sister were celebrated with unrivalled splendour. At the conclusion of these festivities, he was presented by the Princess Lucretia to her sister, Leonora, who was destined to exert such a powerful influence over his future life; we behold him the honoured and cherished inmate of Belriguardo, a magnificent palace, surrounded by beautiful gardens, where the Dukes of Ferrara were accustomed to retire with their most favoured courtiers, and where, under the inspiring influences of love, beauty, and court favour, he completed his 'Gerusalemme Liberata,' one of the proudest monuments of human genius.

Goethe has with great skill made us acquainted with some of the circumstances which, acting upon the peculiar temperament of the poet, at length induced the mental disorder which cast so dark a shadow over his later years. His hopeless love for Leonora no doubt conspired with other causes to unsettle his fine intellect, — a calamity which in him appears like the bewilderment of a mind suddenly awakened, from the visions of poetry and love passionately cherished for so many years, into the cold realities of actual life, where his too sensitive ear was stunned by the harsh and discordant voices of envy and superstition. We are thus prepared for his distracted flight from Ferrara, and Goethe has introduced prospectively the touching incident related by Manso, — how, in the disguise of a shepherd, he presented himself to his sister Cornelia, to whom he related his story in language so pathetic, that she fainted from the violence of her grief.

His return to Ferrara, his imprisonment in the Hospital of Santa Anna, and his subsequent miserable wanderings from city to city, are not mentioned in the drama; but the allusion of Alphonso to the crown which should adorn him on the Capitol, brings to our remembrance the affecting circumstances of his death.

It appears from his letters, that at one period of his life, he earnestly desired a triumph similar to that which Petrarca had enjoyed; but when at length this honour was accorded him, when a period was assigned for this splendid pageant, a change had come over his spirit. His long sufferings had weaned his thoughts from earth; he felt that the hand of death was upon him, and hoped — to use his own words — “to go crowned, not as a poet to the Capitol, but with glory as a saint to Heaven.” On the eve of the day appointed for the ceremony, he expired at the monastery of Saint Onofrio, and his remains, habited in a magnificent toga, and adorned with a laurel crown, were carried in procession through the streets of Rome.

Goethe has faithfully portrayed the times in which Tasso lived, and circumstances apparently trivial have an historical significance, and impart an air of reality to the



drama. Thus the fanciful occupation and picturesque attire of the Princess and Countess at the opening of the piece, transport us at once to that graceful court where the pastoral drama was invented and refined, and where, not long before, Tasso's 'Aminta,' which is considered one of the most beautiful specimens of this species of composition, had been performed for the first time with enthusiastic applause.

The crown adorning the bust of Ariosto, together with the enthusiastic admiration expressed for that poet by Antonio, is likewise characteristic of the age. The 'Orlando Furioso' had been composed at the same court about fifty years before, and had become so universally popular, that, according to Bernardo Tasso, the father of Torquato, "neither learned man nor artisan, no youth, no maid, no old man, could be satisfied with a single perusal;" — "passengers in the streets, sailors in their boats, and virgins in their chambers, sang for their disport the stanzas of Ariosto\*."

The project of dethroning this monarch of Parnassus, or, at least, of placing upon his own brow a crown as glorious, appears from his own letters early to have awakened the ambition of Tasso.

The subordinate characters of the drama are also historical portraits. Alphonso II. is represented by his biographers as the liberal patron of the arts, and as treating Tasso at this period with marked consideration; nor had he yet manifested that implacable and revengeful spirit which has rendered his memory justly hateful to posterity. In the relation which subsisted between this prince and Tasso, Goethe has exhibited the evils resulting from the false spirit of patronage prevalent at that period throughout Italy, when talent was regarded as the necessary appendage of rank, and works of genius were considered as belonging rather to the patron than to the individual by whom they had been produced.

Antonio Montecatino, the Duke's secretary, is also drawn from life. He is an admirable personification of that

---

\* Black's Life of Tasso.

spirit of worldly wisdom which looks principally to material results, and contemplates promotion and court favour as the highest objects of ambition. This "earth-born prudence," having little sympathy with poetic genius, affects to treat it with contempt, resents as presumptuous its violation of ordinary rules, holds up its foibles and eccentricities to ridicule, and at the same time envies the homage paid to it by mankind.

At the period of the drama, the court of Ferrara was graced by the presence of Leonora, Countess of Scandiano, in whom Goethe has portrayed a woman eminently graceful and accomplished, but who fails to win our sympathy because her ruling sentiment is vanity. Tasso paid to this young beauty the tribute of public homage, and addressed to her some of his most beautiful sonnets; according to Ginguené, however, his sentiment for her was merely poetical, and could easily ally itself with the more genuine, deep, and constant affection which he entertained for Leonora of Este.

Lucretia and Leonora of Este were the daughters of Renée of France, celebrated for her insatiable thirst for knowledge, and for the variety and depth of her studies. She became zealously attached to the tenets of the Reformers, in consequence of which she was deprived of her children, and closely imprisoned for twelve years.

To the intellectual power, the knowledge, heresy, and consequent misfortunes of her unhappy mother, the Princess Leonora twice alludes in the course of the drama. The daughters of this heroic woman inherited her mental superiority, and Leonora, the younger, is celebrated by various writers for her genius, learning, beauty, and early indifference to the pleasures of the world.

## INTRODUCTION. — EGMONT

IN Schiller's critique upon the tragedy of Egmont, Goethe is censured for departing from the truth of history in the delineation of his hero's character, and also for misrepresenting the circumstances of his domestic life. The Egmont of history left behind him a numerous family, anxiety for whose welfare detained him in Brussels when most of his friends sought safety in flight. His withdrawal would have entailed the confiscation of his property, and he shrank from exposing to privation those whose happiness was dearer to him than life; — a consideration which he repeatedly urged in his conferences with the Prince of Orange, when the latter insisted upon the necessity of escape. We see here, not the victim of a blind and fool-hardy confidence, as portrayed in Goethe's drama, but the husband and father, regardless of his personal safety in anxiety for the interests of his family.

I shall not inquire which conception is best suited for the purposes of art, but merely subjoin a few extracts from the same critique, in which Schiller does ample justice to Goethe's admirable delineation of the age and country in which the drama is cast, and which are peculiarly valuable from the pen of so competent an authority as the historian of the Fall of the Netherlands.

"Egmont's tragical death resulted from the relation in which he stood to the nation and the government; hence the action of the drama is intimately connected with the political life of the period — an exhibition of which forms its indispensable groundwork. But if we consider what an infinite number of minute circumstances must concur in order to exhibit the spirit of an age, and the political condition of a people, and the art required to combine so many isolated features into an intelligible and organic whole; and if we contemplate, moreover, the peculiar character of the Netherlands, consisting not of one nation, but of an aggregate of many smaller states, separated from each other

by the sharpest contrasts, we shall not cease to wonder at the creative genius, which, triumphing over all these difficulties, conjures up before us, as with an enchanter's wand, the Netherlands of the sixteenth century.

"Not only do we behold these men living and working before us, we dwell among them as their familiar associates; we see on the one hand, the joyous sociability, the hospitality, the loquacity, the somewhat boastful temper of the people, their republican spirits, ready to boil up at the slightest innovation, and often subsiding again as rapidly on the most trivial grounds; and on the other hand, we are made acquainted with the burthens under which they groaned, from the new mitres of the bishops, to the French psalms which they were forbidden to sing; — nothing is omitted, no feature introduced which does not bear the stamp of nature and of truth. Such delineation is not the result of premeditated effort, nor can it be commanded by art; it can only be achieved by the poet whose mind is thoroughly imbued with his subject; from him such traits escape unconsciously, and without design, as they do from the individuals whose characters they serve to portray.

"The few scenes in which the citizens of Brussels are introduced appear to us to be the result of profound study, and it would be difficult to find, in so few words, a more admirable historical monument of the Netherlands of that period.

"Equally graphic is that portion of the picture which portrays the spirit of the government, though it must be confessed that the artist has here somewhat softened down the harsher features of the original. This is especially true in reference to the character of the Duchess of Parma. Before his Duke of Alva we tremble, without however turning from him with aversion; he is a firm, rigid, inaccessible character; 'a brazen tower without gates, the garrison of which must be furnished with wings.' The prudent forecast with which he makes his arrangements for Egmont's arrest, excites our admiration, while it removes him from our sympathy. The



remaining characters of the drama are delineated with a few masterly strokes. The subtle, taciturn Orange, with his timid, yet comprehensive and all-combining mind, is depicted in a single scene. Both Alva and Egmont are mirrored in the men by whom they are surrounded. This mode of delineation is admirable. The poet, in order to concentrate the interest upon Egmont, has isolated his hero, and omitted all mention of Count Horn, who shared the same melancholy fate."

The appendix to Schiller's *History of the Fall of the Netherlands* contains an interesting account of the trial and execution of the Counts Egmont and Horn, which is, however, too long for insertion here.



# FAUST

## DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

### *Characters in the Prologue for the Theatre*

THE MANAGER

THE DRAMATIC POET

MERRYMAN

### *Characters in the Prologue in Heaven*

THE LORD

RAPHAEL

GABRIEL

MICHAEL

} *The Heavenly Hosts*

MEPHISTOPHELES

### *Characters in the Tragedy*

FAUST

MEPHISTOPHELES

WAGNER, *a Student*

MARGARET

MARTHA, *Margaret's Neighbour*

VALENTINE, *Margaret's Brother*

OLD PEASANT

A STUDENT

ELIZABETH, *an acquaintance of Margaret's*

FROSCH

BRANDER

SIEBEL

ALTMAYER

} *Guests in Auerbach Wine-Cellar*

Witches, old and young; Wizards, Will-o'the-Wisp, Witch  
 Pedlar, Protophantasmist, Servibilis, Monkeys, Spirits,  
 Journeymen, Country-Folk, Citizens, Beggar, Old  
 Fortune-Teller, Shepherd, Soldier, Students, &c.

*In the Intermezzo*

OBERON

TITANIA

ARIEL.

PUCK, &c., &c.

## DEDICATION

DIM forms, ye hover near, a shadowy train,  
 As erst upon my troubl'd sight ye stole.  
 Shall I yet strive to hold you once again?  
 Still for the fond illusion yearns my soul?  
 Ye press around! Come then, resume your reign,  
 As upwards from the vapoury mist ye roll,  
 Within my breast youth's throbbing pulses bound,  
 Fann'd by the magic air that breathes around.

Shades fondly-loved appear, your train attending,  
 And visions fair of many a blissful day;  
 First-love and friendship their fond accents blending,  
 Like to some dim, traditionary lay;  
 Sorrow revives, her wail of anguish sending  
 Back o'er life's chequer'd labyrinthine way,  
 Recalling cherish'd friends, in life's fair morn,  
 From my embrace, by cruel fortune torn.

Alas! my closing song they hear no more,  
 The friends, for whom my earlier strains I sang;  
 Dispers'd the throng who greeted me of yore,  
 And mute the voices that responsive rang;  
 My tuneful grief 'mong strangers now I pour,  
 E'en their applauding tones inflict a pang,  
 And those to whom my music once seem'd sweet,  
 If yet on earth, are scatter'd ne'er to meet.

A strange, unwonted longing doth upraise  
 To yon calm spirit-realm my yearning soul!  
 In soften'd cadence, as when Zephyr plays  
 With Æol's harp, my tuneful numbers roll;  
 My pulses thrill, the tear unbidden strays,  
 My steadfast heart resigns its self-control;  
 As from afar the present meets my view,  
 While what hath pass'd away alone seems true.





## PROLOGUE FOR THE THEATRE

MANAGER, DRAMATIC POET, MERRYMAN

### MANAGER

Ye twain, whom I so oft have found  
 True friends in trouble and distress,  
 Say, in our scheme on German ground,  
 What prospect have we of success?  
 Fain would I please the public, win their thanks;  
 They live and let live, that I call fair play;  
 The posts are ready fix'd, and laid the planks,  
 And all anticipate a treat to-day.  
 They've ta'en their places, and with eyebrows rais'd,  
 Sit patiently, and fain would be amaz'd.  
 I know the art to hit the public taste,  
 Yet so perplex'd I ne'er have been before;  
 'Tis true, they're not accusom'd to the best,  
 But then they read immensely, that's the bore.  
 How make our entertainment striking, new,  
 And yet significant and pleasing too?  
 For to be plain, I love to see the throng,  
 As to our booth the living tide progresses;  
 As wave on wave successive rolls along,  
 And through the narrow gate in tumult presses.  
 Still in broad day, ere yet the clock strikes four,  
 Their way to the receiver's box they take;  
 And, as in famine at the baker's door,  
 For tickets are content their necks to break.  
 Such various minds the bard alone can sway,  
 My friend, oh work this miracle to-day!

### POET

Oh speak not of the motley multitude,  
 Whose aspect puts each gentler thought to flight;  
 Shut out the noisy crowd, whose vortex rude  
 Draws down the spirit with resistless might.  
 Lead me to some still nook, where none intrude,

Where only for the bard blooms pure delight,  
 Where love and friendship, fair angelic powers,  
 Crown with the heart's best joys the circling hours

What in the spirit's depths was there conceiv'd,  
 What there the timid lip shap'd forth in sound,  
 Imperfect now, now adequate believ'd,  
 In the wild tumult of the hour is drown'd;  
 The perfect work, through years of toil achiev'd,  
 Appears, at length, with finish'd beauty crown'd;  
 What dazzles satisfies the present hour,  
 The genuine lives, of coming years the dower.

#### MERRYMAN

This cant about posterity I hate;  
 About posterity were I to prate,  
 Who then the living would amuse, for they  
 Require diversion, ay, and 'tis their due.  
 A sprightly fellow's presence at your play,  
 Methinks should always go for something too;  
 Whose ready wit a genial vein inspires,  
 He'll ne'er be wounded by the captious throng;  
 A wider circle doubtless he desires,  
 Where sympathy exalts the power of song.  
 To work, then! Prove a master in your art!  
 Fancy invoke, with all her choral train —  
 Let reason, passion, feeling, bear their part,  
 But mark! let folly mingle in the strain.

#### MANAGER

And chief, let incidents enough arise!  
 A show they want, they come to feast their eyes.  
 When stirring scenes before them are display'd  
 At which the wond'ring multitude may gaze,  
 Your reputation is already made,  
 And popular applause your toil repays.  
 A mass alone will with the mass succeed,  
 Then each at length selects what he requires  
 Who bringeth much, of many suits the need,  
 And each contented from the house retires.  
 What though your drama should like patchwork show,

No matter — the ragout will take, I know;  
 As easy 'tis to serve as to invent.  
 A finish'd whole what boots it to present,  
 'Twill be in pieces by the public rent.

POET

How mean such handicraft you cannot feel!  
 How it degrades the genuine artist's mind!  
 The bungling work in which these coxcombs deal,  
 Is an establish'd maxim here, I find.

MANAGER

Such a reproof disturbs me not a whit!  
 Who on efficient working is intent,  
 Must choose the most appropriate instrument.  
 Consider! 'tis soft wood you have to split;  
 Remember too for whom you write, I pray!  
 One comes perchance to while an hour away;  
 One from the festive board, a sated guest;  
 Others, whom more I dread than all the rest,  
 From journal-reading hurry to the play.  
 With absent minds, as to a masque they press,  
 By curiosity alone drawn here;  
 Ladies display their persons and their dress,  
 And without pay in character appear.  
 What dreams beguile you on your poet's height?  
 What puts a full house in a merry mood?  
 More closely view your patrons of the night,  
 Half are unfeeling, half uncultur'd, rude.  
 One hopes the night in wanton joy to spend,  
 Another's thinking of a game of cards;  
 Why, ye poor fools, for such a paltry end,  
 Plague the coy muse, and court her fair regards?  
 Only give more and more, 'tis all I ask;  
 Thus you will ne'er stray widely from the goal;  
 Your audience seek to mystify, cajole; —  
 To satisfy them — that's a harder task.  
 Ah! what comes o'er you? rapture or vexation?

POET

Depart! elsewhere another servant 'choose!

What! shall the bard his godlike power abuse?  
 Man's loftiest right, kind nature's high bequest,  
 For your mean purpose basely sport away?  
 Whence comes his mast'ry o'er the human breast?  
 What bends the elements beneath his sway?  
 Oh, is it not his own poetic soul,  
 Whose gushing harmony, with strong control,  
 Draws back into his heart the wondrous whole?  
 When round her spindle, with unceasing drone,  
 Nature still whirls th' unending thread of life;  
 When Being's jarring crowds, together thrown,  
 Mingle in harsh inextricable strife;  
 Whose spirit quickens the unvarying round,  
 And bids it flow to music's measur'd tone?  
 Who calls the individual to resound,  
 With nature's chords in noble unison?  
 Who hears the voice of passion in the storm?  
 Who sees the flush of thought in evening's glow?  
 Who lingers fondly round the lov'd one's form,  
 Spring's fairest blossoms in her path to strow?  
 Who from unmeaning leaves a wreath doth twine  
 For glory, gather'd in whatever field?  
 Who raises mortals to the realms divine? —  
 Man's lofty spirit in the bard reveal'd.

#### MERRYMAN

Come then, employ your lofty inspiration,  
 And carry on the poet's avocation,  
 Just as we carry on a love-affair.  
 Fortune together brings a youthful pair;  
 They're touch'd, their spirits rise with fond elation,  
 Insensibly they're link'd, they scarce know how;  
 Fortune seems now propitious, adverse now,  
 Then come alternate rapture and despair;  
 And 'tis a true romance ere one's aware.  
 Just such a drama let us now compose!  
 Plunge boldly into life — its depths disclose!  
 Each lives it, not to many is it known,  
 'Twill interest wheresoever seiz'd and shown;  
 Bright pictures, but obscure their meaning,  
 A ray of truth through error gleaming,



This is the best elixir you can brew,  
 To charm mankind, and edify them too.  
 Then youth's fair blossoms crowd to view your play,  
 And wait as on an oracle; while they,  
 The tender souls, who love the melting mood,  
 Suck from your work their melancholy food;  
 With wonder and delight they witness there,  
 The secret working of their hearts laid bare;  
 Their tears, their laughter you command with ease;  
 The dazzling, the illusive still they love,  
 Still doth each lofty thought their reverence move,  
 Your finish'd gentlemen you ne'er can please,  
 A growing mind alone will grateful prove.

#### POET

Then give me back youth's golden prime,  
 When my own spirit too was growing,  
 When from my heart th' unbidden rhyme  
 Gush'd forth, a fount for ever flowing,  
 Then shadowy mist the world conceal'd,  
 Through vales, with odorous blooms inlaid,  
 Culling a thousand flowers I stray'd,  
 And every bud sweet promise made,  
 Of wonders still to be reveal'd.  
 Nought had I, yet a rich profusion;  
 The thirst for truth, joy in each fond illusion.  
 Give me unquell'd those impulses to prove; —  
 Rapture so deep, its ecstasy was pain,  
 The power of hate, the energy of love,  
 Give me, oh give me back, my youth again!

#### MERRYMAN

Youth, my good friend, you certainly require  
 When foes in battle round you press,  
 When a fair maid, her heart on fire,  
 Hangs on your neck with fond caress;  
 When from afar, the victor's crown,  
 Allures you in the race to run;  
 Or when in revelry you drown  
 Your sense, the whirling dance being done.  
 But the familiar chords among

Boldly to sweep, with graceful cunning,  
 While to its goal, the verse along  
 Its winding path is sweetly running;  
 With you, old gentlemen, this duty lies;  
 Nor are you thence less rev'rend in our eyes;  
 That age doth make us childish; some maintain —  
 No, it but finds us children once again.

#### MANAGER

A truce to words, mere empty sound,  
 Let deeds at length appear, my friends;  
 While idle compliments you round,  
 You might achieve some useful ends.  
 Why talk of the poetic vein?  
 Who hesitates will never know it;  
 If bards ye are, as ye maintain,  
 Now let your inspiration show it.  
 To you our present need is known,  
 Strong draughts will suit our taste alone;  
 Come, brew me such without delay!  
 That which to-day is not begun,  
 Is on the morrow still undone!  
 In dallying never lose a day!  
 Resolve should grasp, as if inspir'd,  
 The Possible, with courage bold,  
 Then she will ne'er resign her hold,  
 But labour on with zeal untir'd.

On German boards, you're well aware,  
 The taste of each may have full sway;  
 Therefore in bringing out your play,  
 Nor scenes nor mechanism spare.  
 The lights of heaven, both great and small, produce;  
 Squander away the stars, expend  
 Fire, rocks, and water, without end;  
 And birds and beasts of all kinds introduce.  
 Thus the whole circle of creation bring  
 Within the girdle of our wooden shell,  
 And with considerate speed, on fancy's wing,  
 Journey from heaven, thence through the earth, to hell.

## PROLOGUE IN HEAVEN

THE LORD. THE HEAVENLY HOSTS. *Afterwards*  
MEPHISTOPHELES

*The three Archangels come forward*

RAPHAEL

Still quiring as in ancient time  
With brother spheres in rival song,  
The sun with thunder-march sublime  
Moves his predestin'd course along.  
Angels are strengthen'd by his sight,  
Though fathom him no angel may;  
Resplendent are the orbs of light,  
As on creation's primal day.

GABRIEL

And lightly spins earth's gorgeous sphere,  
Swifter than thought its rapid flight;  
Alternates Eden-brightness clear,  
With solemn, dread-inspiring night;  
The foaming waves, with murmurs hoarse,  
Against the rocks' deep base are hurl'd;  
And in the sphere's eternal course,  
Are rocks and ocean swiftly whirl'd.

MICHAEL

And rival tempests rush amain  
From sea to land, from land to sea,  
And raging form a wondrous chain  
Of deep mysterious agency.  
Full in the thunder's fierce career,  
Flaming the swift destructions play;  
But, Lord, thy messengers revere  
The mild procession of thy day.

## THE THREE

Angels are strengthen'd by the sight,  
 Though fathom thee no angel may;  
 Thy works still shine with splendour bright,  
 As on creation's primal day.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Since, Lord, thy levee thou again dost hold,  
 To learn how all things are progressing here,  
 Since thou hast kindly welcom'd me of old,  
 Thou see'st me now among thy suite appear.  
 Excuse me, fine harangues I cannot make,  
 Though all the circle look on me with scorn;  
 My pathos soon thy laughter would awake,  
 Had'st thou the laughing mood not long forsworn.  
 Concerning suns and worlds I've nought to say,  
 I but consider man's self-torturing lot,  
 As wondrous now as on creation's day,  
 His stamp the little world-god changeth not.  
 A somewhat better life he'd lead, poor wight,  
 But for thy gift, a gleam of heavenly light;  
 Reason he calls it, and doth use it so,  
 That e'en than brutes more brutish he doth grow.  
 With all due deference he appears to me  
 Much like your long-legged grasshopper to be,  
 Which flits about, and flying bounds along,  
 Then in the grass sings his familiar song;  
 Would he but always in the grass repose!  
 In every dirty place he thrusts his nose.

## THE LORD

Hast thou nought else to say? Is thy sole aim  
 In coming here, as ever, but to blame?  
 Does nothing on the earth to thee seem right?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

No, Lord! Things there are in a wretched plight.  
 Men's sorrow from my heart I so deplore,  
 E'en I would not torment the poor things more.

## THE LORD

Say, is to thee my servant, Faustus, known?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

The doctor?

## THE LORD

Him I mean.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Well, we must own,  
His service in a curious way is shown.  
Poor fool! He liveth not on earthly food  
An inward impulse hurries him afar,  
Himself half conscious of his frenzied mood;  
From heaven he claims its brightest star,  
From earth demands its highest good,  
Nor can their gather'd treasures soothe to rest,  
The cravings of his agitated breast.

## THE LORD

Though now he serve me with imperfect sight,  
I will ere long conduct him to the light.  
The gard'ner knoweth, when the green appears,  
That flowers and fruit will crown the coming years.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

What wilt thou wager? Mine he yet shall be,  
Let me, with thy permission, be but free,  
Him my own way with quiet lure to guide!

## THE LORD

So long as on the earth he doth abide,  
So long it shall not be forbidden thee!  
Man, while he striveth, still is prone to err.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I'm much oblig'd, the dead delight not me!  
The plump fresh cheek of youth I much prefer.  
I'm not at home to corpses; 'tis my way,  
Like cats with captive mice to toy and play.



## THE LORD

Enough! it is permitted thee! Divert  
 This mortal spirit from his source divine,  
 And, can'st thou seize on him, thy power exert  
 To draw him downward, and to make him thine.  
 Then stand abash'd, when baffl'd thou shalt own,  
 A good man, in the direful grasp of ill,  
 His consciousness of right retaineth still.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Well, well, — the wager will be quickly won.  
 For my success no fears I entertain;  
 And if my end I finally should gain,  
 Excuse my triumphing with all my soul.  
 Dust he shall eat, ay, and with relish take,  
 As did of yore, my cousin, the old snake.

## THE LORD

Here too thou'rt free to act without control.  
 Towards such as thou, I entertain no hate.  
 Among the spirits of denial, thee,  
 The scoffer, I esteem least reprobate.  
 Prone to relax is man's activity;  
 In indolent repose he fain would live;  
 Hence this companion purposely I give,  
 Who stirs, excites, and must, as devil, work.  
 But ye, the genuine sons of heaven, rejoice!  
 In the full living beauty still rejoice!  
 Let the creative power your spirits bound  
 With love's eternal and benign control,  
 And Being's changeful forms that hover round,  
 Arrest in thoughts, enduring as the soul.

*(Heaven closes, the Archangels disperse)*

MEPHISTOPHELES (*alone*)

The ancient one I like sometimes to see,  
 And not to break with him am always civil;  
 'Tis courteous in a lord so great as he,  
 To speak so kindly even to the devil.

*Night**A high vaulted narrow Gothic chamber**FAUST restless seated at his desk*

## FAUST

I've now alas! Philosophy,  
 Med'cine and Jurisprudence too,  
 And to my cost Theology,  
 With ardent labour studied through.  
 And here I stand, with all my lore,  
 Poor fool, no wiser than before.  
 Master, ay doctor styl'd, indeed,  
 Already these ten years I lead,  
 Up, down, across, and to and fro,  
 My pupils by the nose, and learn,  
 That we in truth can nothing know!  
 This in my heart like fire doth burn.  
 True, I've more wit than all your solemn fools;  
 Priests, doctors, scribes, magisters of the schools;  
 Nor doubts, nor scruples torture now my breast;  
 No dread of hell or devil mars my rest;  
 Hence is my heart of every joy bereft;  
 No faith in knowledge to my soul is left;  
 No longer doth the hope delude my mind,  
 By truth to better and convert mankind.  
 Then I have neither goods, nor treasure,  
 No worldly honour, rank, or pleasure;  
 No dog would longer such a life desire!  
 Hence I've applied to magic, to inquire  
 Whether the spirit's voice and power to me  
 May not unveil full many a mystery;  
 That I no more, the sweat upon my brow,  
 Need speak of things, of which I nothing know;  
 That I may recognise the hidden ties  
 That bind creation's inmost energies;  
 Her vital powers, her embryo seeds survey,  
 And fling the trade in empty words away.

Thou full-orb'd moon! Would thou wert gazing now,  
 For the last time upon my troubl'd brow!  
 Beside this desk, at midnight, seated here,  
 Oft have I watch'd to hail thy soothing beam;  
 Then, pensive friend, thou cam'st, my soul to cheer;  
 Shedding o'er books and scrolls thy silv'ry gleam.  
 Oh that I could, in thy beloved light,  
 Now wander freely on some Alpine height;  
 Could I round mountain caves with spirits ride,  
 In thy mild radiance o'er the meadows glide,  
 And purg'd from knowledge-fumes, my strength renew,  
 Bathing my spirit in thy healing dew.

Woe's me! still prison'd in the gloom  
 Of this abhorr'd and musty room,  
 Where heaven's dear light itself doth pass,  
 But dimly through the painted glass!  
 Girt round with volumes thick with dust,  
 A prey to worms and mould'ring rust,  
 And to the high vault's topmost bound,  
 With smoky paper compass'd round;  
 Boxes in strange confusion hurl'd,  
 Glasses and antique lumber, blent  
 With many a curious instrument —  
 This is thy world! a precious world!

And dost thou ask why heaves thy heart,  
 With tighten'd pressure in thy breast?  
 Why the dull ache will not depart,  
 By which thy life-pulse is oppress'd?  
 Instead of nature's living sphere,  
 Created for mankind of old,  
 Brute skeletons surround thee here,  
 And dead men's bones in smoke and mould.

Up! Forth into the distant land!  
 Is not this book of mystery  
 By Nostradam's prophetic hand,  
 An all-sufficient guide? Thou'lt see  
 The planetary orbs unroll'd;  
 When nature doth her thoughts unfold  
 To thee, thy soul shall rise, and seek

Communion high with her to hold,  
 As spirit doth with spirit speak!  
 Vain by dull poring to divine  
 The meaning of each hallow'd sign.  
 Spirits! I feel you hov'ring near;  
 Make answer, if my voice ye hear!

*(He opens the book and perceives the sign of Macrocosmos)*

Ah! at this spectacle through every sense,  
 What sudden ecstasy of joy is flowing!  
 I feel new rapture, hallow'd and intense,  
 Through every nerve and vein with ardour glowing.  
 Was it a god who character'd this scroll,  
 Which stills my inward tumult; to my heart.  
 Wither'd and sick, new rapture doth impart;  
 And by a mystic impulse, to my soul,  
 Unveils the working of the wondrous whole.  
 Am I a God? What light intense!  
 In these pure symbols I distinctly see,  
 Nature exert her vital energy.  
 Now of the wise man's words I learn the sense:  
     "Unlock'd the realm of spirits lies; —  
     Thy sense is shut, thy heart is dead!  
     Scholar, with quenchless ardour, rise,  
     And bathe thy breast in the morning red!"

*(He contemplates the sign)*

How all things live and work, and ever blending,  
 Weave one vast whole from Being's ample range!  
 How powers celestial, rising and descending,  
 Their golden buckets ceaseless interchange!  
 Their flight on rapture-breathing pinions winging,  
 From heaven to earth their genial influence bringing,  
 Through the wide whole their chimes melodious ringing.

A wondrous show! but ah! a show alone!  
 Where shall I grasp thee, infinite nature, where?  
 Ye breasts, ye fountains of all life, whereon  
 Hang heaven and earth, from which the blighted soul  
 Yearneth to draw sweet solace, still ye roll  
 Your sweet and fost'ring tides — where are ye — where?  
 Ye gush, and must I languish in despair?

*(He turns over the leaves of the book impatiently, and  
perceives the sign of the Earth-spirit)*

How differently this sign affects me! Thou,  
Spirit of earth, to me art nigher,  
My energies are rising higher,  
As from new wine I feel a quick'ning glow;  
Courage I feel to stem the tide of life,  
To suffer weal and woe, man's earthly lot,  
When warring tempests rage to share their strife,  
And 'midst the crashing wreck to tremble not.  
Clouds gather over me —  
The moon conceals her light —  
The lamp is quench'd!  
Vapours are rising! Quiv'ring round my head  
Flash the red beams. Down from the vaulted roof  
A shuddering horror floats,  
And seizes me!  
I feel it, spirit, prayer-compell'd, 'tis thou  
Art hov'ring near.  
Unveil thyself!  
Ha! How my heart is riven now!  
Each sense, with eager palpitation,  
Is strain'd to catch some new sensation!  
I feel my heart surrender'd unto thee!  
Thou must! Thou must! Though life should be the fee!

*(He seizes the book, and pronounces mysteriously the sign of the spirit. A  
ruddy flame flashes up; the spirit appears in the flame)*

SPIRIT

Who calls on me?

FAUST (*Turning aside*)

Appalling shape!

SPIRIT

With might,  
Thou hast compell'd me from my sphere,  
Long hast thou striv'n to draw me here,  
And now —



## FAUST

Torture! I cannot bear thy sight.

## SPIRIT

To know me thou did'st breathe a fervent prayer,  
 To hear my voice, to gaze upon my brow,  
 Me doth thine earnest adoration bow —  
 Lo! I am here! — What pitiful despair  
 Grasps thee, the demigod? Where's now the soul's deep cry?  
 Where is the breast, which in its depths a world conceiv'd,  
 And bore and cherish'd; which, with ecstasy,  
 To rank itself with us, the spirits, heav'd?  
 Where art thou, Faust? whose voice I heard resound,  
 Who towards me press'd with energy profound?  
 Art thou he? Thou, — whom thus my breath can blight,  
 Whose inmost being trembles with affright,  
 A crush'd and writhing worm!

## FAUST

Shall I yield, thing of flame, to thee?  
 Faust, and thine equal, I am he!

## SPIRIT

In the currents of life, in action's storm,  
 I float and I wave  
 With billowy motion!  
 Birth and the grave,  
 A limitless ocean,  
 A constant weaving  
 With change still rife,  
 A restless heaving,  
 A glowing life,  
 Thus time's whizzing loom unceasing I ply,  
 And weave the life-garment of deity.

## FAUST

Spirit, whose restless energy doth sweep  
 The ample world, how near I feel to thee!

## SPIRIT

Thou'rt like the spirit whom thou can'st conceive;  
Not me!

*(Vanishes)*

FAUST (*deeply moved*)

Not thee?

Whom then?

I, God's own image!

And not rank with thee!

*(a knock)*

Oh death! I know it — 'tis my famulus —

My fairest fortune now escapes!

That all these visionary shapes

A soulless groveller should banish thus!

*(WAGNER in his dressing-gown and night-cap, a lamp in his hand. FAUST turns round reluctantly)*

## WAGNER

Your pardon, Sir! I heard you here declaim;

A Grecian tragedy you doubtless read.

Improvement in this art is now my aim,

For now-a-days it much avails. Indeed

An actor, oft I've heard it said at least,

May give instruction even to a priest.

## FAUST

Ay, if your priest should be an actor too,

As not improbably may come to pass.

## WAGNER

When in his study pent the whole year through,

Man views the world, as through an optic glass,

On a chance holiday, and scarcely then,

How by persuasion can he govern men?

## FAUST

If feeling prompt not, if it doth not flow

Fresh from the spirit's depths, with strong control

Swaying to rapture every list'ner's soul,

Idle your toil; the chase you may forego!  
 Brood o'er your task! Stray thoughts together glue,  
 Cook from another's feast your own ragout,  
 Still prosecute your miserable game,  
 And fan your paltry ash-heaps into flame!  
 Thus children's wonder you'll perchance excite,  
 And apes' applause, if such your appetite:  
 But that which issues from the heart, alone  
 Will bend the hearts of others to your own.

WAGNER

But in deliv'ry will the speaker find  
 Success alone; I still am far behind.

FAUST

A worthy object still pursue!  
 Be not a hollow tinkling fool!  
 Good sense, sound reason, judgment true,  
 Find utterance without art or rule;  
 And when with genuine earnestness you speak,  
 Then is it needful cunning words to seek?  
 Your fine harangues, so polish'd in their kind,  
 Wherein the shreds of human thought ye twist,  
 Are unrefreshing as the empty wind,  
 Whistling through wither'd leaves and autumn mist!

WAGNER

Oh Heavens! art is long and life is short!  
 Still as I prosecute with earnest zeal  
 The critic's toil, I'm haunted by this thought,  
 And vague misgivings o'er my spirit steal.  
 The very means how hardly are they won,  
 By which we students to the fountains rise!  
 And then, perchance, ere half his labour's done,  
 Check'd in his progress, the poor devil dies.

FAUST

Is parchment then the consecrated spring  
 From which, he thirsteth not, who once hath quaffed?  
 Oh, if it gush not from the depths within,  
 Thou hast not won the soul-reviving draught.

## WAGNER

Yet surely 'tis delightful to transport  
 Oneself into the spirit of the past,  
 To see before us how a wise man thought,  
 And what a glorious height we've reach'd at last.

## FAUST

Ay truly! even to the loftiest star!  
 A seal'd-up volume, seven-fold sealed are  
 To us, my friend, the ages that are pass'd;  
 And what the spirit of the times men call,  
 Is merely their own spirit after all,  
 Wherein, distorted oft, the times are glass'd.  
 Then truly 'tis a sight to grieve the soul!  
 At the first glance we fly it in dismay;  
 A very lumber-room, a rubbish-hole!  
 At best a sort of mock-heroic play,  
 With saws pragmatistical, and maxims sage,  
 To suit the puppets and their mimic stage.

## WAGNER

But then the world and man, his heart and brain!  
 Touching these things all men would something know.

## FAUST

Ay! what 'mong men as knowledge doth obtain!  
 Who on the child its true name dares bestow?  
 The few who somewhat of these things have known,  
 Who their full hearts unguardedly reveal'd,  
 Nor thoughts, nor feelings, from the mob conceal'd,  
 Have died on crosses, or in flames been thrown.  
 Excuse me, 'tis the deep of night, my friend,  
 We must break off, and for the present end.

## WAGNER

I fain would keep awake the whole night through,  
 Thus to converse so learnedly with you.  
 To-morrow, being Easter-day, I hope  
 A few more questions you will let me bring.  
 With zeal I've aim'd at learning's amplest scope;  
 True, I know much, but would know everything.

(Exit)

FAUST (*alone*)

How he alone is ne'er bereft of hope,  
Who clings to tasteless trash with zeal untir'd,  
Who doth, with greedy hand, for treasure grope,  
And finding earthworms, is with joy inspir'd!

And dare a voice of merely human birth,  
E'en here, where shapes immortal throng'd, intrude?  
Yet ah! thou poorest of the sons of earth,  
For once, I e'en to thee feel gratitude.  
Despair the power of sense did well-nigh blast,  
And thou didst save me ere I sank dismay'd;  
So giant-like the vision seem'd, so vast,  
I felt myself shrink dwarf'd as I survey'd.

I, God's own image, who already hail'd  
The mirror of eternal truth unveil'd,  
Who, freed already from this toil of clay,  
In splendour revell'd and celestial day: —  
I, more than cherub, whose unfetter'd soul  
With penetrative glance aspir'd to flow  
Through nature's veins, and, still creating, know  
The life of gods, — how am I punish'd now!  
One thunder-word hath hurl'd me from the goal!

Spirit! I dare not lift me to thy sphere.  
What though my power compell'd thee to appear,  
My art was powerless to detain thee here.  
In that great moment, rapture fraught,  
I felt myself so small, so great;  
You thrust me fiercely from the realm of thought,  
Back on humanity's uncertain fate.  
Who'll teach me now? What ought I to forego?  
Shall I that impulse of the soul obey?  
Alas! our very actions as our woe,  
Alike impede the tenor of our way!

E'en to the noblest by the soul conceiv'd,  
Some feelings cling of baser quality;  
And when the goods of this world are achiev'd,  
Each nobler aim is term'd a cheat, a lie.  
Our aspirations, our soul's genuine life,  
Grow torpid in the din of worldly 'strife.

Though youthful phantasy, while hope inspires,  
 Stretch o'er the infinite her wing sublime,  
 A narrow compass limits her desires,  
 When wreck'd our fortunes in the gulph of time.  
 In the deep heart of man, care builds her nest,  
 O'er sorrows undefin'd she broodeth there,  
 And, rocking ceaseless, scareth joy and rest;  
 Still is she wont some new disguise to wear,  
 As house, land, wife, or child, or kindred blood,  
 As sword or poison'd cup, as fire or flood;  
 We tremble before ills that ne'er assail,  
 And what we ne'er shall lose we still bewail.

I rank not with the gods! I feel with dread,  
 That the mean earth-worm I resemble more,  
 Which still is crush'd beneath the wanderer's tread,  
 As in its native dust it loves to bore.

And may not all as worthless dust be priz'd,  
 That in these hundred shelves confines me round?  
 Rubbish, in many a specious form disguis'd,  
 That in this moth-world doth my being bound?  
 Here shall I satisfy my craving soul?  
 Here must I read in many a pond'rous scroll,  
 That here and there one mortal hath been blest,  
 Self-torture still the portion of the rest? —  
 Thou hollow skull, what means that grin of thine?  
 But that thy brain, bewilder'd once, like mine,  
 Sought, yearning for the truth, the light of day,  
 And in the twilight wander'd far astray?  
 Ye instruments, forsooth, ye mock at me, —  
 With wheel, and cog, and ring, and cylinder,  
 To nature's portals ye should be the key;  
 Your wards are intricate, yet fail to stir  
 Her bolts. Inscrutable in broadest light,  
 To be unveil'd by force she doth refuse.  
 What she reveals not to thy mental sight,  
 Thou wilt not wrest from her with bars and screws.  
 Old useless furnitures! Ye still are here,  
 Because my sires ye serv'd in times long past!  
 Old scroll! The smoke of years thou yet dost wear,  
 As when yon lamp its sickly ray first cast.



Better have squander'd at an earlier day  
 My paltry means, than 'neath its weight to groan! "  
 Would'st thou possess thy heritage, essay  
 By active use to render it thine own.  
 What we employ not, but impedes our way;  
 What it brings forth the hour can use alone.

But why doth yonder spot attract my sight?  
 Is yonder flask a magnet to my gaze?  
 Whence this mild radiance, as when Cynthia's light,  
 Amid the forest-gloom, around us plays?

Hail, precious phial! Thee, with rev'rent awe,  
 Down from thine old receptacle I draw;  
 Science in thee I hail and human art;  
 Essence of deadliest powers, refin'd and sure,  
 Of soothing anodynes abstraction pure,  
 Now in thy master's need thy grace impart!  
 I gaze on thee, my pain is lull'd to rest;  
 I grasp thee, calm'd the tumult in my breast;  
 The flood-tide of my spirit ebbs away;  
 Onward I'm summon'd o'er a boundless main,  
 Calm at my feet expands the glassy plain,  
 To shores unknown allures a brighter day.  
 Lo, where a car of fire, on airy pinion,  
 Comes floating towards me! I'm prepared to fly  
 By a new track through ether's wide dominion,  
 To distant spheres of pure activity.  
 This life intense! This godlike ecstasy?  
 Worm that thou art, such rapture can'st thou earn?  
 Only resolve with courage stern and high,  
 Thy visage from the radiant sun to turn!  
 Dare with determin'd will to burst the portals  
 Past which in terror others fain would steal;  
 Now is the time to testify that mortals  
 The calm sublimity of gods can feel.  
 To shudder not at yonder dark abyss,  
 Throng'd with self-torturing fancy's grisly brood;  
 Right onward to the yawning gulph to press,  
 Round whose dark entrance rolls hell's fiery flood;  
 With glad resolve to take the fatal leap,  
 E'en though thy soul should sink to endless sleep!

Pure crystal goblet, forth I draw thee now,  
 From out thine antiquated case, where thou  
 Forgotten hast repos'd for many a year.  
 Oft at my father's revels thou didst shine,  
 Gladd'ning the earnest guests with gen'rous wine  
 As each the other pledg'd with sober cheer.

The gorgeous brede of figures, quaintly wrought,  
 Which he who quaff'd must first in rhyme expound,  
 Then drain the goblet at one draught profound,  
 Hath nights of boyhood to fond memory brought;  
 I to my neighbour shall not reach thee now,  
 Nor on thy rich device my cunning show;  
 Here is a juice makes drunk without delay;  
 Its dark brown flood thy crystal round doth fill;  
 Let this last draught, the product of my skill,  
 My own free choice, be quaff'd with resolute will,  
 A solemn greeting to the coming day!

*(He places the goblet to his mouth)*  
*(The ringing of bells, and choral voices.)*

*Chorus of ANGELS*

Christ is arisen!  
 Mortal, all hail to thee,  
 Thou whom mortality,  
 Earth's sad reality,  
 Held as in prison.

FAUST

What hum melodious, what clear, silv'ry chime,  
 Thus draws the goblet from my lips away?  
 Ye deep-ton'd bells, do ye with voice sublime,  
 Announce the solemn dawn of Easter-day?  
 Sweet choir! are ye the hymn of comfort singing,  
 Which once around the darkness of the grave,  
 From seraph-voices, in glad triumph ringing,  
 Of a new covenant assurance gave?

CHORUS OF WOMEN

Embalm'd with spices rare,  
 In sorrow and in gloom,  
 His faithful followers bare

His body to the tomb.  
 For their sepulchral rest,  
 We swath'd the reliques dear;  
 Ah! vain is now our quest,  
 Christ is no longer here!

#### CHORUS OF ANGELS

Christ is arisen!  
 Perfect through earthly ruth,  
 Radiant with love and truth,  
 Girt with eternal youth,  
 He soars from earth's prison.

#### FAUST

Wherefore, ye tones celestial, sweet and strong,  
 Come ye a dweller in the dust to seek?  
 Ring out your chimes believing crowds among,  
 I hear the message, but my faith is weak;  
 From faith her darling, miracle, hath sprung.  
 I dare not soar aloft to yonder spheres  
 Whence sound the joyful tidings; yet this strain,  
 Familiar even from my boyhood's years,  
 Binds me to earth, as with a mystic chain.  
 Then would celestial love, with holy kiss,  
 Come o'er me in the Sabbath's stilly hour,  
 While, fraught with solemn and mysterious power,  
 Chim'd the deep-sounding bell, and prayer was bliss;  
 A yearning impulse, undefin'd yet dear,  
 Drove me to wander on through wood and field;  
 With heaving breast and many a burning tear,  
 I felt with holy joy a world reveal'd.  
 This Easter hymn announc'd, with joyous pealing,  
 Gay sports and festive hours in times of old,  
 And early memories, fraught with child-like feeling,  
 From death's dark threshold now my steps withhold.  
 O still sound on, thou sweet celestial strain,  
 Tears now are gushing, — Earth, I'm thine again!

#### CHORUS OF DISCIPLES

O'er death itself victorious,  
 Whom we interr'd in love,

Exalted now and glorious  
 Is rais'd to realms above.  
 Near the creative spirit  
 Joys aye-increasing flow.  
 Ah! we on earth inherit  
 Disquietude and woe.  
 He left us here in anguish,  
 His glory we bemoan,  
 For ah, our spirits languish,  
 We're comfortless, alone.

#### CHORUS OF ANGELS

Christ is arisen,  
 Redeem'd from decay;  
 The bonds which imprison  
 Your souls, rend away!  
 Praising the Lord with zeal,  
 By deeds that love reveal,  
 Like brethren true and leal  
 Sharing the daily meal,  
 To all that sorrow feel  
 Whisp'ring of heaven's weal,  
 Still is the master near,  
 Still is he with you here!

#### BEFORE THE GATE

*Promenaders of all sorts pass out*

#### MECHANICS

Why choose ye that direction, pray?

#### OTHERS

To the Jager-house we're on our way.

#### THE FIRST

We towards the mill are strolling on.

#### A MECHANIC

A walk to Wasserhof were best.

## A SECOND

The road is not a pleasant one.

## THE OTHERS

What will you do?

## A THIRD

I'll join the rest.

## A FOURTH

Let's up to Burghof, there you'll find good cheer,  
The prettiest maidens and the stoutest beer,  
And brawls of a prime sort.

## A FIFTH

You scapegrace! How;  
Your skin still itching for a row?  
I will not go, I loathe the place.

## SERVANT GIRL

No, no! To town I will my steps retrace.

## ANOTHER

Near yonder poplars he is sure to be.

## THE FIRST

And if he is, what matters it to me!  
With you he'll walk, he'll dance with none but you,  
And with your pleasures what have I to do?

## THE SECOND

To-day he will not be alone, he said  
His friend would be with him, the curly head.

## STUDENT

Why how those buxom girls step on!  
Brother, we'll follow them anon.  
Strong beer, a damsel smartly dress'd,  
Stinging tobacco, — these I love the best.

## CITIZEN'S DAUGHTER

Look at those handsome fellows there!  
 'Tis really shameful, I declare,  
 The best society they shun,  
 After those servant-girls forsooth, to run.

SECOND STUDENT (*to the first*)

Not quite so fast! for in our rear,  
 Two girls, well-dress'd, are drawing near;  
 Not far from us the one doth dwell,  
 And sooth to say, I like her well.  
 They walk demurely, yet you'll see,  
 They'll let us join them presently.

## THE FIRST

Not I! restraints of all kinds I detest.  
 Quick! let us catch the game before it flies,  
 The hand on Saturday the mop that plies,  
 Will on the Sunday fondle you the best.

## CITIZEN

This Burgomaster likes me not; each hour  
 He grows more insolent now he's in power,  
 And for the town, what doth he do for it?  
 Is it not growing worse from day to day?  
 To more restrictions we must still submit;  
 Ay, and more taxes now than ever pay.

BEGGAR *sings*

Kind gentlemen and ladies fair,  
 So rosy-cheek'd and trimly dress'd,  
 Be pleas'd to listen to my prayer,  
 Relieve and pity the distress'd.  
 Let me not vainly sing my lay!  
 His heart's most glad whose hand is free.  
 Now when all men keep holiday,  
 Should be a harvest-day to me.

## ANOTHER CITIZEN

I know nought better of a holiday,  
 Than chatting about war and war's alarms,



When folk in Turkey are all up in arms,  
 Fighting their deadly battles far away,  
 Within the window we our glasses drain,  
 Watch down the stream the painted vessels glide,  
 Then, blessing peace and peaceful times, again  
 Homeward we turn our steps at eventide.

### THIRD CITIZEN

Ay, neighbour! So let matters stand for me!  
 There they may scatter one another's brains,  
 And hurly-burly innovations see —  
 So here at home all undisturb'd remains.

### OLD WOMAN (*to the* CITIZENS' DAUGHTERS)

Heyday! How smart! The fresh young blood!  
 Who would not fall in love with you?  
 Not quite so proud! 'Tis well and good!  
 And what you wish, that I could help you to.

### CITIZEN'S DAUGHTER

Come, Agatha! I care not to be seen  
 Walking in public with these witches. True,  
 My future lover, last St. Andrew's E'en,  
 In flesh and blood she brought before my view.

### ANOTHER

And mine she show'd me also in the glass,  
 A soldier's figure, with companions bold;  
 I look around, I seek him as I pass,  
 In vain, his form I nowhere can behold.

### SOLDIERS

Towns with walls  
 Encompass'd round,  
 Maids with lofty  
 Beauty crown'd.  
 On! regardless  
 Of the toil!  
 Bold the venture,  
 Rich the spoil!  
 And the trumpet's

Martial breath,  
 Calls to pleasure,  
 Calls to death.  
 Mid the tumult  
 There is rapture;  
 Maids and fortress,  
 Both we capture.  
 Bold the venture,  
 Rich the prize!  
 Onward then  
 The soldier hies.

FAUST *and* WAGNER.

FAUST

Loos'd from their icy fetters, streams and rills  
 In spring's effusive, quick'ning, mildness flow;  
 Hope's budding promise every valley fills,  
 And winter, spent with age, and powerless now,  
 Draws off his forces to the savage hills.  
 Thence he discharges nought in his retreat,  
 Save, ever and anon, a drizzling shower,  
 Striping the verdant fields with snow and sleet;  
 But white the sun endures not, — vital power,  
 Productive energy, abroad are rife,  
 Investing all things with the hues of life;  
 And joyous crowds, in suits of varied dye,  
 The absent charm of blooming flowers supply.  
 Now hither turn, and from this height  
 Back to the town direct your sight.  
 Forth from the arch'd and gloomy gate,  
 The multitudes, in bright array,  
 Stream forth, and seek the sun's warm ray!  
 Their risen Lord they celebrate,  
 For they themselves have also risen to-day!  
 From the mean tenement, the sordid room,  
 From manual craft, from toil's imperious sway,  
 From roofs' and gables' overhanging gloom,  
 From the close pressure of the narrow street,  
 And from the churches' venerable night,  
 They've issued now from darkness into light;

Look, only look, how borne on nimble feet,  
 Through fields and gardens roam the scatter'd throng,  
 How o'er yon peaceful water's ample sheet,  
 Gay wherries, pleasure-laden, glide along;  
 And see, deep sinking in the yielding tide,  
 The last now leaves the shore; e'en from yon height,  
 The winding paths along, which mark its side,  
 Gay-colour'd dresses flash upon the sight.  
 And hark! the sounds of village mirth arise;  
 This is the people's genuine paradise.  
 Both great and small send up a joyous cheer;  
 Yes! I am still a man, — I feel it here.

### WAGNER

Sir doctor, in a walk with you  
 There's honour and instruction too;  
 Alone I would not here resort,  
 Coarseness I hate of every sort.  
 This fiddling, shouting, bawling, I detest;  
 I hate the tumult of the vulgar throng;  
 They roar as by the evil one possess'd,  
 And call the discord pleasure, call it song.

### PEASANTS (*under the linden-tree*)

#### *Dance and song*

The shepherd for the dance was dress'd,  
 With ribbon, wreath, and coloured vest,  
 He made a gallant show.  
 And round about the linden-tree,  
 They footed it right merrily.  
     Juchhe! Juchhe!  
     Juchheisa! Heisa! He!  
 So went the fiddle-bow.

Our swain amidst the circle press'd,  
 He push'd a maiden trimly dress'd,  
 And jogg'd her with his elbow;  
 The buxom damsel turn'd her head,  
 "Now that's a stupid trick!" she said,  
     Juchhe! Juchhe!

Juchheisa! Heisa! He!  
Don't be so rude, good fellow!

Swiftly they foot it in the ring,  
Abroad the ample kirtles swing,  
Now right, now left they go.  
And they grow red, and they grow warm,  
And now rest, panting, arm in arm,

Juchhe! Juchhe!

Juchheisa! Heisa! He!  
Upon their hip their elbow!

Stand off! Don't plague me! many a maid  
Has been betroth'd and then betray'd;  
No man shall me befool so!  
Yet still he flatter'd her aside,  
And from the linden, far and wide

Juchhe! Juchhe!

Juchheisa! Heisa! He!  
Ring shout and fiddle-bow.

#### OLD PEASANT

Doctor, 'tis really kind of you,  
To condescend to come this way,  
And deeply learned as you are,  
To join our mirthful throng to-day.  
Our fairest cup I offer you,  
Which we with sparkling drink have crown'd,  
And pledging you, I pray aloud,  
That every drop within its round,  
While it your present thirst allays,  
May swell the number of your days.

#### FAUST

I take the cup you kindly reach,  
Health and prosperity to each!

*(The crowd gather round in a circle)*

#### OLD PEASANT

Ay, truly! 'tis well done, that you  
Our festive meetings thus attend;

You, who in evil days of yore,  
 So often shew'd yourself our friend.  
 Full many a one stands living here,  
 Who from the fever's deadly blast,  
 Your father rescu'd, when his skill  
 The fatal sickness stay'd at last.  
 A young man then, each house you sought,  
 Where reign'd the mortal pestilence.  
 Corpse after corpse was carried forth,  
 But still unscath'd you issued thence.  
 Sore then your trials and severe;  
 The Helper yonder aids the helper here.

# ALL

Heaven bless the trusty friend, and long  
 To help the poor his life prolong!

# FAUST

To him above in grateful homage bend,  
 Who prompts the helper and the help doth send.

*(He proceeds with WAGNER)*

# WAGNER

With what emotions must your heart o'erflow,  
 Receiving thus the rev'ence of the crowd!  
 Great man! How happy, who like you doth know  
 Rightly to use the gifts by heaven bestow'd!  
 You to the son the father shows;  
 They press around, inquire, advance,  
 Hush'd is the music, check'd the dance.  
 Still where you pass they stand in rows,  
 The caps fly upwards, and almost,  
 To you they bow, as to the host.

# FAUST

A few steps further, up to yonder stone;  
 Here rest we from our walk. In times long past,  
 Absorb'd in thought, here oft I sat alone,  
 And disciplin'd myself with prayer and fast.

Then rich in hope, possess'd with faith sincere,  
 With sighs, and groans, and hands in anguish press'd,  
 The end of that sore plague, with many a tear,  
 From the dread Lord of heaven I sought to wrest.  
 These praises have to me a scornful tone.  
 Oh, could'st thou in my inner being read,  
 And learn how little either sire or son,  
 Of thanks deserve the honourable meed!  
 My sire, of good repute and sombre mood,  
 O'er nature's powers and every mystic zone,  
 With honest zeal, but methods of his own,  
 Still lov'd, with toil fantastical, to brood.  
 Secluded in his dark, alchemic cell.  
 His time with brother adepts he would spend,  
 And after numberless receipts, compel  
 Opposing elements to fuse and blend.  
 A ruddy lion there, a suitor bold,  
 In tepid bath was with the lily wed,  
 Thence both, while open flames around them roll'd,  
 Were tortur'd to another bridal bed.  
 Did then the youthful queen at length arise  
 In our alembic, bright with varied dyes,  
 Our med'cine this, who took it soon expir'd,  
 "Who were by it recover'd?" none inquir'd.  
 With our infernal mixture, thus, ere long,  
 These hills and peaceful vales among,  
 We rag'd more fiercely than the pest;  
 Myself to thousands did the poison give,  
 They pin'd away, I yet must live,  
 To hear the reckless murderers blest.

#### WAGNER

Why let this thought your spirit overcast?  
 Can man do more than with nice skill,  
 With firm and conscientious will,  
 Practise the art transmitted from the past?  
 If duly you revere your sire in youth,  
 His lore, with docile mind, you will receive;  
 In manhood, if you spread the bounds of truth,  
 Then may your son a higher goal achieve.



## FAUST

How blest is he whom still the hope inspires,  
 To lift himself from error's turbid flood!  
 The knowledge which he hath not man requires,  
 With what he hath, he nought achieves of good.  
 But let not moody thoughts their shadow throw  
 O'er the calm beauty of this hour serene!  
 In the rich sunset see how brightly glow  
 Yon cottage homes, girt round with verdant green.  
 Slow sinks the orb, the day is now no more;  
 Yonder he hastens to diffuse new life.  
 Oh for a pinion from the earth to soar,  
 And after, ever after him to strive!  
 Then should I see the world outspread below,  
 Illumin'd by the deathless evening-beams,  
 The vales reposing, every height a-glow,  
 The silver brooklets meeting golden streams.  
 The savage mountain, with its cavern'd side,  
 Bars not my godlike progress. Lo, the ocean,  
 Its warm bays heaving with a tranquil motion,  
 To my rapt vision opes its ample tide!  
 But now at length the god appears to sink;  
 A gushing impulse wings anew my flight,  
 Onward I press his quenchless light to drink,  
 The day before me, and behind the night,  
 The waves below, above the vaulted skies.  
 Fair dream, it vanish'd with the parting day.  
 Alas! that when on spirit-wing we rise,  
 No wing material lifts our mortal clay.  
 But 'tis our inborn impulse, deep and strong,  
 To rush aloft, to struggle still towards heaven,  
 When far above us, pours its thrilling song  
 The sky-lark, lost amid the purple even;  
 When on extended pinion sweeps amain  
 The lordly eagle o'er the pine-crown'd height;  
 And when, still striving towards its home, the crane  
 O'er moor and ocean wings its onward flight.

## WAGNER

To strange conceits myself at times must own,  
 But impulse such as this I ne'er have known;

Nor woods, nor fields, can long our thoughts engage,  
 Their wings I envy not the feather'd kind;  
 Far otherwise the pleasures of the mind,  
 Bear us from book to book, from page to page!  
 Then winter nights grow cheerful; keen delight  
 Warms every limb; and ah! when we unroll  
 Some old and precious parchment, at the sight  
 All heaven itself descends upon the soul.

# FAUST

Your heart by one sole impulse is possess'd;  
 Unconscious of the other still remain!  
 Two souls, alas! are lodg'd within my breast,  
 Which struggle there for undivided reign  
 One to the world, with obstinate desire,  
 And closely-cleaving organs, still adheres  
 Above the mist, the other doth aspire,  
 With sacred vehemence, to purer spheres.  
 Spirits, if ye indeed are hov'ring near,  
 Wielding 'twixt heaven and earth potential sway,  
 Stoop hither from your golden atmosphere,  
 And bear me to more varied life away!  
 A magic mantle did I but possess,  
 Abroad to waft me as on viewless wings,  
 I'd prize it far beyond the costliest dress,  
 Nor would I change it for the robe of kings.

# WAGNER

Call not the spirits who on mischief wait!  
 Their troop familiar, streaming through the air,  
 From every quarter threaten man's estate,  
 And danger in a thousand forms prepare.  
 They drive impetuous from the frozen north,  
 With fangs sharp-piercing, and keen arrowy tongues;  
 From the ungenial east they issue forth,  
 And prey, with parching breath, upon your lungs;  
 If, wafted on the desert's flaming wing,  
 They from the south heap fire upon the brain,  
 Refreshing moisture from the west they bring,  
 Then with huge torrents deluge field and plain.  
 In wait for mischief, they are prompt to hear;

With guileful purpose our behests obey;  
 Like ministers of grace they oft appear,  
 And with an angel's voice our trust betray.  
 But let us hence! Grey eve doth all things blend,  
 The air grows chilly, and the mists descend!  
 'Tis in the evening first our home we prize —  
 Why stand you thus, and gaze with wond'ring eyes?  
 What in the gloom thus moves you?

FAUST

Yon black hound,  
 See'st thou, through corn and stubble scamp'ring round?

WAGNER

I've mark'd him long, but nothing strange I see!

FAUST

Note him! What should you take the brute to be?

WAGNER

Merely a poodle, whom his instinct serves  
 His master's missing track to find once more.

FAUST

Dost mark how round us, with wide spiral curves,  
 He wheels, each circle closer than before?  
 And, if I err not, he appears to me  
 A fiery whirlpool in his track to leave.

WAGNER

Nought but a poodle doth he seem to be;  
 'Tis some delusion doth your sight deceive.

FAUST

Methinks a magic coil our feet around,  
 He for a future snare doth lightly spread.

WAGNER

Round us in doubt I see him shyly bound,  
 Two strangers seeing in his master's stead.

## FAUST

The circle narrows, he's already near!

## WAGNER

A dog you see, no spectre have we here;  
He growls, he hesitates, he crouches too —  
And wags his tail — as dogs are wont to do.

## FAUST

Come hither, Sirrah! join our company!

## WAGNER

A very poodle, he appears to be!  
But speak to him, and on you he will spring;  
To sit on his hind legs, he knows the trick;  
Aught you may chance to lose, again he'll bring,  
And plunge into the water for your stick.

## FAUST

You're right indeed; no traces now I see  
Whatever of a spirit's agency.  
'Tis training — nothing more.

## WAGNER

A dog well taught  
E'en by the wisest of us may be sought.  
Ay, to your favour he's entitled too,  
Apt scholar of the students, 'tis his due!

*(They enter the gate of the town)*

*Study*

FAUST *(entering with the poodle)*

Behind me now lie field and plain,  
As night her veil doth o'er them draw,  
Our better soul resumes her reign  
With feelings of foreboding awe.  
Lull'd is each stormy deed to rest,  
And tranquilliz'd each wild desire;

Pure charity doth warm the breast,  
And love to God the soul inspire.

Poodle, be still! Cease up and down to rovel!  
What on the threshold are you snuffing there?  
Here's my best cushion, lie behind the stove.  
As you amus'd me in the mountain air,  
With freak and gambol, like a quiet guest  
Receive my kindness now, and take your rest.

Ah! when within our narrow room,  
The friendly lamp again doth glow;  
An inward light dispels the gloom  
In hearts that strive themselves to know.  
Reason begins again to speak,  
Again the bloom of hope returns,  
The streams of life we fain would seek,  
Yea, for life's source our spirit yearns.

Cease, poodle, cease to growl! This brutish sound  
Accords not with the pure and hallow'd tone  
Whose influence o'er my soul now reigns alone.  
Among mankind, indeed, they oft are found,  
Who, what they do not understand, despise,  
And what is good and beautiful, contemn,  
Because beyond their sympathies it lies. —  
And will the poodle snarl at it like them?

But ah! I feel, howe'er I yearn for rest,  
Content flows now no longer from my breast.  
Yet wherefore must the stream so soon be dry,  
And we again all parch'd and thirsting lie?  
This sad experience I've so oft approv'd;  
But still the want admits of compensation,  
We learn to treasure what's from sense remov'd,  
With yearning hearts, we long for revelation.  
And nowhere is the heavenly radiance sent  
So pure and bright as in the Testament.  
Towards the ancient text an impulse strong  
Moves me the volume to explore,  
And render faithfully its sacred lore,  
In the lov'd accents of the German tongue.

*(He opens a volume, and applies himself to it)*

'Tis writ, "In the beginning was the Word!"  
 I pause, perplex'd! Who now will help afford?  
 I cannot the mere word so highly prize;  
 If by the spirit guided as I read,  
 I must translate the passage otherwise.  
 "In the beginning was the Sense!" Take heed,  
 The import of this primal sentence weigh,  
 Lest your too hasty pen be led astray!  
 Doth sense work all things, and control the hour?  
 'Tis writ "In the beginning was the Power!"  
 Thus should it stand: yet while the words I trace,  
 I'm warn'd again the passage to efface.  
 The spirit aids: from anxious scruples freed,  
 I write, "In the beginning was the Deed!"

If I'm with you my room to share,  
 Cease barking, poodle, and forbear  
 My quiet thus to start!  
 I cannot suffer in my cell  
 Inmate so troublesome to dwell,  
 Or you or I depart.  
 I'm loath the guest-rite to withhold;  
 The door's ajar, the passage clear;  
 But what must now mine eyes behold!  
 Are nature's laws suspended here?  
 Is 't real, or a phantom show?  
 In length and breadth how doth my poodle grow!  
 Aloft he lifts himself with threat'ning mien,  
 In likeness of a dog no longer seen!  
 What spectre have I harbour'd thus!  
 Huge as a hippopotamus,  
 With fiery eye, terrific jaw!  
 Ah! thou art subject to my law!  
 For such a base, half-hellish brood,  
 The key of Solomon is good.

#### SPIRITS (*without*)

Captur'd there within is one!  
 Stay without and follow none!  
 Like a fox in iron snare,  
 Hell's old lynx is quaking there,

But take heed!  
 Hover round, above, below,  
 To and fro,  
 Then from durance is he freed.  
 Can ye aid him, spirits all,  
 Leave him not in mortal thrall!  
 Many a time, and oft hath he  
 Serv'd us, when at liberty.

# FAUST

The monster to confront, at first,  
 The spell of four must be rehearsed:  
     Salamander shall kindle,  
     Writhe nymph of the wave,  
     In air sylph shall dwindle,  
     And Kobold shall slave.

The elements who doth not know,  
 Nor can their powers and uses show,  
 He were no master to compel  
 Spirits, with charm and magic spell.

    Vanish in the fiery glow,  
     Salamander!  
     Rushingly together flow,  
     Undine!  
     Shimmer in the meteor's gleam,  
     Sylphide!  
     Hither bring thine homely aid,  
     Incubus! Incubus!

    Step forth! I do adjure thee thus!  
 None of the elemental four  
 Doth within the creature dwell;  
 He lies, untroubl'd as before,  
 He grins at me, and mocks my spell.  
 By more potent magic still,  
 I must compel him to my will.  
     A fugitive from hell's confine  
     Art hither come? Then see this sign,  
 At whose dread power the grisly troop  
 Of hellish fiends in terror stoop!  
 With bristling hair now doth the creature swell.  
 Canst thou read him, reprobate?



The infinite, the increate,  
 Bright essence, unpronounceable,  
 Diffus'd through the celestial sphere,  
 Vilely transpierc'd, who suffer'd here?

O'er-master'd by the potent spell,  
 Behind the stove, the fiend of hell  
 Huge as an elephant doth swell;  
 Wide as the room expands the shape,  
 In mist he'll vanish and escape.  
 Rise not the vaulted roof to meet!  
 Now lay thee at the master's feet!  
 Thou see'st that mine's no idle threat.  
 With holy fire I'll scorch thee yet!  
 Come forth, thou progeny of night,  
 Nor wait the torture of thrice-glowing light!  
 Await not of mine art the utmost measure!

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

*(As the mist sinks, comes forward from behind the stove, in  
 the dress of a travelling scholar)*

Why all this uproar? What's the master's pleasure?

#### FAUST

So this is then the kernel of the brute!  
 A travelling scholar? Why I needs must smile.

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Your learned rev'rence humbly I salute!  
 You've made me swelter in a pretty style.

#### FAUST

Your name?

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

The question trifling seems from one,  
 Who it appears the Word doth rate so low;  
 Who, undeluded by mere outward show,  
 To Being's depths would penetrate alone.

## FAUST

With gentlemen like you we're wont indeed  
 The inward essence from the name to read,  
 As it doth all too obviously appear,  
 When we, Destroyer, Liar, Fly-god, hear.  
 Who then are you?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Part of that power which still  
 Produceth good, while it deviseth ill.

## FAUST

What hidden mystery in this riddle lies?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

The spirit I, which evermore denies!  
 And justly too; for whatsoe'er hath birth  
 Deserves again to be reduc'd to nought;  
 Better were nothing into being brought.  
 Thus every essence which you sons of earth  
 Destruction, sin, or briefly, Evil, name,  
 As my peculiar element I claim.

## FAUST

You call yourself a part, yet, as it seems,  
 Stand there a whole?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I speak the modest truth.  
 Though folly's microcosm, man, forsooth,  
 Himself to be a perfect whole esteems,  
 Part of the part am I that once was all.  
 A part of darkness, which gave birth to light.  
 Proud light, who now his mother would enthrall,  
 Contesting rank and space with ancient night.  
 Yet he succeeds not, struggle as he will;  
 To forms material he adhereth still;  
 From them he streameth, them he maketh fair,  
 And still the progress of his beams they check;  
 And so, I trust, when comes the final wreck,  
 Light will, ere long, the doom of matter share.

## FAUST

Your worthy avocation now I guess!  
 Wholesale annihilation won't prevail,  
 So you're beginning on a smaller scale.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

And, to say truth, as yet with small success.  
 Oppos'd to nothingness, the world,  
 This clumsy mass, subsisteth still;  
 Not yet is it to ruin hurl'd,  
 Despite the efforts of my will.  
 Tempests and earthquakes, fire and flood, I've tried;  
 Yet land and ocean still unchang'd abide!  
 And then of beasts and men, the accursed brood, —  
 Neither o'er them can I extend my sway.  
 What countless myriads have I swept away!  
 Yet ever circulates the fresh young blood.  
 It is enough to drive me to despair!  
 As in the earth, in water, and in air,  
 In moisture and in drought, in heat and cold,  
 Thousands of germs their energies unfold!  
 If fire I had not for myself retain'd,  
 No sphere whatever had for me remain'd.

## FAUST

So then with your cold devil's fist,  
 Still clench'd in malice impotent,  
 You the creative power resist,  
 The active, the beneficent!  
 Chaos' strange son! elsewhere I pray  
 Your mischief-working power essay!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

It should, in truth, be thought upon;  
 We'll talk about it more anon!  
 But have I now permission to retire?

## FAUST

I see not why you should inquire.  
 Since we're acquainted now, you're free,

As often as you list, to call on me.  
There is the door, the window here,  
Or there's the chimney.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Sooth to say,  
There to my exit doth appear  
A trifling hindrance in the way;  
The Druid-foot upon your threshold —

FAUST

How!  
You're by the pentagram embarrass'd now?  
If that have power to hold you, son of hell,  
Say, how you came to enter in my cell?  
What could a spirit such as you deceive?

MEPHISTOPHELES

The drawing is not perfect; by your leave,  
The outward angle is not fairly clos'd.

FAUST

Chance hath the matter happily dispos'd!  
So you're my prisoner then? You're nicely caught!

MEPHISTOPHELES

In sprang the dog, indeed, observing nought;  
The matter now assumes another shape,  
The devil's in the house and can't escape.

FAUST

But why not through the window?

MEPHISTOPHELES

'Tis a law,  
Binding on ghosts and devils, to withdraw  
The way they first stole in. We enter free,  
But, as regards our exit, slaves are we.

FAUST

E'en hell hath its peculiar laws, I see!

I'm glad of that, a binding compact, then,  
May be establish'd with you gentlemen?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Ay! And the promis'd good therein express'd,  
Shall to a tittle be by you possess'd.  
But such arrangements time require;  
We'll speak of them when next we meet;  
Most earnestly I now entreat,  
This once permission to retire.

FAUST

Another moment prithee linger here,  
And give some fair prediction to mine ear.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Now let me go! ere long I'll come again,  
And you may question at your leisure then.

FAUST

To capture you I laid no snare.  
The net you enter'd of your own free will.  
Let him who holds the devil hold him still!  
A second time he will not catch him there.

MEPHISTOPHELES

If it so please you, I'm at your command;  
Only on this condition, understand;  
That worthily your leisure to beguile,  
I here may exercise my arts awhile.

FAUST

You're free to do so! Gladly I'll attend;  
But be your art a pleasant one!

MEPHISTOPHELES

My friend,  
This hour enjoyment more intense,  
Shall captivate each ravish'd sense,  
Than thou could'st compass in the bound

Of the whole year's unvarying round;  
 And what the dainty spirits sing,  
 The lovely images they bring,  
 Are no fantastic sorcery.  
 Rich odours shall regale your smell,  
 On choicest sweets your palate dwell,  
 Your feelings thrill with ecstasy.  
 No preparation we require,  
 Now warble on my viewless quire!

### SPIRITS

Hence overshadowing gloom  
 Vanish from sight!  
 O'er us thine azure dome,  
 Bend, beauteous light!  
 Dark clouds that o'er us spread,  
 Melt in thin air!  
 Stars, your soft radiance shed,  
 Tender and fair.  
 Girt with celestial might,  
 Winging their airy flight,  
 Spirits are thronging.  
 Follows their forms of ligh  
 Infinite longing!  
 Flutter their vestures bright  
 O'er field and grove!  
 Where in their leafy bower  
 Lovers the livelong hour  
 Vow deathless love.  
 Soft bloometh bud and bower!  
 Bloometh the grove!  
 Grapes from the spreading vine  
 Crown the full measure;  
 Fountains of foaming wine  
 Gush from the pressure.  
 Still where the currents wind,  
 Gems brightly gleam.  
 Leaving the hills behind  
 On rolls the stream;  
 Now into ample seas,  
 Spreadeth the flood;

Laving the sunny leas,  
 Mantled with wood.  
 Rapture the feather'd throng,  
 Gaily careering,  
 Sip as they float along;  
 Sunward they're steering;  
 On towards the isles of light  
 Winging their way,  
 That on the waters bright  
 Dancingly play.  
 Hark to the choral strain,  
 Joyfully ringing!  
 While on the grassy plain  
 Dancers are springing;  
 Climbing the steep hill's side,  
 Skimming the glassy tide,  
 Wander they there;  
 Others on pinions wide  
 Wing the blue air;  
 On towards the living stream,  
 Towards yonder stars that gleam,  
 Far, far away;  
 Seeking their tender beam  
 Wing they their way.

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Well done my dainty spirits! now he slumbers!  
 Ye have entranc'd him fairly with your numbers!  
 This minstrelsy of yours I must repay.  
 Thou'rt not the man to hold the devil it seems!  
 Now play around him with illusive dreams  
 Until with ravishment his sense you take;  
 But tooth of rat I now require, to break  
 This wizard spell; brief conjuring will suffice,  
 One rustles towards me, and will soon appear.

The master of the rats and mice,  
 Of flies and frogs, of bugs and lice,  
 Commands thy presence; without fear  
 Come forth and gnaw the threshold here,  
 Where he with oil has smear'd it. — Thou



Com'st hopping forth already! Now  
 To work! The point that holds me bound  
 Is in the outer angle found.  
 Another bite — so — now 'tis done —  
 Faust, till we meet again, dream on.

FAUST (*awaking*)

Am I once more deluded? must I deem  
 This troop of thronging spirits all ideal?  
 The devil's presence, was it nothing real?  
 The poodle's disappearance but a dream?

*Study*

FAUST. MEPHISTOPHELES

FAUST

A knock? Come in! Who now would break my rest?

MEPHISTOPHELES

'Tis I!

FAUST

Come in!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Thrice be the words express'd,

FAUST

Then I repeat, Come in!

MEPHISTOPHELES

'Tis well.

I hope that we shall soon agree!  
 For now, your fancies to expel,  
 Here as a youth of high degree  
 I'm come, in gold-lac'd scarlet vest,  
 And stiff-silk mantle richly dress'd,  
 A cock's gay feather for a plume,  
 A long and pointed rapier, too;  
 And briefly I would counsel you "

To don at once the same costume,  
And, free from trammels, speed away,  
That what life is you may essay.

#### FAUST

In every garb I needs must feel oppress'd,  
My heart to earth's low torturing cares a prey.  
Too old I am the trifler's part to play,  
Too young, to live by no desire possess'd.  
What can the world afford to ease my pain?  
Renounce! renounce! This the eternal song  
Which in our ears still rings, our whole life long;  
Each hour, in murmurs hoarse, repeats the strain.  
But to new horror I awake each morn,  
And I could weep hot tears, to see the sun  
Dawn on another day, whose round forlorn  
Accomplishes no wish of mine — not one.  
Which still, with froward captiousness, impairs  
E'en the presentiment of every joy,  
While low realities and paltry cares  
The spirit's fond imaginings destroy.  
And then when falls again the veil of night,  
Stretch'd on my couch I languish in despair;  
Appalling dreams my troubl'd soul affright;  
No soothing rest vouchsaf'd me even there.  
The god, who thron'd within my breast resides,  
Deep in my inmost soul can stir the springs;  
With sovereign sway my energies he guides,  
But hath no power to move external things;  
And thus my very being I deplore,  
Death ardently desire, and life abhor.

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

And yet, methinks, by most 'twill be confess'd  
That death is never quite a welcome guest.

#### FAUST

Happy the man around whose brow he binds  
The bloodstain'd wreath in conquest's dazzling hour;  
Or whom, excited by the dance, he finds  
Dissolv'd in bliss, in love's delicious bower;

Oh that before that lofty spirit's might,  
My soul, entranc'd, had sunk to endless night!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Yet did a certain man, one night, refrain  
Of its brown juice the crystal bowl to drain.

FAUST

To play the spy diverts you, then?

MEPHISTOPHELES

I own,  
Though not omniscient, much to me is known.

FAUST

If o'er my soul the tone familiar, stealing,  
Drew me from harrowing thought's bewild'ring maze,  
Touching the ling'ring chords of childlike feeling,  
With the sweet harmonies of happier days;  
So now I breathe my curse on all that windeth  
Its coil of magic influence round the soul,  
And with delusive flatt'ry fondly bindeth  
The wretched spirit to this dismal hole!  
And before all, curs'd be the high opinion  
Wherewith the spirit girds itself around!  
Of shows delusive curs'd be the dominion,  
Within whose mocking sphere our sense is bound!  
Accurs'd of lying dreams the treacherous wiles,  
The cheat of glory, fame's exalted rage!  
Accurs'd as property what each beguiles,  
As wife and child, as slave and heritage!  
Accurs'd be mammon, when with treasure  
He doth to daring deeds incite;  
Or when to steep the soul in pleasure,  
He spreads the couch of soft delight.  
Curs'd be the grape's balsamic juice!  
Accurs'd love's dream, of joys the first!  
Accurs'd be hope! accurs'd be faith!  
And more than all, be patience curs'd!

CHORUS OF SPIRITS (*invisible*)

Woe! woe!  
 Thou hast destroy'd  
 The beautiful world  
 With violent blow;  
 'Tis shiver'd! 'tis shatter'd!  
 The fragments abroad by a demigod scatter'd!  
 Now we sweep  
 The wrecks into nothingness!  
 Fondly we weep  
 The beauty that's gone!  
 Thou, 'mongst the sons of earth,  
 Lofty and mighty one,  
 Build it once more!  
 In thine own bosom the lost world restore!  
 Now with unclouded sense  
 Enter a new career;  
 Songs shall salute thine ear,  
 Ne'er heard before!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

My little ones these spirits be.  
 Hark! with shrewd intelligence,  
 How they recommend to thee  
 Action, and the joys of sense!  
 In the busy world to dwell,  
 Fain they would allure thee hence;  
 Stagnate in this lonely cell,  
 Sap of life, and powers of sense.

Forbear to trifle longer with your grief,  
 Which, vulture-like, consumes you in this den.  
 The worst society is some relief,  
 You'll feel yourself a man with fellow-men.  
 Not that I'd thrust you 'mid the vulgar throng;  
 Nor do I to the upper ranks belong;  
 But if through life I may your steps attend,  
 I will at once engage to be your friend.  
 I am your comrade; should it suit your need,  
 Your servant I, your very slave indeed!

## FAUST

And how must I requite your service, pray?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

There's time enough to think of that!

## FAUST

Nay! Nay!

The devil is an egotist I know;  
And never for God's sake doth kindness show.  
Let the condition plainly be exprest;  
Such a domestic is a dangerous guest.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I'll pledge myself to be your servant *here*,  
Ne'er at your call to slumber or be still;  
But when together *yonder* we appear,  
You shall submissively obey my will.

## FAUST

But small concern I feel for yonder world,  
Hast thou this system into ruin hurl'd,  
Another may arise the void to fill.  
This earth the fountain whence my pleasures flow,  
This sun doth daily shine upon my woe,  
And can I but from these divorce my lot,  
Then come what may, — to me it matters not.  
Henceforward to this theme I close mine ears,  
Whether hereafter we shall hate and love,  
And whether, also, in those distant spheres,  
There is a depth below or height above.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

In this mood you may venture it. But make  
The compact, and at once I'll undertake  
To charm you with mine arts. I'll give you more  
Than mortal eye hath e'er beheld before.

## FAUST

And what, poor devil, hast thou to bestow?

Was mortal spirit, in its high endeavour,  
 E'er fathom'd by a being such as thou?  
 Yet food thou hast which satisfieth never,  
 Red gold indeed thou hast, that swiftly flies,  
 Gliding like restless quicksilver away,  
 A game, at which none ever win who play,  
 A damsel, who, while on my breast she lies,  
 To lure a neighbour fondly doth essay;  
 Thine, too, ambition's bright and godlike dream,  
 Baseless and transient as the meteor's gleam;  
 Show me the fruits that, ere they're pluck'd, decay,  
 And trees whose verdure buddeth every day.

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Such a demand affrights me not; with ease  
 I can provide you treasures such as these,  
 But in due course a season will come round,  
 When on what's good we may regale in peace.

#### FAUST

If e'er in indolent repose I'm found,  
 Then let my life upon the instant cease!  
 Can'st thou thy flatt'ring spells around me cast,  
 And cheat me into self-complacent pride,  
 Or sweet enjoyment, — Be that hour my last!  
 Be this our wager!

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Done!

#### FAUST

'Tis ratified!

If ever to the passing hour I say  
 "So beautiful thou art! thy flight delay!"  
 Then round my soul thy fetters throw,  
 Then to perdition let me go!  
 Then may the solemn death-bell sound,  
 Then from thy service thou art free,  
 The index-hand may cease its round,  
 And time be never more for me!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

We shall remember, pause, ere 'tis too late.

## FAUST

You're authoriz'd to do so if you choose,  
My strength I do not rashly overrate.  
Since here to be a slave I'm doom'd by fate,  
It matters little whether thine or whose.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

At your inaugural feast this very day,  
I will attend, my duties to commence.  
But one thing! — Accidents may happen, hence  
A line or two in writing grant I pray.

## FAUST

A writing, pedant, dost demand from me?  
Is man, and is man's word to thee unknown?  
Is't not enough that by my word alone  
I pledge my interest in eternity?  
Raves not the world in all its streams along,  
And must a promise my career impede?  
Yet in our hearts the prejudice is strong,  
And who from the delusion would be freed?  
How blest within whose bosom truth reigns pure,  
No sacrifice will he repent when made!  
A formal deed, with seal and signature,  
A spectre this from which all shrink afraid.  
The word resigns its essence in the pen,  
Leather and wax usurp the mast'ry then. —  
Spirit of evil! what dost thou require?  
Brass, marble, parchment, paper? Shall I use  
Style, pen, or graver? Name which you desire.  
To me it matters not, you've but to choose!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

With passion why so hotly burn,  
And thus your eloquence inflame?  
The merest scrap will serve our turn,  
And with a drop of blood you'll sign your name.



## FAUST

If this will satisfy you, well and good!  
I'll gratify your whim, howe'er absurd!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

A quite peculiar sort of juice is blood!

## FAUST

Be not afraid that I shall break my word.  
The present scope of all my energy,  
Is in exact accordance with my vow.  
With vain presumption I've aspir'd too high;  
I'm on a level but with such as thou;  
I am rejected by the great First Cause,  
Nature herself doth veil from me her laws;  
Rent is the web of thought, my mind  
Doth knowledge loathe of every kind.  
In depths of sensual pleasure drown'd,  
Let us our fiery passions still!  
Enwrapp'd in magic's veil profound,  
Let wondrous charms our senses thrill!  
Plunge we in time's tempestuous flow,  
Stem we the rolling surge of chance!  
There may alternate weal and woe,  
Success and failure, as they can,  
Mingle and shift in changeful dance,  
Excitement is the sphere for man.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Nor goal, nor measure is prescrib'd to you.  
If you desire to taste of every thing,  
To snatch at pleasure while upon the wing,  
May your career amuse and profit too.  
Only fall to and don't be over coy!

## FAUST

Hearken! The end I aim at is not joy.  
I crave excitement, agonizing bliss,  
Enamour'd hatred, quickening vexation.  
Purg'd from the love of knowledge, my vocation,

The scope of all my powers henceforth be this,  
 To bare my breast to every pang, — to know  
 In my heart's core all human weal and woe,  
 To grasp in thought the lofty and the deep,  
 Men's various fortunes on my breast to heap,  
 To their's dilate my individual mind,  
 And share at length the shipwreck of mankind.

### MEPHISTOPHELES

Oh, credit me, who still as ages roll,  
 Have chew'd this bitter fare from year to year,  
 No mortal, from the cradle to the bier,  
 Digests the ancient leaven. Know, this Whole  
 Doth for the Deity alone subsist!  
 He in eternal brightness doth exist,  
 Us unto darkness he hath brought, and here  
 Where day and night alternate, is your sphere.

### FAUST

But 'tis my will!

### MEPHISTOPHELES

Well spoken, I admit!  
 There is but one thing puzzles me, my friend;  
 Time's short, art long; methinks 't were only fit,  
 That you to friendly counsel should attend.  
 A poet choose as your ally,  
 Let him thought's wide dominion sweep,  
 Each good and noble quality,  
 Upon your honour'd brow to heap;  
 The lion's magnanimity,  
 The fleetness of the hind,  
 The fiery blood of Italy,  
 The Northern's firm enduring mind.  
 Let him for you the mystery solve, and show  
 How to combine high aims with cunning low,  
 And how, while young desires the heart inflame,  
 To fall in love according to a plan.  
 Myself would gladly meet with such a man,  
 And him I would Sir Microcosm name.

## FAUST

What then am I, if I may never hope  
The crown of our humanity to gain,  
Of all our energies the final scope?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Your own poor self you are, and must remain.  
Put on your head a wig with countless locks,  
Raise to a cubit's height your learned socks,  
To more than now you are you'll ne'er attain.

## FAUST

I feel it, I have heap'd upon my brain  
The gather'd treasure of man's thought in vain,  
And when at length from studious toil I rest,  
No power, new-born, springs up within my breast,  
A hair's breadth is not added to my height,  
I am no nearer to the infinite.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

These matters, sir, you view, indeed,  
Just as by other men they're view'd;  
We must more cleverly proceed,  
Before life's joys our grasp elude.  
The devil! thou hast hands and feet,  
And head and heart are also thine;  
What I enjoy with relish sweet,  
Is it on that account less mine?  
If for six horses I can pay,  
Do I not own their strength and speed?  
A proper man I dash away,  
As their two dozen legs were mine indeed.  
Up then, from idle pond'ring free,  
And forth into the world with me!  
I tell you what; — a speculating wretch,  
Is like a brute, on bare, uncultur'd ground,  
Driv'n by an evil spirit round and round,  
While all beyond rich pastures smiling stretch.

## FAUST

But how commence?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Why we with speed  
 Must leave this place of torture; you  
 A precious life of it must lead,  
 Tiring yourself and pupils too!  
 Leave it to neighbour Paunch; — withdraw,  
 Why plague yourself with thrashing straw?  
 The very best of what you know  
 You dare not to the youngsters show.  
 One in the passage waits to-day.

## FAUST

I'm in no mood to see him now.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Poor lad! He must be tir'd, I trow;  
 Hopeless he must not go away.  
 Hand me your cap and gown, I pray;  
 Now leave it to my wit; — the mask  
 Will suit me famously, —

*(He changes his dress)*

I ask

But quarter of an hour; meanwhile equip,  
 And make all ready for our pleasant trip!

*(Exit FAUST)*

MEPHISTOPHELES *(in FAUST'S long gown)*

Reason and Knowledge only thus contemn,  
 Despise the loftiest attributes of men,  
 Still let the Prince of lies, without control,  
 With shows, and mocking charms, delude thy soul,  
 I have thee unconditionally then —  
 Fate hath endow'd him with an ardent mind,  
 Which unrestrain'd still presses on for ever,  
 And whose precipitate and mad endeavour  
 O'erleaps itself, and leaves earth's joys behind.  
 Him will I drag along through life's wild waste,  
 Through scenes of vapid dulness, where at last  
 Bewilder'd, he shall falter, and stick fast;  
 And, as in mock'ry of his greedy háste,

Viands shall hang his craving lips beyond, —  
 Vainly he'll seek refreshment, anguish-tost,  
 And were he not the devil's by his bond,  
 Yet must his soul infallibly be lost!

*A STUDENT enters*

STUDENT

But recently I've quitted home,  
 Full of devotion am I come,  
 Attracted hither by the fame  
 Of one whom all with rev'rence name.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Your courtesy much flatters me!  
 A man like other men you see;  
 Pray have you yet applied elsewhere?

STUDENT

I would entreat your friendly care!  
 I've youthful blood and courage high;  
 Of gold I bring a fair supply;  
 My mother scarce would let me go;  
 But wisdom here I longed to know.

MEPHISTOPHELES

You've hit upon the very place.

STUDENT

And yet my steps I'd fain retrace.  
 These walls, this melancholy room,  
 O'erpower me with a sense of gloom.  
 The space is narrow, nothing green,  
 No friendly tree is to be seen;  
 And in these halls, the powers of sense  
 Forsake me, and intelligence.

MEPHISTOPHELES

It all depends on habit. Thus at first  
 The infant takes not kindly to the breast,  
 But soon delighted slakes its eager thirst,

To the maternal bosom fondly prest.  
Thus at the breasts of wisdom day by day,  
With keener relish you'll your thirst allay.

STUDENT

Enraptur'd I upon her neck will fall;  
How to attain it, Sir, be pleas'd to show.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Ere further you proceed, just let me know,  
What faculty you choose, and what your call?

STUDENT

Profoundly learned I should wish to grow,  
What heaven contains I'd comprehend,  
O'er earth's wide realm my gaze extend,  
Nature and science I desire to know.

MEPHISTOPHELES

You are upon the proper track I find;  
Take heed that nothing dissipates your mind.

STUDENT

My heart and soul are in the chase;  
Though to be sure I fain would seize  
On pleasant summer holidays,  
A little liberty and careless ease.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Waste not your time, so fast it flies;  
Method will teach you time to win;  
Hence, my young friend, I would advise,  
With college logic to begin.  
Then will your mind be so well brac'd,  
In Spanish boots so tightly lac'd,  
That on 'twill circumspectly creep,  
Thought's beaten track securely keep,  
Nor will it, ignis-fatuus like,  
Into the path of error strike.  
Then many a day they'll teach you how

The mind's spontaneous acts, till now  
 As eating and as drinking free,  
 Require a process; — one, two, three!  
 In truth the subtle web of thought  
 Is like the weaver's fabric wrought,  
 One treadle moves a thousand lines,  
 Swift dart the shuttles to and fro,  
 Unseen the threads unnumber'd flow,  
 A thousand knots one stroke combines.  
 Then forward steps your sage to show,  
 And prove to you it must be so;  
 The first being so, and so the second,  
 The third and fourth deduc'd we see;  
 And if there were no first and second,  
 Nor third nor fourth would ever be.  
 This, scholars of all countries prize,  
 Yet 'mong themselves no weavers rise.  
 Who would describe and study aught alive,  
 Seeks first the living spirit thence to drive;  
 Then are the lifeless fragments in his hand,  
 There only fails, alas! the spirit-band.  
 This process, chemists name, in learned thesis,  
 Mocking themselves, *Naturæ encheiresis*.

## STUDENT

Your words I cannot fully comprehend.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

In a short time you will improve, my friend,  
 If of scholastic forms you learn the use;  
 And how by method all things to reduce.

## STUDENT

I feel, so doth all this my brain confound,  
 As if a mill-wheel there were turning round.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

And next to this, before aught else you learn,  
 You must with zeal to metaphysics turn!  
 There see that you profoundly comprehend,



What doth the limit of man's brain transcend;  
 For that which is or is not in the head  
 A sounding phrase will serve you in good stead.  
 But before all strive this half year  
 From one fix'd order ne'er to swerve.  
 Five lectures daily you must hear;  
 The hour still punctually observe!  
 Yourself with studious zeal prepare,  
 And every paragraph o'erlook,  
 That you may then be quite aware  
 He never deviates from the book;  
 Yet write away without cessation,  
 As at the Holy Ghost's dictation!

## STUDENT

This, Sir, a second time you need not say!  
 Your prudent counsel I appreciate quite;  
 For, what we've written down in black and white,  
 We can in peace and comfort bear away.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

But a profession I entreat you name.

## STUDENT

For jurisprudence I've no taste, I own.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

To me this branch of science is well known,  
 And hence I cannot your repugnance blame.  
 Laws are a fatal heritage, —  
 Like a disease, an heir-loom dread;  
 Their curse they trail from age to age,  
 And furtively abroad they spread.  
 Reason doth nonsense, good doth evil grow;  
 That thou'rt a grandson is thy woe!  
 But of the law on man impress'd  
 By nature's hand, there's ne'er a thought.

## STUDENT

You deepen my dislike; how blest  
 The pupil who by you is taught!

To try theology I'm half inclin'd.

MEPHISTOPHELES

I would not lead you willingly astray,  
 But as regards this science you will find,  
 'Tis difficult to shun the erring way,  
 It offers so much poison in disguise,  
 Which scarce from med'cine you can recognize.  
 Here too, 'tis best to listen but to one,  
 And by the master's words to swear alone.  
 To sum up all — To words hold fast!  
 Then the safe gate securely pass'd,  
 You'll reach the fane of certainty at last.

STUDENT

But then some meaning must the words convey.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Right! But o'er-anxious thought's of no avail;  
 For there precisely where ideas fail,  
 A word comes opportunely into play.  
 Most admirable weapons words are found,  
 On words a system we securely ground,  
 In words we can conveniently believe,  
 Nor can we of one jot a word bereave.

STUDENT

Your pardon for my importunity;  
 With but one more request I'll trouble you.  
 Ere I retire, I'll thank you to supply  
 A pregnant utt'rance touching med'cine too!  
 Three years! how brief the appointed tide!  
 The field, heaven knows, is all too wide!  
 If but a friendly hint be thrown,  
 'Tis easier then to feel one's way.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*)

I'm weary of this dry pedantic tone,  
 And must again the genuine devil play.

(*Aloud*)

Of med'cine you the spirit catch with ease;

The great and little world you study thro',  
 Then in conclusion, just as heaven may please,  
 You let things quietly their course pursue;  
 In vain you range through science' ample space,  
 Each man learns only that which learn he can;  
 Who knows the passing moment to embrace,  
 He is your proper man.  
 In person you are tolerably made,  
 Nor in assurance will you be deficient,  
 Self-confidence acquire, be not afraid,  
 The world will then esteem you a proficient.  
 Learn how to treat the sex, of that be sure;  
 Their thousand ahs and ohs  
 The sapient doctor knows,  
 He from a single point alone can cure.  
 Assume a decent tone of courteous ease,  
 You have them then to humour as you please.  
 First a diploma must belief infuse,  
 That you in your profession take the lead;  
 You then at once those easy freedoms use,  
 For which another many a year must plead;  
 Learn how to feel with nice address  
 The dainty wrist; — and how to press,  
 With furtive glance, the slender waist,  
 To feel how tightly it is lac'd.

#### STUDENT

There's sense in that! one sees the how and why.

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Grey is, young friend, all theory;  
 And green of life the golden tree.

#### STUDENT

I swear it seemeth like a dream to me.  
 May I some future time repeat my visit,  
 To hear on what your rev'rence grounds your views?

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Command my humble service when you choose.

## STUDENT

Ere I retire, one boon I must solicit:  
 Here is my album, do not, Sir, deny  
 This token of your favour.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Willingly.

*(He writes and returns the book)*

STUDENT *(reads)*

ERITIS SICUT DEUS, SCIENTES BONUM ET MALUM.

*(He reverently closes the book and retires)*

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Let but this ancient proverb be your rule,  
 My cousin follow still, the wily snake,  
 And with your likeness to the gods, poor fool,  
 Ere long be sure your poor sick heart will quake!

FAUST *(enters)*

Whither away?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

'Tis your's our course to steer.  
 The world, both great and small, we'll view;  
 With what delight and profit too,  
 You'll revel through your gay career!

## FAUST

But with my length of beard I also need  
 The easy manners that insure success;  
 Th' attempt I'm certain never can succeed;  
 To mingle in the world I want address;  
 I still have an embarrass'd air, and then  
 I feel myself so small with other men.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Time, my good friend, will all that's needful give;  
 Gain self-reliance, and you've learn'd to live.

## FAUST

But how do you propose to start, I pray?  
Your horses, servants, carriage, where are they?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

We've but to spread our mantles wide,  
They'll serve whereon through air to ride.  
No heavy baggage need you take,  
When we our bold excursion make.  
A little gas which I'll prepare  
Lifts us from earth; aloft through air,  
Light laden, we shall swiftly steer; —  
I wish you joy of your new life-career.

*Auerbach's Cellar in Leipzig*

## (A DRINKING PARTY)

## FROSCH

No drinking? Nought a laugh to raise?  
None of your gloomy looks, I pray!  
You, who so bright were wont to blaze,  
Are dull as wetted straw to-day.

## BRANDER

'Tis all your fault; no part you bear,  
No beastliness, no folly.

## FROSCH

*(pours a glass of wine over his head)*

There,

You have them both!

## BRANDER

You double beast!

## FROSCH

'Tis what you ask'd me for, at least!

## SIEBEL

Whoever quarrels, turn him out! '—

With open throat drink, roar, and shout.  
Hollo! Hollo! Ho!

ALTMAYER

Zounds, fellow, cease your deaf'ning cheers!  
Bring cotton here! He splits my ears.

SIEBEL

'Tis when the roof rings back the tone,  
The full power of the bass is known.

FROSCH

Right! out with him who takes offence!  
A tara lara la!

ALTMAYER

A tara lara la!

FROSCH

Our throats are tun'd. Come let's commence.

*(Sings)*

The holy Roman empire now,  
How holds it still together?

BRANDER

An ugly song! Psha! a political song!  
A song offensive! Thank God, every morn  
That you to rule the empire were not born!  
I always bless my stars that mine is not  
Either a kaiser's or a chancellor's lot.  
Yet 'mong ourselves one still should rule the rest;  
That we elect a pope I now suggest.  
What qualifies a man for consecration  
Ye know, and what ensures his elevation.

FROSCH (*sings*)

Bear, lady nightingale above,  
Ten thousand greetings to my love

SIEBEL

No amorous trash! No greetings shall there be!

## FROSCH

Greetings and kisses too! Who'll hinder me?

*(Sings)*

Undo the bolt, in stilly night,

Undo the bolt, thy love's awake!

Shut to the bolt with morning light!

## SIEBEL

Ay, sing away, her praises celebrate!

My turn for laughing will come round some day.

She jilted me, you the same trick she'll play.

To have a goblin-lover be her fate,

To toy with her upon some lone cross-way!

Or fresh from Blocksberg, may an old he-goat

Send her a greeting from his hairy throat!

A proper lad of genuine flesh and blood,

Is for the saucy damsel far too good;

I'll in her honour hear of no love-strains,

Unless it be to smash her window-panes!

BRANDER *(striking on the table)*

Silence! Attend! to me give ear!

That I know life you must admit;

Some love-sick folk are sitting here;

Hence, ere we part, it is but fit,

To sing them a good night their hearts to cheer.

Hark! of the newest fashion is my song!

Strike boldly in the chorus, clear and strong!

*(He sings)*

Once in a cellar lived a rat,

He feasted there on butter,

Until his paunch became as fat

As that of Dr. Luther.

The cook laid poison for the guest,

Then was his heart with pangs oppress'd,

As if his frame love wasted.

CHORUS *(shouting)*

As if his frame love wasted.



## BRANDER

He ran around, he ran abroad,  
 Of every puddle drinking,  
 The house with rage he scratch'd and gnaw'd,  
 In vain, — he fast was sinking;  
 Full many an anguish'd bound he gave,  
 Nothing the hapless brute could save,  
 As if his frame love wasted.

## CHORUS

As if his frame love wasted.

## BRANDER

By torture driven, in open day,  
 The kitchen he invaded,  
 Convuls'd upon the hearth he lay,  
 With anguish sorely jaded;  
 The poisoner laugh'd, Ha! ha! quoth she,  
 His life is ebbing fast, I see,  
 As if his frame love wasted.

## CHORUS

As if his frame love wasted.

## SIEBEL

How the dull boors exulting shout!  
 A fine exploit it is no doubt,  
 Poison for the poor rats to strew!

## BRANDER

They, as it seems, stand well with you!

## ALTMAYER

Old bald-pate! with the paunch profound!  
 The rat's mishap hath tam'd his nature;  
 For he his counterpart hath found  
 Depicted in the swoll'n creature.

## FAUST AND MEPHISTOPHELES

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I now must introduce to you  
 Before aught else, this jovial crew,  
 To show how lightly life may glide away;  
 With them each day's a holiday.  
 With little wit and much content,  
 Each on his own small round intent,  
 Like sportive kitten with its tail,  
 While no sick-headache they bewail,  
 And while their host will credit give,  
 Joyous and free from care they live.

## BRANDER

They're off a journey, that is clear, —  
 They look so strange; they've scarce been here  
 An hour.

## FROSCH

You're right! Leipzig's the place for me!  
 'Tis quite a little Paris; people there  
 Acquire a certain, easy, finish'd air.

## SIEBEL

What take you now these travellers to be?

## FROSCH

Let me alone! O'er a full glass you'll see,  
 As easily I'll worm their secret out,  
 As draw an infant's tooth. I've not a doubt  
 That my two gentlemen are nobly born,  
 They look dissatisfied, and full of scorn.

## BRANDER

They are but mountebanks, I'll lay a bet!

## ALTMAYER

Most like.

FROSCH

Mark me, I'll screw it from them yet!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to* FAUST)

These fellows would not scent the devil out,  
E'en though he had them by the very throat.

FAUST

Your humble servant, gentlemen!

SIEBEL

Thanks, we return your fair salute.

(*Aside, glancing at* MEPHISTOPHELES)

How! goes the fellow on a halting foot?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Are we allow'd to sit among you? Then,  
Though no good liquor is forthcoming here,  
Good company at least our hearts will cheer.

ALTMAYER

You're a fastidious gentleman, 'tis clear.

FROSCH

You're doubtless recently from Rippach? Pray,  
Did you with Mr. Hans there chance to sup?

MEPHISTOPHELES

To-day we pass'd him, but we did not stop!  
When last we spoke with him he'd much to say  
Touching his cousins, and to each he sent  
Full many a greeting and kind compliment.

(*With an inclination towards* FROSCH)

ALTMAYER (*aside to* FROSCH)

You have it there!

SIEBEL

Faith! he's a knowing one!

## FROSCH

Have patience! I will show him up anon!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Unless I err, as we drew near  
We heard some practis'd voices pealing.  
A song must admirably here  
Re-echo from this vaulted ceiling!

## FROSCH

That you're an amateur one plainly sees!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Oh no, though strong the love, I lack the skill.

## ALTMAYER

Give us a song!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

As many as you will.

## SIEBEL

But let it be a new one, if you please!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

But just return'd from beauteous Spain are we,  
The pleasant land of wine and minstrelsy.

*(Sings)*

Once on a time a monarch  
Possess'd a splendid flea.

## FROSCH

Hark! did you catch the words? a flea, —  
An odd sort of a guest he needs must be.

MEPHISTOPHELES *(sings)*

Once on a time a monarch  
Possess'd a splendid flea,  
The which he fondly cherish'd,

As his own son were he!  
 His tailor then he summon'd,  
 The tailor to him goes:  
 Now measure me the youngster  
 For breeches and for hose!

#### BRANDER

Let him the tailor strictly charge,  
 The nicest measurement to take,  
 And as he loves his head, to make  
 The breeches smooth and not too large!

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

In satin and in velvet,  
 Behold the younker dress'd;  
 Bedizen'd o'er with ribbons,  
 A cross upon his breast.  
 Prime minister they made him,  
 He wore a star of state;  
 And all his poor relations  
 Were courtiers, rich and great.

The gentlemen and ladies  
 At court were sore distress'd;  
 The queen and all her maidens  
 Were bitten by the pest,  
 And yet they dar'd not scratch them,  
 Or chase the fleas away.  
 If we are bit, we catch them  
 And crush without delay.

#### CHORUS *(shouting)*

If we are bit, &c.

#### FROSCH

Bravo! That's the song for me!

#### SIEBEL

Such be the fate of every flea!

#### BRANDER

With clever finger catch and kill!

ALTMAYER

Hurrah for wine and freedom still!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Were but your wine a trifle better, friend,  
A glass to liberty I'd gladly drain.

SIEBEL

You'd better not repeat those words again!

MEPHISTOPHELES

I am afraid the landlord to offend;  
Else freely would I treat each worthy guest  
From our own cellar to the very best.

SIEBEL

Out with it then! Lay all the blame on me.

FROSCH

Give a good glass, and loud our praise shall be;  
But hark'ye, to the brim our glasses crown,  
For if a judgment is requir'd from me,  
An ample mouthful I must swallow down.

ALTMAYER *(aside)*

I guess, they're from the Rhenish land.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Fetch me a gimlet!

BRANDER

What therewith to bore?  
You cannot have the wine-casks at the door?

ALTMAYER

A tool-chest of our host doth yonder stand.

MEPHISTOPHELES *(takes the gimlet)*  
*(To FROSCH)*

Now say! what liquor will you take?

FROSCH

How mean you? have you every sort?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Each may his own selection make.

ALTMAYER (to Frosch)

You lick your lips already at the thought.

FROSCH

If I've my choice, the Rhenish I propose;  
The fairest gifts the fatherland bestows.

MEPHISTOPHELES

*(boring a hole in the edge of the table opposite to where  
FROSCH is sitting)*

Now get some wax — and make some stoppers — quick!

ALTMAYER

Why this is nothing but a juggler's trick.

Mephistopheles (to BRANDER)  
And you?

BRANDER

Champagne's the wine for me;  
Right brisk, and sparkling let it be!

*(MEPHISTOPHELES bores, one of the party has in the  
meantime prepared the wax-stoppers and stopped the  
holes)*

BRANDER

Your foreign things one always can't decline,  
What's good is often scatter'd far apart.  
A German hates the French with all his heart.  
Yet still he has a relish for their wine.

SIEBEL

*(as MEPHISTOPHELES approaches him)*

I like not acid wine, I must allow,  
Give me a glass of genuine sweet!

MEPHISTOPHELES

*(bores)*

Tokay

Shall, if you wish it, flow without delay.

ALTMAYER

Come! look me in the face! no fooling now!

You are but making fun of us, I trow.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Ah! ah! that would indeed be making free

With such distinguished guests. Come, no delay;

What liquor can I serve you with, I pray?

ALTMAYER

Only be quick, it matters not to me.

*(After the holes are all bored and stopped)*

MEPHISTOPHELES

*(with strange gestures)*

Grapes the vine-stock bears!

Horns the buck-goat wears,

Wine is sap, the vine is wood,

The table yieldeth wine as good.

With a deeper glance and true

The mysteries of nature view!

Have faith and here's a miracle!

Your stoppers draw and drink your fill!

ALL

*(as they draw the stoppers and the wine chosen by each runs into his glass)*

Oh beauteous spring, which flows so fair!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Spill not a single drop, beware!

*(They drink repeatedly)*

ALL

*(sing)*

Happy as cannibals are we,

Or as five hundred swine.

MEPHISTOPHELES

They're in their glory, mark their elevation!



FAUST

Let's hence, nor here our stay prolong.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Attend, of brutishness ere long  
You'll see a glorious revelation.

SIEBEL

*(drinks carelessly; the wine is spilt upon the ground, and turns  
to flame)*

Help! fire! help! Hell is burning here!

MEPHISTOPHELES

*(addressing the flames)*

Peace, friendly element! Be still, I say!

*(To the Company)*

A drop of purgatory! never fear!

SIEBEL

What means the knave! For this you'll dearly pay;  
With whom you're dealing, Sir, you do not know.

FROSCH

Such tricks a second time he'd better show!

ALTMAYER

'Twere well we pack'd him quietly away.

SIEBEL

What, sir! with us your hocus-pocus play!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Silence, old wine-cask!

SIEBEL

How! add insult, too!

Vile broomstick!

BRANDER

Hold! or blows shall rain on you!

ALTMAYER

*(Draws a stopper out of the table; fire springs out against him)*

I burn! I burn!

SIEBEL

'Tis sorcery, I vow!

Strike home! The fellow is fair game, I trow!

*(They draw their knives and attack MEPHISTOPHELES)*

MEPHISTOPHELES *(with solemn gestures)*

Visionary scenes appear!

Words delusive cheat the ear!

Be ye there, and be ye here!

*(They stand amazed and gaze on each other)*

ALTMAYER

Where am I? What a beauteous land?

FROSCH

Vineyards! unless my sight deceives?

SIEBEL

And clust'ring grapes too, close at hand!

BRANDER

And underneath the spreading leaves,

What stems there be!

What grapes I see!

*(He seizes SIEBEL by the nose. The others reciprocally do the same, and raise their knives)*

MEPHISTOPHELES *(as above)*

Delusion, from their eyes the bandage take!

Note how the devil loves a jest to break!

*(He disappears with FAUST; the fellows draw back from one another)*

SIEBEL

What was it?

ALTMAYER

How?

FROSCH

Was that your nose?

BRANDER (*to SIEBEL*)

And look, my hand doth thine enclose!

ALTMAYER

I felt the shock through every limb!  
A chair! I'm fainting! All things swim!

FROSCH

Say what has happen'd, what's it all about?

SIEBEL

Where is the fellow? Could I scent him out,  
His body from his soul I'd soon divide!

ALTMAYER

With my own eyes, upon a cask astride,  
Forth through the cellar-door I saw him ride ——  
Like lumps of lead my feet are growing.

(*Turning to the table*)

I wonder, is the wine still flowing?

SIEBEL

'Twas all a cheat, our senses to deceive.

FROSCH

Yet I made sure that I was drinking wine.

BRANDER

How was it with the grapes and with the vine?

ALTMAYER

Who miracles henceforth will disbelieve?

## WITCHES' KITCHEN

*A large caldron hangs over the fire on a low hearth; various figures appear in the flames rising from it. A FEMALE MONKEY sits beside the caldron to skim it, and watch that it does not boil over. The MALE MONKEY with the young ones is seated near, warming himself. The walls and ceiling are adorned with the strangest articles of witch-furniture*

FAUST, MEPHISTOPHELES

FAUST

This senseless, juggling witchcraft I detest;  
 Dost promise me, forsooth, that in this nest  
 Of loathsome madness, I shall be restor'd?  
 Must I seek counsel from an ancient dame?  
 And can she cancel, by these rites abhorr'd  
 Full thirty winters, and renew my frame?  
 Woe's me, if thou nought better can'st suggest!  
 Hope has already vanish'd from my breast;  
 Has neither nature nor a noble mind  
 A balsam yet devis'd of any kind?

MEPHISTOPHELES

My friend, you now speak sensibly. In truth,  
 There is one method of renewing youth;  
 But in another book the lesson's writ; —  
 It forms a curious chapter I admit.

FAUST

I'd know it.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Good! A natural means to try  
 Without physician, gold, or sorcery:  
 Away forthwith, and to the fields repair,  
 Begin to delve, to cultivate the ground,  
 Confine your senses to one narrow round,  
 Support yourself upon the simplest fare.  
 Live like a very brute the brutes among,  
 Esteem it neither robbery nor wrong,  
 The harvest, which you reap, yourself to dung.

This method, friend, believe me, will avail,  
At eighty to continue young and hale!

FAUST

I am not used to it, nor can degrade  
So far my nature as to ply the spade.  
For this mean life, my spirit soars too high.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Then to the witch, we must perforce apply.

FAUST

Will none but just this ancient beldame do?  
Can'st not thyself the magic bev'rage brew?

MEPHISTOPHELES

A pretty play out leisure to beguile!  
A thousand bridges I could build meanwhile;  
Not science only and consummate art,  
Patience must in the process bear her part.  
A quiet spirit worketh whole years long;  
Time only makes the subtle ferment strong.  
And all things that belong thereto,  
Are wondrous and exceeding rare!  
The devil taught her, it is true;  
But yet the draught the devil can't prepare.

*(Perceiving the beasts)*

Look yonder, what a pretty race!  
Both lass and lad; in both what grace!

*(To the beasts)*

It seems your dame is not at home?

THE MONKEYS

Gone to carouse,  
Out of the house,  
Thro' the chimney and away!

MEPHISTOPHELES

How long is it her wont to roam?

THE MONKEYS

While we can warm our paws she'll stay.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*To FAUST*)

What think you of the charming creatures?

## FAUST

I loathe alike their form and features!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Nay, a discourse so exquisite,  
Is that in which I most delight!

(*To THE MONKEYS*)

Tell me, ye whelps, accursed crew!  
What stir ye in the broth about?

## MONKEYS

Coarse beggar's gruel here we stew.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Of customers you'll have a rout.

## THE HE-MONKEY

(*approaching and fawning on MEPHISTOPHELES*)

Quick! quick! throw the dice,  
Make me rich in a trice,  
Oh give me the prize!  
Alas, for myself!  
Had I plenty of pelf,  
I then should be wise.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

How happy would the monkey be,  
Could he put in the lottery!

(*In the meantime the young MONKEYS have been playing with a large  
globe, which they roll forwards*)

## THE HE-MONKEY

The world here behold;  
Unceasingly roll'd.  
It riseth and falleth éver;

It ringeth like glass!  
 How brittle, alas!  
 'Tis hollow, and resteth never.  
 How bright the sphere,  
 Still brighter here!  
 Alive am I?  
 Dear son, beware!  
 Ne'er venture there!  
 Thou too must die!  
 It is of clay;  
 'Twill crumble away;  
 There fragments lie.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Of what use is the sieve?

THE HE-MONKEY (*taking it down*)

The sieve would show,  
 If thou wert a thief or no?  
 (*He runs to the SHE-MONKEY, and makes her look through it*)  
 Look through the sieve!  
 Dost know him the thief,  
 And dar'st thou not call him so?

MEPHISTOPHELES (*approaching the fire*)

And then this pot?

THE MONKEYS

The half-witted sot!  
 He knows not the pot!  
 He knows not the kettle!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Unmannerly beast!  
 Be civil at least!

THE HE-MONKEY

Take the whisk and sit down in the settle!  
 (*He makes MEPHISTOPHELES sit down*)

## FAUST

*(Who all this time has been standing before a looking-glass, now approaching, and now retiring from it)*

What do I see? what form, whose charms transcend  
 The loveliness of earth, is mirror'd here!  
 O Love, to waft me to her blissful sphere,  
 The swiftest of thy downy pinions lend!  
 If I remain not rooted to this place,  
 If to approach more near I'm fondly lur'd,  
 Her image fades, in veiling mist obscur'd.  
 Model of beauty both in form and face!  
 Is't possible? Hath woman charms so rare?  
 Is that recumbent form, supremely fair,  
 The very essence of all heavenly grace?  
 Can aught so exquisite on earth be found?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

The six days' labour of a god, my friend,  
 Who doth himself cry bravo, at the end,  
 By something clever doubtless should be crown'd.  
 For this time gaze your fill, and when you please  
 Just such a prize for you I can provide;  
 How blest to whom propitious fate decrees,  
 To carry to his home the lovely bride!

*(FAUST continues to gaze into the mirror. MEPHISTOPHELES stretching himself on the settle and playing with the whisk, continues to speak)*

Here I sit, like a monarch on his throne;  
 My sceptre this; — the crown I want alone.

## THE MONKEY

*(Who have hitherto been making all sorts of strange gestures, bring MEPHISTOPHELES a crown, with loud cries)*

Oh, be so good,  
 With sweat and with blood  
 The crown to lime!

*(They handle the crown awkwardly and break it in two pieces, with which they skip about)*



'Twas fate's decree!  
 We speak and see!  
 We hear and rhyme.

FAUST (*before the mirror*)

Woe's me! well-nigh distraught I feel!

MEPHISTOPHELES

(*pointing to the beasts*)

And e'en my head begins to reel.

THE MONKEYS

If good luck attend,  
 If fitly things blend,  
 Our jargon with thought  
 And with reason is fraught!

FAUST (*as above*)

Fire is kindl'd in my breast!  
 Let us begone! nor linger here!

MEPHISTOPHELES

(*in the same position*)

It now at least must be confess'd,  
 That poets sometimes are sincere.

(*The caldron which the SHE-MONKEY has neglected, begins to boil over; a great flame arises, which streams up the chimney. The WITCH comes down the chimney with horrible cries*)

THE WITCH

Ough! ough! ough! ough!  
 Accursed brute! accursed sow!  
 Thou dost neglect the pot, for shame!  
 Accursed brute to scorch the dame!

(*Perceiving FAUST and MEPHISTOPHELES*)

Whom have we here?  
 Who's sneaking here?  
 Whence are ye come?  
 With what desire?

The plague of fire  
Your bones consume!

*(She dips the skimming-ladle into the caldron and throws flames  
at FAUST, MEPHISTOPHELES, and the MONKEYS.  
The MONKEYS whine)*

MEPHISTOPHELES  
*(twirling the whisk which he holds in his hand, and striking  
among the glasses and pots)*

Dash! Smash!  
Glasses crash!  
There lies the slime!  
'Tis but a jest,  
I but keep time  
Thou hellish pest  
To thine own chime.

*(While the WITCH steps back in rage and astonishment)*  
You skeleton! you scarecrow! How!  
Know you your lord and master now?  
What should prevent my dashing you  
To atoms, with your monkey-crew!  
Have you for my red vest no more respect?  
Does my cock's feather no allegiance claim?  
Have I conceal'd my visage? recollect!  
My rank must I be forc'd myself to name?

THE WITCH

Master, forgive this rude salute!  
But I perceive no cloven foot.  
And your two ravens, where are they?

MEPHISTOPHELES

This once I must admit your plea; —  
For truly I must own that we  
Have liv'd apart for many a day.  
The culture, too, that shapes the world, at last  
Hath e'en the devil in its sphere embrac'd;  
The northern phantom from the scene hath pass'd,  
Tail, talons, horns, are nowhere to be trac'd!  
As for the foot, with which I can't dispense,

'Twould injure me in company, and hence,  
Like some young gallants through the world who steer,  
False calves I now have worn for many a year.

THE WITCH (*dancing*)

I am beside myself with joy,  
To see the gallant Satan here!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Woman, no more that name employ!

THE WITCH

But why? what mischief hath it done?

MEPHISTOPHELES

To fable it too long hath appertain'd;  
But people from the change have nothing won.  
Rid of the evil one, the evil has remain'd.  
Call me Lord Baron, so the matter's good;  
Of other cavaliers the mien I wear.  
You make no question of my gentle blood;  
Mark well, this is the scutcheon that I bear!

(*He makes an unseemly gesture*)

THE WITCH

(*laughing immoderately*)

Just like yourself! You're still, I see,  
The same mad wag you us'd to be!

MEPHISTOPHELES

(*to FAUST*)

My friend, learn this to understand, I pray!  
To deal with witches this is still the way.

THE WITCH

Now tell me, gentlemen, what you desire?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Of your known juice a goblet we require.  
But for the very oldest let me ask!  
With years its virtue doubles, as you know.

## THE WITCH

Most willingly! And here I have a flask,  
 From which I've sipp'd a drop myself ere now;  
 What's more, it doth no longer stink.  
 To you a glass I joyfully will give.

(*Aside*)

If unprepar'd, however, this man drink,  
 He hath not, as you know, an hour to live.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

He's my good friend, with whom 'twill prosper well;  
 I grudge him not the choicest of your store.  
 Now draw your circle, speak your spell,  
 And straight a bumper for him pour!

(*The WITCH, with extraordinary gestures, describes a circle, and places strange things within it. The glasses meanwhile begin to ring, the caldron to sound, and to make music. Lastly, she brings a great book; places the MONKEYS in the circle to serve her as a desk, and to hold the torches. She beckons FAUST to approach*)

FAUST (to MEPHISTOPHELES)

Tell me, to what doth all this tend?  
 Where will these frantic gestures end?  
 This loathsome cheat, this senseless stuff  
 I've known and hated long enough.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Mere mummery, a laugh to raise!  
 Pray don't be so fastidious! She  
 But as a leech, her hocus-pocus plays,  
 That well with you her potion may agree.

(*He compels FAUST to enter the circle.*)

(*The WITCH, with a strange emphasis, begins to declaim from the book.*)

Be't known to men!  
 From one make ten,  
 And pass two o'er,  
 And lose the four,

Even make three —  
 So art thou rich.  
 Thus saith the witch,  
 To five affix  
 The number six,  
 Then you have straight  
 Made seven and eight,  
 And nine is one,  
 And ten is none,  
 This is the witch's one-time-one!

FAUST

Like feverish raving sounds the witch's spell.

MEPHISTOPHELES

There's yet much more to come, I know it well,  
 So the whole volume rings; both time and pains  
 I've thrown away, in puzzling o'er its pages,  
 For downright contradiction still remains  
 Alike mysterious both to fools and sages.  
 Ancient the art and modern too, my friend.  
 'Tis still the fashion as it used to be,  
 Error instead of truth abroad to send  
 By means of three and one, and one and three.  
 'Tis ever taught and babbl'd in the schools.  
 Who'd take the trouble to dispute with fools?  
 When words men hear, they usually believe,  
 That there must needs be something to conceive.

THE WITCH *(continues)*

The lofty power  
 Of wisdom's dower,  
 From all the world conceal'd!  
 Who thinketh not,  
 To him I wot,  
 Unsought it is reveal'd.

FAUST

What nonsense doth the hag propound?  
 My brain it doth well-nigh confound.  
 A hundred thousand fools or more,  
 Her words in chorus seem to roar.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Incomparable Sibyl cease, I pray!  
 Hand us your liquor without more delay.  
 And hark ye, to the brim the goblet crown;  
 My friend he is, and need not be afraid;  
 Besides, he is a man of many a grade,  
 Who hath drunk deep already.

*(The WITCH, with many ceremonies, pours the liquor into a cup;  
 as FAUST lifts it to his mouth, a light flame arises)*

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Gulp it down!

No hesitation! It will prove  
 A cordial, and your heart inspire!  
 What! with the devil hand and glove,  
 And yet shrink back afraid of fire?

*(The WITCH dissolves the circle. FAUST steps out)*

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Now forth at once! you must not rest.

## WITCH

And much, sir, may the liquor profit you!

MEPHISTOPHELES *(to the WITCH)*

And if to pleasure you I aught can do;  
 Pray on Walpurgis mention your request.

## WITCH

Here is a song, sung o'er sometimes, you'll see  
 That 'twill a singular effect produce.

MEPHISTOPHELES *(to FAUST)*

Come, quick, and let yourself be led by me;  
 You must perspire, in order that the juice  
 May penetrate your frame through every part.  
 Your noble indolence you'll learn to prize,  
 And soon with ecstasy you'll recognize  
 How Cupid stirs and gambols in your heart.

## FAUST

Let me but gaze one moment in the glass!  
Too lovely was that female form!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Nay! nay!

A model which all women shall surpass,  
In flesh and blood ere long you will survey.

*(Aside)*

As works the draught, you presently shall greet  
A Helen in each female form you meet.

*A Street*

FAUST (*MARGARET passing by*)

## FAUST

Without offence, fair lady, may I dare  
To offer you my arm and escort, pray?

## MARGARET

I am no lady and I am not fair,  
Without an escort I can find my way.

*(She disengages herself and exit)*

## FAUST

By heaven! This girl is fair indeed!  
No form like her's can I recall.  
Virtue she hath, and modest heed,  
Is piquant too, and sharp withal.  
Her cheek's soft light, her rosy lips,  
No length of time will e'er eclipse!  
Her downward glance in passing by,  
Deep in my heart is stamp'd for aye;  
Her very anger charm'd me too,—  
My ravish'd heart to rapture grew!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*enters*)

## FAUST

This girl you must procure for me.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Which?

## FAUST

She who but now pass'd.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

What! She?

Straight from her priest she cometh here,  
From every sin absolv'd and clear;  
I crept near the confessor's chair,  
All innocence her virgin soul,  
For next to nothing went she there;  
O'er such as she I've no control!

## FAUST

She's just fourteen.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

You really talk  
Like any gay Lothario,  
Who'd pluck each floweret from its stalk,  
And deems nor honour, grace, or truth,  
Secure against his arts, forsooth.  
But this you'll find wont always do.

## FAUST

Sir Moralizer, prithee, pause;  
Nor plague me with your tiresome laws.  
To cut the matter short, my friend,  
She must this very night be mine, —  
And if to help me you decline,  
Midnight shall see our compact end.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

What may occur just bear in mind!  
A fortnight's space, at least, I need,  
A fit occasion but to find.

## FAUST

With but seven hours I could succeed;



Nor should I want the devil's wile,  
So young a creature to beguile.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Like any Frenchman now you speak,  
But do not fret, I pray; why seek  
To hurry to enjoyment straight?  
The pleasure is not half so great,  
As when the interest to prolong  
You trifle with your love, until  
You mould the puppet to your will,  
As pictur'd in Italian song.

FAUST

No such incentives do I need.

MEPHISTOPHELES

But now, without offence or jest;  
You cannot quickly, I protest,  
In winning this sweet child succeed.  
By storm we cannot take the fort,  
To stratagem we must resort.

FAUST

Conduct me to her place of rest!  
Some token of the angel bring!  
A 'kerchief from her snowy breast,  
A garter bring me, — any thing!

MEPHISTOPHELES

That I my anxious zeal may prove,  
Your pangs to sooth and aid your love,  
I will proceed without delay,  
And bear you to her room away.

FAUST

And shall I see her? — call her mine?

MEPHISTOPHELES

No! at a friend's she'll be to-day;  
But in her absence, I opine,  
You in her atmosphere alone,

The tedious hours may well employ  
In blissful dreams of future joy.

FAUST

Can we go now?

MEPHISTOPHELES

'Tis yet too soon.

FAUST

Some present for my love procure. *(Exit)*

MEPHISTOPHELES

Presents so soon! 'tis well! success is sure!  
I know full many a secret store  
Of treasure, buried long before,  
I must a little look them o'er. *(Exit)*

*Evening. A neat little Room*

MARGARET

*(braiding and binding up her hair)*

I would give something now to know,  
Who yonder gentleman could be!  
He had a gallant air, I trow,  
And doubtless was of high degree!  
That from his noble brow I told,  
Nor would he else have been so bold. *(Exit)*

MEPHISTOPHELES

Come in! tread softly! be discreet!

FAUST *(after a pause)*

Begone and leave me, I entreat!

MEPHISTOPHELES *(looking round)*

Not every maiden is so neat. *(Exit)*

FAUST *(gazing round)*

Welcome sweet twilight-gloom which reigns,

Through this dim place of hallow'd rest!  
 Fond yearning love, inspire my breast,  
 Feeding on hope's sweet dew thy blissful pains.  
 What stillness here environs me!  
 Content and order brood around.  
 What fulness in this poverty!  
 In this small cell what bliss profound!

*(He throws himself on the leather arm-chair beside the bed)*

Receive me! thou, who hast in thine embrace,  
 Welcom'd in joy and grief, the ages flown!  
 How oft the children of a by-gone race,  
 Have cluster'd round this patriarchal throne!  
 Haply, she, too, as closed each circling year,  
 For Christmas gift, with grateful joy possess'd,  
 Hath with the full round cheek of childhood, here,  
 Her grandsire's wither'd hand devoutly press'd.  
 Maiden! I feel thy spirit haunt the place,  
 Breathing of order and abounding grace.  
 As with a mother's voice it prompteth thee,  
 Daily the cover o'er the board to spread,  
 To strew the crisping sand beneath thy tread.  
 Dear hand! so godlike in its ministry!  
 The hut becomes a paradise through thee!

And here! *(He raises the bed-curtain)*

How thrills my pulse with strange delight!  
 Here I could linger hours untold;  
 Thou Nature! didst in vision bright,  
 The embryo angel here unfold.  
 Here lay the child, her bosom warm  
 With life, while steep'd in slumber's dew,  
 To perfect grace, her godlike form,  
 With pure and hallow'd weavings grew!

And thou! ah here, what seekest thou?  
 How is thine inmost being troubl'd now!  
 What would'st thou here? what makes thy heart so sore?  
 Unhappy Faust! I know thee now no more.

Do I a magic atmosphere inhale?  
 Erewhile, my passion would not brook delay!  
 Now in a pure love-dream I melt away.  
 Are we the sport of every passing gale?

Should she return and enter now,  
 How would'st thou rue thy guilty flame!  
 Proud vaunter! thou would'st hide thy brow,  
 And at her feet sink down with shame.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Quick! quick! below I see her there!

FAUST

Away! I will return no more!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Here is a casket, with a store  
 Of jewels, which I got elsewhere.  
 Quick! place it here, her press within,  
 I swear to you 'twill turn her brain;  
 Another I had thought to win,  
 With the rich gems it doth contain,  
 But child is child, and play is play.

FAUST

I know not — shall I?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Do you ask?  
 Perchance you would retain the treasure?  
 If such your wish, why then, I say,  
 Henceforth absolve me from my task,  
 Nor longer waste your hours of leisure.  
 I trust you're not by avarice led!  
 I rub my hands, I scratch my head, —

*(he places the casket in the press and closes the lock)*

But now away, without delay! —  
 The sweet young creature to your will to bend;  
 Yet here you are, as cold, my friend,  
 As to the class-room you would wend,  
 And metaphysics' form were there,  
 And physic too, with hoary hair!  
 Away! — *(Exeunt)*

MARGARET (*with a lamp*)

Here 'tis so close, so sultry now,

(*she opens the window*)

Yet out of doors 'tis not so warm.

I feel so strange, I know not how —

I wish my mother would come home.

Through me there runs a shuddering —

I'm but a foolish timid thing!

(*While undressing herself she begins to sing*)

There was a king in Thule,  
True even to the grave  
To whom his dying mistress  
A golden beaker gave.

Beyond aught else he priz'd it,  
And drain'd its purple draught,  
His tears came gushing freely  
As often as he quaff'd.

When death he felt approaching,  
His cities o'er he told;  
And grudg'd his heir no treasure  
Except his cup of gold.

Girt round with knightly vassals  
At a royal feast sat he,  
In yon proud hall ancestral,  
In his castle o'er the sea.

Up stood the jovial monarch,  
And quaff'd his last life's glow,  
Then hurl'd the hallow'd goblet  
In the ocean depths below.

He saw it splashing, drinking,  
And plunging in the sea;  
His eyes meanwhile were sinking,  
And never more drank he.

(*She opens the press to put away her clothes, and perceives the casket*)

How came this casket here? I cannot guess!

'Tis very strange! I'm sure I lock'd the press.

What can be in it? perh'ps some pledge or other,  
 Left here for money borrow'd from my mother.  
 Here by a ribbon hangs a little key;  
 I have a mind to open it and see!  
 Heavens! only look! what have we here,  
 Ne'er saw I such a splendid sight!  
 Jewels a noble dame might wear,  
 For some high pageant richly dight.  
 I wonder how the chain would look on me,  
 And whose the brilliant ornaments may be?

*(She puts them on and steps before the glass)*

Were but the ear-rings only mine!  
 Thus one has quite another air.  
 What boots it to be young and fair?  
 It doubtless may be very fine;  
 But then, alas, none come to woo,  
 And praise sounds half like pity too.  
     Gold all doth lure,  
     Gold doth secure  
     All things. Alas, the poor!

### *Promenade*

*(FAUST walking thoughtfully up and down. To him  
 MEPHISTOPHELES)*

### MEPHISTOPHELES

By love despis'd! By Hell's fierce fires I curse,  
 Would I could make my imprecation worse!

### FAUST

What ails you, pray? what chafes you now so sore?  
 A face like that I never saw before!

### MEPHISTOPHELES

I'd yield me to the devil instantly,  
 Did it not happen that myself am he!

### FAUST

There must be some disorder in your wit!  
 To rave thus like a madman, is it fit?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Just think! The gems for Margaret brought  
 A burly priest hath made his own! —  
 A glimpse of them the mother caught,  
 And 'gan with secret fear to groan.  
 The woman's scent is keen enough;  
 Still in the prayer book she doth snuff;  
 Smells everything to ascertain  
 Whether 'tis holy or profane,  
 And scented in the jewels rare,  
 That there was not much blessing there.  
 My child, she cries, ill-gotten good  
 Ensnares the soul, consumes the blood.  
 With them we'll deck our Lady's shrine,  
 She'll cheer our soul with bread divine!  
 At this poor Gretchen 'gan to pout,  
 'Tis a gift-horse, at least, she thought,  
 And sure, he godless cannot be,  
 Who placed them there so cleverly.  
 A priest the mother then address'd,  
 Who when he understood the jest,  
 Survey'd the treasure with a smile.  
 Quoth he: "This shows a pious mind,  
 Who conquers, wins. The Church we find  
 Hath a good stomach, she, erewhile,  
 Hath lands and kingdoms swallow'd down,  
 And never yet a surfeit known.  
 Daughters, the Church alone, with zest,  
 Can such ill-gotten wealth digest."

## FAUST

It is a general custom, too,  
 Practis'd alike by King and Jew.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

With that, clasp, chain, and ring, he swept  
 As they were mushrooms; and the casket,  
 Without one word of thanks he kept,  
 As if of nuts it were a basket.  
 Reward in heaven he promis'd fair; ——  
 And greatly edified they were.

## FAUST

And Gretchen?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

In unquiet mood

Knows neither what she would nor should;  
The trinkets night and day thinks o'er,  
On him who brought them dwells still more.

## FAUST

Her sorrow grieves me, I must say.  
Another set of jewels bring!  
The first, methinks, was no great thing.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

All's to my gentleman child's play!

## FAUST

Plan all things to achieve my end;  
Engage the attention of her friend.  
To work! A thorough devil be,  
And bring fresh jewels instantly!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Ay, sir! Most gladly I'll obey.

(FAUST *exit*)

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Your doting love-sick fool, with ease,  
Merely his lady-love to please,  
Sun, moon, and stars would puff away. (Exit)

*The Neighbour's House*

MARTHA (alone)

God pardon my dear husband, he  
Doth not in truth act well tow'rds me!  
Forth in the world abroad to roam,  
And leave me widow'd here at home.  
And yet his will I ne'er did thwart,  
God knows I lov'd him from my heart.



*(She weeps)*

Perchance he's dead! — oh wretched state! —  
Had I but a certificate!

MARGARET (*comes*)

MARGARET

Dame Martha!

MARTHA

Gretchen?

MARGARET

Only think!

My knees beneath me well-nigh sink!  
Within my press I've found to-day,  
Another case of ebony,  
And splendid jewels too there are,  
More costly than the former, far.

MARTHA

You must not name it to your mother;  
It would to shrift, just like the other.

MARGARET

Nay look at them! now only see!

MARTHA

*(dresses her up)*

You happy creature!

MARGARET

Woe is me!

I can't in them at church appear,  
Nor in the street, nor any where.

MARTHA

Come often over here to me,  
And put them on quite privately.  
Walk past the glass an hour or so,  
Thus we shall have our pleasure too.  
Then suitable occasions we must seize,

As at a feast, to show them by degrees.  
A chain at first, then ear-drops, — and your mother  
Won't see them, or we'll coin some tale or other.

MARGARET

But who, I wonder, could the caskets bring?  
I fear there's something wrong about the thing! (*a knock*)  
Good heavens! can that my mother be?

MARTHA (*peering through the blind*)

No! 'Tis a stranger gentleman, I see.  
Come in.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*enters*)

MEPHISTOPHELES

I've ventur'd to intrude to-day.  
Ladies, excuse the liberty, I pray.

(*He steps back respectfully before MARGARET*)

For Mrs. Martha Schwerdtlein, I inquire!

MARTHA

I'm she, pray what have you to say to me?

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside to her*)

I know you now, — and therefore will retire;  
At present you've distinguished company.  
Pardon the freedom, Madam, with your leave,  
I will make free to call again at eve.

MARTHA (*aloud*)

Why, child, of all strange things I ever knew!  
The stranger for a lady taketh you.

MARGARET

I am in truth of humble blood;  
The gentleman is far too good;  
Nor gems nor trinkets are my own.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Oh 'tis not the mere ornaments alone;

Her glance and mien far more betray.  
I am rejoic'd that I may stay.

MARTHA

Your business, Sir? I long to know —

MEPHISTOPHELES

Would I could happier tidings show!  
But let me not my errand rue;  
Your husband's dead, and greeteth you.

MARTHA

Is dead? True heart! Oh misery!  
My husband dead! Oh I shall die!

MARGARET

Alas! good Martha! don't despair!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Now listen to the sad affair!

MARGARET

I for this cause should fear to love.  
The loss my certain death would prove.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Joy still must sorrow, sorrow joy attend.

MARTHA

Proceed, and tell the story of his end!

MEPHISTOPHELES

At Padua, in St. Anthony's,  
In holy ground his body lies;  
Quiet and cool his place of rest,  
With pious ceremonials blest.

MARTHA

And had you nought besides to bring?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Oh yes! one grave and solemn prayer;  
 Let them for him three hundred masses sing!  
 But in my pockets, ma'am, I've nothing there.

## MARTHA

What! not a coin! no token from the dead!  
 Such as the meanest artisan will hoard,  
 Safe in his pouch, as a remembrance stor'd,  
 And not to part with, starves or begs his bread!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Madam, in truth, it grieves me much; but he  
 His money hath not squander'd lavishly.  
 Besides, his failings he repented sore,  
 Ay! and his evil plight bewail'd still more.

## MARGARET

That men should be so luckless! Every day  
 I for his soul will many a requiem pray.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Forthwith, to find a husband you deserve!  
 A child so lovely and in youth's fair prime.

## MARGARET

Oh no; to think of that there's ample time.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

A lover then, meanwhile, at least might serve.  
 Of heaven's best gifts, there's none more dear,  
 Than one so lovely to embrace.

## MARGARET

But that is not the custom here.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Custom or not, such things take place.

## MARTHA

Proceed!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I stood by his bedside.

'Twas rotten straw, something less foul than dung;  
But at the last a Christian man he died.  
And sorely hath remorse his conscience wrung.  
"Wretch that I was," quoth he, with parting breath,  
"So to forsake my business and my wife!  
Ah! the remembrance of it is my death.  
Could I but have her pardon in this life!" —

MARTHA (*weeping*)

Dear soul! I've long forgiven him, indeed!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

"Though she, God knows, was more to blame than I."

MARTHA

What, on the brink of death assert a lie!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

If I am skill'd the countenance to read,  
He doubtless fabled as he parted hence.  
"To gape for pleasure, I'd no time," he said,  
"First to get children, and then get them bread;  
And bread, too, in the very widest sense;  
In peace I could not even eat my share."

MARTHA

What all my truth and love forgotten quite?  
My weary drudgery by day and night!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Not so! He thought of you with tender care.  
Quoth he: "Heaven knows how fervently I prayed,  
For wife and children when from Malta bound; —  
The prayer propitious heaven with favour crown'd;  
We took a Turkish vessel which conveyed  
Rich store of treasure for the Sultan's court;  
It's own reward our gallant action brought.  
The captur'd prize was shar'd among the crew,

And of the treasure I receiv'd my due."

MARTHA

How? Where? The treasure hath he buried, pray?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Where the four winds have blown it, who can say?  
In Naples as he stroll'd, a stranger there, —  
A comely maid took pity on my friend;  
And gave such tokens of her love and care,  
That he retain'd them to his blessed end.

MARTHA

Scoundrell! to rob his children of their bread!  
And all this misery, this bitter need,  
Could not his course of recklessness impede!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Well, he hath paid the forfeit, and is dead.  
Now were I in your place, my counsel hear;  
My widow's weeds I'd wear for one chaste year,  
And for another lover seek meantime.

MARTHA

Alas, I might in vain search every clime,  
Nor find another husband like my first!  
There could not be a fonder fool at home,  
Only he lik'd too well abroad to roam;  
Lik'd women, too, and had for wine a thirst,  
Besides his passion for those dice accurs'd.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Well! well! all doubtless had gone swimmingly,  
Had he but given you as wide a range.  
And upon such condition, I declare,  
Myself with you would gladly rings exchange!

MARTHA

The gentleman is surely pleas'd to 'jest!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*)

Now to be off in time, methinks, were best!  
She'd make the very devil marry her.

(*To MARGARET*)

How fares it with your heart?

MARGARET

How mean you, Sir?

MEPHISTOPHELES (*aside*)

The sweet young innocent!

(*aloud*)

Ladies, farewell!

MARGARET

Farewell!

MARTHA

But ere you leave us, quickly tell!  
I much should like to have it certified,  
Where, how, and when my buried husband died.  
To forms I've always been attach'd indeed,  
His death I fain would in the journals read.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Ay, madam, when two witnesses appear  
The truth is everywhere made manifest;  
A gallant friend I have, not far from here,  
Who will before the judge his death attest.  
I'll bring him hither.

MARTHA

Oh, I pray you do!

MEPHISTOPHELES

And this young lady, we shall find her too?  
A noble youth! — has travell'd far and wide,  
And is most courteous to the sex beside.

MARGARET

I in his presence needs must blush for shame.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Not in the presence of a crowned king!

MARTHA

The garden, then, behind my house, we'll name,  
There we'll await you both this evening.

*A Street*

FAUST. MEPHISTOPHELES

FAUST

How is it now? How speeds it? Is't in train?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Bravo! I find you all on fire again?  
Gretchen will soon be your's, I promise you; —  
This very eve to meet her I've agreed  
At neighbour Martha's, who seems fram'd indeed  
The gipsy's trade expressly to pursue.

FAUST

Good!

MEPHISTOPHELES

But from us she something would request.

FAUST

A favour claims return as this world goes.

MEPHISTOPHELES

We have an oath but duly to attest,  
That her dead husband's limbs, outstretch'd, repose  
In holy ground at Padua.

FAUST

Sage indeed!

So I suppose we straight must journey there!



## MEPHISTOPHELES

*Sancta simplicitas!* For that no need!  
Without much knowledge we have but to swear.

## FAUST

If you have nothing better to suggest,  
Against your plan I must at once protest.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Oh, holy man! methinks I have you there!  
Is this the first time you false witness bear?  
Have you not often definitions vain,  
Of God, the world, and all it doth contain,  
Man, and the working of his heart and brain,  
In pompous language, forcibly express'd,  
With front unblushing, and a dauntless breast?  
Yet, if into the depth of things you go,  
Touching these matters it must be confess'd,  
As much as of Herr Schwerdtlein's death you know!

## FAUST

Liar and sophist, still thou wert and art.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Perchance my view is somewhat more profound!  
Now you yourself to-morrow, I'll be bound,  
Will, in all honour, fool poor Margaret's heart,  
And plead your soul's deep love, in lover's fashion.

## FAUST

And truly from my heart.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

All good and fair!

Then deathless constancy you'll doubtless swear;  
Speak of one mast'ring, all-absorbing passion, —  
Will that too issue from your heart?

## FAUST

Forbear!

When passion sways me, and I seek to frame  
 Fit utterance for my feeling, deep, intense,  
 And for my frenzy finding no fit name,  
 Sweep round the ample world with every sense,  
 Grasp at the loftiest words to speak my flame,  
 And call the fiery glow, wherewith I burn  
 Quenchless, undying, — yea, eterne, eterne, —  
 Is that of sophistry a devilish play?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Yet am I right!

FAUST

Friend, spare my lungs, I pray; —  
 Mark this, who his opinion will maintain,  
 If he have but a tongue, his point will gain.  
 But come, of gossip I am weary quite,  
 Because I've no resource, you're in the right.

*Garden*

MARGARET *on* FAUST'S *arm*, MARTHA *with*  
 MEPHISTOPHELES *walking up and down*

MARGARET

I feel it, you but spare my ignorance,  
 To put me to the blush you stoop thus low.  
 Travellers are ever wont from complaisance,  
 To make the best of things where'er they go.  
 My humble prattle, surely never can  
 Have power to entertain so wise a man.

FAUST

One glance, one word of thine doth charm me more,  
 Than the world's wisdom or the sage's lore.  
(*He kisses her hand*)

MARGARET

Nay! trouble not yourself! how can you kiss  
 A hand so very coarse and hard as this!  
 What work am I not still oblig'd to do!  
 And then my mother's so exacting too.

*(They pass on)*

MARTHA

Thus are you ever wont to travel, pray?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Duty and business urge us on our way!  
Full many a place indeed we leave with pain,  
At which we're not permitted to remain!

MARTHA

In youth's wild years, with lusty vigour crown'd,  
'Tis not amiss thus through the world to sweep;  
But ah, the evil days at length come round,  
And to the grave a bachelor to creep,  
No one as yet hath good or pleasant found.

MEPHISTOPHELES

The distant prospect fills me with dismay.

MARTHA

Therefore, in time, dear sir, reflect, I pray.  
*(They pass on)*

MARGARET

Still are the absent out of mind, 'tis true!  
Politeness is familiar, sir, to you,  
But many friends you have, who doubtless are  
More sensible than I, and wiser far.

FAUST

My angel, often what doth pass for sense  
Is self-conceit and narrowness.

MARGARET

How so?

FAUST

Simplicity and holy innocence, —  
When will ye learn your hallow'd worth to know?  
Ah, when will meekness and humility,  
Kind and all-bounteous nature's loftiest dower —

## MARGARET

Only one little moment think of me,  
To think of you I shall have many an hour.

## FAUST

You're doubtless much alone?

## MARGARET

Why yes, for though  
Our household's small, yet I must see to it.  
We keep no maid, and I must sew, and knit,  
And cook and sweep, and hurry to and fro;  
And then my mother is so accurate!  
Not that for thrift there is such pressing need;  
Than others we might make more show indeed:  
My father left behind a small estate,  
A house and garden just outside the town.  
Quiet enough my life has been of late.  
My only brother for a soldier's gone;  
My little sister's dead; the babe to rear  
Occasion'd me some care and fond annoy;  
But I would go through all again with joy,  
The little darling was to me so dear.

## FAUST

An angel, sweet, if it resembled you!

## MARGARET

I reared it up, and soon my face it knew.  
Dearly the little creature lov'd me too.  
After my father's death it saw the day;  
We gave my mother up for lost, she lay  
In such a wretched plight, and then at length  
So very slowly she regain'd her strength.  
Weak as she was, 'twas vain for her to try  
Herself to suckle the poor babe, so I  
Rear'd it on bread and water all alone,  
And thus the child became as 'twere my own.  
Within my arms it stretch'd itself and grew,  
And smiling, nestl'd in my bosom'too.

## FAUST

Doubtless the purest happiness was your's.

## MARGARET

Oh yes — but also many weary hours.  
Beside my bed at night its cradle stood;  
If it but stirr'd, I was at once awake,  
One while I was oblig'd to give it food,  
Or with me into bed the darling take,  
Then, if it would not hush, I had to rise,  
And strive with fond caress to still its cries,  
Pacing the little chamber to and fro;  
And then at dawn to washing I must go,  
See to the house affairs, and market too,  
And so, from day to day, the whole year through.  
Ah, sir, thus living, it must be confess'd  
One's spirits are not always of the best;  
But toil gives food and sleep a double zest. (*They pass on*)

## MARTHA

Poor women! we are badly off, I own:  
A bachelor's conversion's hard, indeed!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Madam, with one like you it rests alone,  
To tutor me a better course to lead.

## MARTHA

But tell me! no one have you ever met?  
Has your heart ne'er attach'd itself as yet?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

One's own fire-side, and a good wife, we're told  
By the old proverb, are worth pearls and gold.

## MARTHA

I mean has passion never fir'd your breast?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I've everywhere been well receiv'd, I own.

MARTHA

Yet hath your heart no earnest preference known?

MEPHISTOPHELES

With ladies one should ne'er presume to jest.

MARTHA

Ah! you mistake!

MEPHISTOPHELES

I'm sorry I'm so blind!

But this I know — that you are very kind.

*(They pass on)*

FAUST

So, little angel, in the garden when  
I enter'd first, you knew me once again?

MARGARET

Did you not see it? I cast down my eyes.

FAUST

And you forgive my boldness, and the guise  
Of freedom towards you, as you left the dome,  
The day I offer'd to escort you home?

MARGARET

I was confus'd, never until that day  
Could any one of me aught evil say.  
Alas, thought I, he doubtless in your mien,  
Something unmaidenly or bold hath seen?  
It seemed as if it struck him suddenly,  
"Here's just a girl with whom one may make free."  
Yet I must own that then I scarcely knew  
What in your favour here began to plead;  
Yet I was angry with myself indeed,  
That I more angry could not feel with you.

FAUST

Sweet love!

MARGARET

Just wait!

*(She gathers a star-flower and plucks off the leaves one after another)*

FAUST

A nosegay may that be?

MARGARET

No! 'Tis a game.

FAUST

How?

MARGARET

Go! you'll laugh at me.

*(She plucks off the leaves and murmurs to herself)*

FAUST

What murmur you?

MARGARET

*(half aloud)*

He loves me, — loves me not.

FAUST

Sweet angel, with thy face of heav'nly bliss!

MARGARET

*(continues)*

He loves me, — loves me not —

*(plucking off the last leaf with fond joy)*

He loves me!

FAUST

Yes!

And this flower-language, darling, let it be,

E'en as a heav'nly oracle to thee!

Know'st thou the meaning of, "He loveth me?"

*(He seizes both her hands)*

MARGARET

I tremble so!

## FAUST

Nay! do not tremble, love!  
 Oh, let this pressure, let this glance reveal  
 Feelings, all power of utterance far above;  
 To give oneself up wholly and to feel  
 A rapturous joy that must eternal prove!  
 Eternal! — Yes, it's end would be despair.  
 No end! — It cannot end!

*MARGARET presses his hand; extricates herself, and runs away.  
 He stands a moment in thought, and then follows her)*

MARTHA *(approaching)*

Night's closing.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Yes, we'll presently away.

MARTHA

I would entreat you longer yet to stay,  
 But 'tis a wicked place, just here about.  
 'Tis as the folks had nought to do,  
 And nothing else to think of too,  
 But watch their neighbours, who goes in and out;  
 And scandal's busy still, do what one may.  
 And our young couple?

MEPHISTOPHELES

They have flown up there,  
 Gay butterflies!

MARTHA

He seems to take to her.

MEPHISTOPHELES

And she to him. 'Tis of the world the way.

*A Summer-House*

*MARGARET runs in, hides behind the door, holds the tip of her  
 finger to her lip, and peeps through the crevice)*



MARGARET

He comes!

FAUST

Ah, little rogue, so thou  
 Think'st to provoke me! I have caught thee now!  
*(He kisses her)*

MARGARET

*(embracing him, and returning the kiss)*

Dearest of men! I love thee from my heart!

MEPHISTOPHELES *(knocks)*FAUST *(stamping)*

Who's there?

MEPHISTOPHELES

A friend!

FAUST

A brute!

MEPHISTOPHELES

'Tis time to part.

MARTHA *(comes)*

Yes, sir, 'tis late.

FAUST

Mayn't I attend you, sweet?

MARGARET

Oh no — my mother would — adieu, adieu!

FAUST

And must I really then take leave of you?  
 Farewell!

MARTHA

Good-bye!

MARGARET

Ere long again to meet!  
(*Exeunt* FAUST and MEPHISTOPHELES)

MARGARET

Good heavens! how all things far and near  
Must fill his mind, — a man like this!  
Abash'd before him I appear,  
And say to all things only, yes.  
Poor simple child, I cannot see,  
What 'tis that he can find in me. (*Exit*)

*Forest and Cavern*

FAUST (*alone*)

Spirit sublime! Thou gav'st me, gav'st me all  
For which I prayed. Not vainly hast thou turn'd  
To me thy countenance in flaming fire.  
Thou gav'st me glorious nature for my realm,  
And also power to feel her and enjoy.  
Not merely with a cold and wond'ring glance,  
Thou dost permit me in her depths profound,  
As in the bosom of a friend to gaze.  
Before me thou dost lead her living tribes,  
And dost in silent grove, in air and stream  
Teach me to know my kindred. And when roars  
The howling storm-blast through the groaning wood,  
Wrenching the giant pine, which in it's fall  
Sweeps, crushing down, its neighbour trunks and boughs,  
While with the hollow noise the hill resounds,  
Then thou dost lead me to some shelter'd cave,  
Dost there reveal me to myself, and show  
Of my own bosom the mysterious depths.  
And when with soothing beam, the moon's pale orb  
Full in my view climbs up the pathless sky,  
From crag and vap'rous grove, the silv'ry forms  
Of by-gone ages hover, and assuage  
The too severe delight of earnest thought.  
Oh, that nought perfect is assign'd to man,  
I feel, alas! With this exalted joy, \*

Which lifts me near and nearer to the gods,  
 Thou gav'st me this companion, unto whom  
 I needs must cling, though cold and insolent,  
 He still degrades me to myself, and turns  
 Thy glorious gifts to nothing, with a breath.  
 He in my bosom with malicious zeal  
 For that fair image fans a raging fire;  
 From craving to enjoyment thus I reel,  
 And in enjoyment languish for desire.

(MEPHISTOPHELES *enters*)

### MEPHISTOPHELES

Of this lone life have you not had your fill?  
 How for so long can it have charms for you?  
 'Tis well enough to try it if you will;  
 But then away again to something new!

### FAUST

Would you could better occupy your leisure,  
 Than in disturbing thus my hours of joy.

### MEPHISTOPHELES

Well! Well! I'll leave you to yourself with pleasure,  
 A serious tone you hardly dare employ;  
 To part from one so crazy, harsh, and cross,  
 I should not find methinks a grievous loss.  
 The live-long day, for you I toil and fret.  
 Ne'er from your worship'sface a hint I get,  
 What pleases you, or what to let alone.

### FAUST

Ay truly! that is just the proper tone!  
 Tires me, forsooth, and would with thanks be paid!

### MEPHISTOPHELES

Poor child of clay, without my aid,  
 How would thy weary days have flown?  
 Thee of thy foolish whims I've cur'd.  
 Thy vain imaginations banish'd,  
 And but for me, be well assur'd,

Thou from this sphere must soon have vanish'd.  
 In rocky cleft and cavern drear  
 Why like an owl sit moping here?  
 And wherefore suck, like any toad,  
 From dripping rocks and moss thy food?  
 A pleasant pastime! Verily,  
 The doctor cleaveth still to thee.

# FAUST

Couldst thou divine what bliss without alloy  
 From this wild wand'ring in the desert springs, —  
 Couldst thou but guess the new life-power it brings,  
 Thou still wert fiend enough to grudge my joy.

# MEPHISTOPHELES

What super-earthly ecstasy! at night,  
 To lie in darkness on the dewy height,  
 Embracing heaven and earth in rapture high,  
 The soul dilating to a deity,  
 With prescient yearnings pierce the core of earth,  
 Feel in your labouring breast the six-days' birth,  
 Enjoy, in proud delight what no one knows,  
 While your love-rapture o'er creation flows, —  
 The earthly lost in beatific vision,  
 And then the lofty intuition —

*(with a gesture)*

I need not tell you how — to close.

# FAUST

Fie on you!

# MEPHISTOPHELES

This displeases you? "For shame!"  
 You are forsooth entitl'd to exclaim  
 We to chaste ears it seems must not impart,  
 Thoughts that may dwell unquestion'd in the heart.  
 Well, to be brief, as fit occasions rise,  
 I grudge you not the joy of specious lies.  
 But soon 'tis past, the self-deluding vein;  
 Back to your former course you're driven again,  
 And, should it longer hold, your anguish'd breast

By frenzied horror soon would be possess'd.  
 Enough of this! Your true love dwells apart,  
 And every thing to her seems flat and tame.  
 Alone your cherish'd image fills her heart,  
 She loves you with an all-devouring flame.  
 First came your passion with o'erpowering rush,  
 Like mountain torrent, fed by melted snow,  
 Full in her heart you pour'd the sudden gush,  
 And now again your stream has ceas'd to flow.  
 Instead of sitting thron'd midst forests wild,  
 Methinks it would become so great a lord,  
 Fondly to comfort the enamour'd child,  
 And the young monkey for her love reward.  
 To her the hours seem miserably long;  
 She from the window sees the clouds float by  
 As o'er the ancient city-walls they fly.  
 "Were I a bird," so runs her song,  
 Half through the night and all the day.  
 One while, indeed, she seemeth gay,  
 And then with grief her heart is sore;  
 Fairly outwept seem now her tears,  
 Anon she tranquil is, or so appears,  
 And love-sick evermore.

FAUST

Snake! Serpent vile!

MEPHISTOPHELES

*(aside)*

Good! If I catch thee with my guile!

FAUST

Vile reprobate! go get thee hence;  
 Forbear the lovely girl to name!  
 Nor in my half-distracted sense,  
 Kindle anew the smould'ring flame!

MEPHISTOPHELES

How now! She thinks you've taken flight;  
 It seems, she's partly in the right.

## FAUST

I'm near her still — and should I distant rove,  
 I'd ne'er forget her, ne'er resign her love;  
 And all things touch'd by those sweet lips of hers,  
 Even the very host, my envy stirs.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

'Tis well! I oft have envied you indeed,  
 The twin-pair, that among the roses feed.

## FAUST

Pander, avaunt!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

My friend, the while  
 You rail, excuse me if I smile;  
 The power which fashion'd youth and maid,  
 Well understood the noble trade,  
 Of making also time and place.  
 But hence! — In truth a doleful case!  
 Your mistress' chamber doth invite,  
 Not the cold grave's o'ershadowing night.

## FAUST

What in her arms the joys of heaven to me?  
 Oh let me kindle on her gentle breast!  
 Do I not ever feel her misery?  
 Wretch that I am, whose spirit knows no rest,  
 Inhuman monster, homeless and unblest,  
 Who, like the greedy surge, from rock to rock,  
 Sweeps down the dread abyss with desp'rate shock.  
 While she, within her lowly cot, which grac'd  
 The Alpine slope, beside the waters wild,  
 Her homely cares in that small world embrac'd,  
 Secluded lived, a simple artless child.  
 Was't not enough, in thy delirious whirl  
 To blast the steadfast rocks, — her quiet cell,  
 Her too, her peace, to ruin must I hurl!  
 Dost claim this holocaust, remorseless Hell!  
 Fiend, help me to cut short the hours of dread!

Let what must happen, happen speedily!  
 Her direful doom fall crushing on my head,  
 And into ruin let her plunge with me.

# MEPHISTOPHELES

Why how again it seethes and glows!  
 Away, thou fool! Her torment ease!  
 When such a head no issue sees,  
 It pictures straight the final close.  
 Long life to him who boldly dares!  
 A devil's pluck you're wont to show;  
 As for a devil who despairs,  
 There's nought so mawkish here below.

# MARGARET'S Room

MARGARET      (*alone at her spinning wheel*)

My heart's oppress'd,  
 My peace is o'er;  
 I know no rest,  
 No, nevermore.

The world's a grave  
 Where he is not;  
 And grief is now  
 My bitter lot.

My wilder'd brain  
 Is overwrought;  
 My feeble senses  
 Are distraught.

My heart's oppress'd,  
 My peace is o'er;  
 I know no rest,  
 No, nevermore.

For him I watch  
 The live-long day,  
 For him alone  
 Abroad I stray.

His lofty step,

His bearing high,  
The smile of his lip,  
The power of his eye,

His witching words,  
Their tones of bliss,  
His hand's fond pressure,  
And then, his kiss!

My heart's oppress'd  
My peace is o'er,  
I know no rest,  
No, nevermore.

My bosom aches  
To feel him near.  
Ah, could I clasp  
And fold him here!

In love's fond blisses  
Entranc'd I'd lie,  
And die on his kisses,  
In ecstasy!

### MARTHA'S *Garden*

MARGARET *and* FAUST  
MARGARET

Promise me, Henry!

FAUST

What I can!

MARGARET

How is it with religion in your mind?  
You are 'tis true a good, kind-hearted man,  
But I'm afraid not piously inclin'd.

FAUST

Forbear! I love you darling, you alone!  
For those I love, my life I would lay down,  
And none would of their faith or church bereave.



MARGARET

That's not enough, we must ourselves believe.

FAUST

Must we?

MARGARET

Ah, could I but your soul inspire!  
You honour not the sacraments, alas!

FAUST

I honour them.

MARGARET

But yet without desire.  
'Tis long since you have been to shrift or mass  
Do you believe in God?

FAUST

My love, forbear!  
Who dares acknowledge, I in God believe?  
Ask priest or sage, the answer you receive,  
Seems but a mockery of the questioner.

MARGARET

Then you do not believe?

FAUST

Sweet one! my meaning do not misconceive!  
Him who dare name  
And yet proclaim,  
Yes, I believe?  
Who that can feel,  
His heart can steel,  
To say: I disbelieve?  
The All-embracer,  
All-sustainer,  
Doth He not embrace, sustain  
Thee, me, himself?  
Lifts not the Heaven its dome above?  
Doth not the firm-set earth beneath us lie?  
And beaming tenderly with looks of love,

Climb not the everlasting stars on high?  
 Are we not gazing in each other's eyes?  
 Nature's impenetrable agencies,  
 Are they not thronging on thy heart and brain,  
 Viewless, or visible to mortal ken,  
 Around thee weaving their mysterious reign?  
 Fill thence thy heart, how large soe'er it be,  
 And in the feeling when thou'rt wholly blest,  
 Then call it what thou wilt, — Bliss! Heart! Love! God!  
 I have no name for it — 'tis feeling all.  
 Name is but sound and smoke  
 Shrouding the glow of heaven.

MARGARET

All this is doubtless beautiful and true;  
 The priest doth also much the same declare,  
 Only in somewhat different language too.

FAUST

Beneath Heaven's genial sunshine, everywhere,  
 This is the utterance of the human heart;  
 Each in his language doth the like impart;  
 Then why not I in mine?

MARGARET

What thus I hear  
 Sounds plausible, yet I'm not reconcil'd;  
 There's something wrong about it; much I fear  
 That thou art not a Christian.

FAUST

My sweet child!

MARGARET

Alas! it long hath sorely troubl'd me,  
 To see thee in such odious company.

FAUST

How so?

## MARGARET

The man who comes with thee, I hate,  
 Yea, in my spirit's inmost depths abhor;  
 As his loath'd visage, in my life before,  
 Nought to my heart e'er gave a pang so great.

## FAUST

Fear not, sweet love!

## MARGARET

His presence chills my blood.  
 Towards all beside I have a kindly mood;  
 Yet, though I yearn to gaze on thee, I feel  
 At sight of him strange horror o'er me steal;  
 That he's a villain my conviction's strong,  
 May Heaven forgive me if I do him wrong!

## FAUST

Yet such strange fellows in the world must be!

## MARGARET

I would not live with such an one as he!  
 If for a moment he but enter here,  
 He looks around him with a mocking sneer,  
 And malice ill-conceal'd.  
 That he can feel no sympathy is clear,  
 Upon his brow 'tis legibly reveal'd,  
 That to his heart no living soul is dear.  
 So blest I feel, abandon'd in thine arms,  
 So warm and happy, — free from all alarms,  
 And still my heart doth close when he comes near.

## FAUST

Foreboding angel! prithee check thy fear!

## MARGARET

The feeling so o'erpowers my mind, that when,  
 Or wheresoe'r, I chance his step to hear,  
 Methinks almost I cease to love thee then.  
 Besides, when he is near I ne'er could pray,

And this it is that eats my heart away;  
Thou also, Henry, surely feel'st it so.

FAUST

This is antipathy!

MARGARET

I now must go.

FAUST

And may I never then in quiet rest,  
For one brief hour, upon thy gentle breast.

MARGARET

Ah if I slept alone! The door, to-night  
I'd leave unbarr'd; but mother's sleep is light;  
And if she should by any chance awake,  
Upon the floor I should at once fall dead.

FAUST

Sweet angel! there's no cause for dread,  
Here is a little phial, — if she take  
But three drops mingl'd in her drink, 'twill steep  
Her nature in a deep and soothing sleep.

MARGARET

What is there I'd not do for thy dear sake:  
To her 'twill surely do no injury?

FAUST

Else, my own love, should I thus counsel thee?

MARGARET

Gazing on thee, belov'd, I cannot tell,  
What doth my spirit to thy will compel;  
So much I have already done for thee,  
That more to do there scarce remains for me.

*(Exit)*

MEPHISTOPHELES *(enters)*

MEPHISTOPHELES

The monkey! Has she left you then?

## FAUST

Have you been spying here again?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Of all that pass'd I'm well appriz'd,  
I heard the doctor catechis'd,  
And trust he'll profit by the rede.  
The girls show always much concern,  
Touching their lover's faith, to learn  
Whether it tallies with the creed.  
If men are pliant there, think they,  
Us too, they'll follow and obey.

## FAUST

Thou monster! thou canst not perceive  
How a true loving soul, like this,  
Full of the faith she doth believe  
To be the pledge of endless bliss,  
Must mourn, her soul with anguish tost,  
Thinking the man she loves for ever lost.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Most sensual supersensualist! a flirt,  
A gipsy, leads thee by the nose!

## FAUST

Abortion vile of fire and dirt!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

In physiognomy strange skill she shows;  
She in my presence feels she knows not how!  
My mask it seems some hidden sense reveals.  
That I'm a genius she must needs allow,  
That I'm the very devil perhaps she feels.  
So then to-night? —

## FAUST

What's that to you?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I've my amusement in it too!

*At the Well*

Margaret *and* Bessy, *with pitchers*

BESSY

And have you then of Barbara nothing heard?

MARGARET

I rarely go from home, — no, not a word.

BESSY

'Tis true: Sybilla told me so to-day!  
She's play'd the fool at last, I promise you;  
That comes of pride.

MARGARET

How so?

BESSY

Why people say  
That when she eats and drinks she feedeth two.

MARGARET

Alas!

BESSY

She's rightly served, in sooth.  
How long she hung upon the youth!  
What promenades, what jaunts there were,  
To dancing booth and village fair,  
The first she everywhere must shine,  
He treating her to cakes and wine.  
Of her good looks she was so vain,  
And e'en his presents would retain.  
Sweet words and kisses came anon,  
And then the virgin flower was gone!

MARGARET

Poor thing!

BESSY

And do you pity her?

Why of a night, when at our wheels we sat,  
Abroad our mothers ne'er would let us stir.  
Then with her lover she forsooth must chat,  
Or near the bench, or in the dusky walk,  
Thinking the hours too brief for their sweet talk;  
Beshrew me! her proud head she'll have to bow,  
And in white sheet do penance now!

MARGARET

But he will surely marry her?

BESSY

Not he!

He won't be such a fool! a gallant lad  
Like him, can roam o'er land and sea,  
Besides, he's off.

MARGARET

That is not fair!

BESSY

If she should get him, 'twere almost as bad;  
Her myrtle wreath the boys would tear;  
And then we girls would plague her too,  
Chopp'd straw before her door we'd strew!

*(Exit)*

MARGARET *(walking towards home)*

How stoutly once I could inveigh,  
If a poor maiden went astray!  
Not words enough my tongue could find,  
'Gainst others' sin to speak my mind!  
How black so'er their fault before,  
I strove to blacken it still more,  
And did myself securely bless.  
Now are the sin, the scandal, mine!

Yet ah! — what urg'd me to transgress,  
Heaven knows, was good! ah, so divine!

# Z W I N G E R

*(In the niche of the wall a devotional image of the Mater  
dolorosa, with flower-pots before it)*

MARGARET *(putting fresh flowers in the pots)*

Ah, rich in sorrow, thou,  
Stoop thy maternal brow,  
And mark with pitying eye my misery!  
The sword in thy pierc'd heart,  
Thou dost with bitter smart,  
Gaze upwards on thy Son's death agony.

To the dear God on high,  
Ascends thy piteous sigh,  
Pleading for his and thy mute misery.

Ah, who can know  
The torturing woe  
That harrows me, and racks me to the bone?  
How my poor heart, without relief,  
Trembles and throbs, its yearning grief  
Thou knowest, thou alone!

Ah, wheresoe'er I go,  
With woe, with woe, with woe,  
My anguish'd breast is aching!  
Wretched, alone I keep,  
I weep, I weep, I weep,  
Alas! my heart is breaking!

The flower-pots at my window  
Were wet with tears of mine,  
The while I pluck'd these blossoms,  
At dawn to deck thy shrine!

When early in my chamber  
Shone bright the rising morn,  
I sat there on my pallet,  
My heart with anguish torn.



Help! death and shame are near!  
 Mother of sorrows, now  
 Stoop thy maternal brow,  
 And to thy suppliant turn a gracious ear.

*Night. Street before Margaret's door*

VALENTINE (*soldier, MARGARET'S brother*)

When seated 'mong the jovial crowd  
 Where merry comrades boasting loud,  
 Each nam'd with pride his favourite lass,  
 And in her honour drain'd his glass;  
 Upon my elbows I would lean,  
 With easy quiet view the scene,  
 Nor give my tongue the rein, until  
 Each swagg'ring blade had talk'd his fill.  
 Then with a smile my beard I'd stroke,  
 The while, with brimming glass, I spoke;  
 "Each to his taste! — but to my mind,  
 Where in the country will you find,  
 A maiden, be she ne'er so fair,  
 Who with my Gretchen can compare?"  
 Cling! Clang! so rang the jovial sound!  
 Shouts of assent went circling round;  
 Pride of her sex is she! — cried some;  
 Then were the noisy boasters dumb.

And now! — I could uproot my hair,  
 Or dash my brains out in despair!  
 Me every scurvy knave may twit,  
 With stinging jest and taunting sneer!  
 Like skulking debtor I must sit,  
 And sweat each casual word to hear!  
 And though I smash'd them one and all,  
 Yet them I could not liars call.

Who comes this way? who's sneaking here?  
 If I mistake not, two draw near.  
 If he be one, have at him; — well I wot  
 Alive he shall not leave this spot!

## FAUST, MEPHISTOPHELES

## FAUST

How from yon sacristy, athwart the night,  
 Its beams the ever-burning taper throws,  
 While ever waning, fades the glimm'ring light,  
 As gath'ring darkness doth around it close!  
 So night-like gloom doth in my bosom reign.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I'm like a tom-cat in a thievish vein,  
 That round the walls doth slyly creep;  
 And up fire-ladders tall, and steep,  
 Virtuous withal I feel, with, I confess,  
 A touch of thievish joy and wantonness.  
 Thus through my limbs already there doth bound  
 The glorious advent of Walpurgis night;  
 After to-morrow it again comes round,  
 What one doth wake for then one knows aright.

## FAUST

Meanwhile, the flame which I see glimm'ring there,  
 Is it the treasure rising in the air?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Ere long, I make no doubt, but you  
 To raise the chest will feel inclin'd;  
 Erewhile I peep'd within it too,  
 With lion-dollars 'tis well lin'd.

## FAUST

And not a trinket? not a ring?  
 Wherewith my lovely girl to deck?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I saw among them some such thing,  
 A string of pearls to grace her neck.

## FAUST

'Tis well! I'm always loath to go,  
 Without some gift my love to show.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Some pleasures gratis to enjoy,  
 Should surely cause you no annoy.  
 While bright with stars the heavens appear,  
 I'll sing a masterpiece of art.  
 A moral song shall charm her ear,  
 More surely to beguile her heart.

*(Sings to the guitar)*

Fair Catherine say,  
 Why ling'ring stay  
 At dawn of day  
 Before your lover's door?  
 You enter there,  
 A maid, beware,  
 Lest forth you fare,  
 A maiden never more.

Maiden take heed!  
 Reck well my rede!  
 Is't done, the deed?  
 Good night, you poor, poor thing!  
 The spoiler's lies,  
 His arts despise,  
 Nor yield your prize,  
 Without the marriage ring.

VALENTINE (*steps forward*)

Whom are you luring here? I'll give it you!  
 Accursed rat-catchers, your strains I'll end!  
 First, to the devil the guitar I'll send!  
 Then to the devil with the singer too!

MEPHISTOPHELES

The poor guitar! 'Tis done for now.

VALENTINE

Your skull shall follow next, I trow!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*)

Doctor, stand fast! your strength collect!

Be prompt, and do as I direct.  
 Out with your whisk! keep close, I pray.  
 I'll parry! do you thrust away!

VALENTINE

Then parry that!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Why not?

VALENTINE

That too!

MEPHISTOPHELES

With ease!

VALENTINE

The devil fights for you!  
 Why how is this? my hand's already lam'd!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*)

Thrust home!

VALENTINE (*falls*)  
 Alas!

MEPHISTOPHELES

There! Now the bully's tam'd.  
 But quick, away! We must at once take wing.  
 A cry of murder strikes upon the ear.  
 With the police I know my course to steer,  
 But with the blood-ban 'tis another thing.

MARTHA (*at the window*)

Without! without!

MARGARET (*at the window*)

Quick, bring a light!

MARTHA (*as above*)

They rail and scuffle, scream and fight!

## PEOPLE

One lieth here already dead!

MARTHA (*coming out*)

Where are the murderers? are they fled?

MARGARET (*coming out*)

Who lieth here?

PEOPLE

Thy mother's son.

MARGARET

Almighty Father! I'm undone!

VALENTINE

I'm dying! 'Tis a soon-told tale!

And sooner done the deed!

Why, women, do ye weep and wail?

To my last words give heed. (*All gather round him*)

Gretchen, thou'rt still of tender age,

And, well I wot, not over sage,

Thou dost thy matters ill.

Let this in confidence be said:

She who the path of shame doth tread,

Should tread it with good will.

MARGARET

My God! what can this mean?

VALENTINE

Abstain,

Nor dare God's holy name profane.

What's done, alas, is done and past!

Matters will take their course at last!

By stealth thou dost begin with one,

And more will follow him anon;

When to a dozen swells the train,

A common outcast, thou'lt remain.

When first the monster shame is born,

Clandestinely she's brought to light,  
 And the mysterious veil of night  
 Around her head is drawn.  
 The loathsome birth men fain would slay!  
 But soon, full grown, she waxes bold,  
 And though not fairer to behold,  
 With brazen front insults the day.  
 The more abhorr'd her visage grows,  
 The more her hideousness she shows!

The time already I discern,  
 When thee all honest men will spurn,  
 And shun thy hated form to meet,  
 As when a corpse infects the street.  
 Thy heart will sink in blank despair,  
 When they shall look thee in the face!  
 A golden chain no more thou'lt wear!  
 Nor near the altar take thy place!  
 In fair lace collar simply dight  
 Thou'lt dance no more with spirits light!  
 In darksome corners thou wilt bide,  
 Where beggars vile and cripples hide;  
 And e'en though God thy crime forgive  
 On earth, a thing accurs'd, thou'lt live.

#### MARTHA

Your parting soul to God commend;  
 Nor your last breath in slander spend.

#### VALENTINE

Could I but reach thy wither'd frame,  
 Thou wretched beldame, void of shame!  
 Full measure I might hope to win  
 Of pardon then for every sin.

#### MARGARET

Brother! what agonizing pain!

#### VALENTINE

I tell thee! from vain tears abstain!  
 'Twas thy dishonour pierc'd my heart;

Thy fall the fatal death-stab gave.  
 Through the death-sleep I now depart  
 To God, a soldier true and brave. *(dies)*

*Cathedral*

*Service, Organ, and Anthem*

MARGARET (*amongst a number of people*)

EVIL-SPIRIT (*behind MARGARET*)

EVIL-SPIRIT

How different, Gretchen, was it once with thee,  
 When thou, still full of innocence,  
 Cam'st to the altar here,  
 And from the small and well-conn'd book  
 Did'st lisp thy prayer,  
 Half childish sport,  
 Half God in thy young heart!  
 Gretchen!  
 What thoughts are thine?  
 What deed of shame  
 Lurks in thy sinful heart?  
 Is thy prayer utter'd for thy mother's soul,  
 Who into long, long torment slept through thee?  
 Whose blood is on thy threshold?  
 — And stirs there not already 'neath thy heart  
 Another quick'ning pulse, that even now  
 Tortures itself and thee  
 With its foreboding presence?

MARGARET

Woe! Woe!  
 Oh could I free me from the harrowing thoughts  
 That 'gainst my will,  
 Throng my disorder'd brain!

CHORUS

*Dies iræ, dies illa,  
 Solvet sæclum in favilla.*  
*(The organ sounds)*

## EVIL-SPIRIT

Grim horror seizes thee!  
 The trumpet sounds  
 The graves are shaken!  
 And thy sinful heart,  
 From its cold ashy rest  
 For torturing flames  
 Anew created,  
 Trembles into life!

## MARGARET

Would I were hence!  
 It is as if the organ  
 Chok'd my breath,  
 As if the choir  
 Melted my inmost heart.

## CHORUS

*Judex ergo cum sedebit,  
 Quidquid latet adparebit,  
 Nil inultum remanebit.*

## MARGARET

I feel oppress'd!  
 The pillars of the wall  
 Are closing round me!  
 And the vaulted roof  
 Weighs down upon me! — air!

## EVIL-SPIRIT

Wouldst hide thee? sin and shame  
 Remain not hidden.  
 Air! light!  
 Woe's thee!

## CHORUS

*Quid sum miser tunc dicturus?  
 Quem patronum rogaturus!  
 Cum vix justus sit seturus.*



## EVIL-SPIRIT

The glorified their faces turn

Away from thee!

Shudder the pure to reach

Their hands to thee!

Woe!

## CHORUS

*Quid sum miser tunc dicturus?*

## MARGARET

Neighbour! your smelling bottle!

*(She swoons away)*

# WALPURGIS-NIGHT

*The Hartz Mountains*

*District of Schirke and Elend*

FAUST *and* MEPHISTOPHELES

MEPHISTOPHELES

A broomstick do you not at least desire?  
The roughest he-goat fain would I bestride,  
By this road from our goal we're still far wide.

FAUST

Except this knotty staff I nought require,  
I still am fresh upon my legs. Beside,  
What boots it to abridge a pleasant way?  
Along the labyrinth of these vales to creep,  
Then scale these rocks, whence, in eternal spray,  
Adown the cliffs the silv'ry torrents leap,  
Such is the joy that seasons paths like these;  
Spring weaves already in the birchen trees;  
E'en the late pine-grove feels her quick'ning powers,  
Should she not stimulate these limbs of ours?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Nought of this genial influence do I know!  
Within me all is wintry. Frost and snow  
I should prefer my dismal path to bound;  
How sadly, yonder, with belated glow,  
Rises the ruddy moon's imperfect round,  
Shedding so faint a light, at every tread  
One's sure to stumble 'gainst a rock or tree!  
An Ignis Fatuus I must call instead.  
Yonder one burning merrily, I see.  
Holla! my friend, I must request your light!  
Why should you flare away so uselessly?  
Be kind enough to show us up the height!

## IGNIS FATUUS

I hope from rev'rence to subdue  
 The lightness of my nature; true,  
 Our course is but a zigzag one.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Ho! ho!  
 So man, forsooth, he thinks to imitate!  
 Now, in the devil's name, for once go straight,  
 Or out at once your flick'ring life I'll blow!

## IGNIS FATUUS

That you are master here is obvious quite;  
 To do your will, I'll cordially essay;  
 But think! The hill is magic-mad to-night;  
 And if as guide you choose a meteor's light,  
 You must not wonder should we go astray.

## FAUST, MEPHISTOPHELES, IGNIS FATUUS

*(in alternate song)*

Through this dream and magic-sphere,  
 Lead us on, thou flick'ring guide.  
 Pilot well our bold career!  
 That we may with rapid stride  
 Gain yon regions waste and wide.

Trees on trees, how swift they flow!  
 How the steadfast granite blocks  
 Make obeisance as they go!  
 Hark! the grim, long-snouted rocks;  
 How they snort and how they blow!

Through the turf and through the stones,  
 Brook and brooklet speed along.  
 Hark, the rustling! Hark, the song!  
 Harken too love's plaintive tones!  
 Voices of those heavenly days,  
 When around us and above,  
 Like enchantment's mystic lays,  
 Breath'd the notes of hope and love!  
 Like the song of olden time,  
 Echo's voice repeats the chime.

To-whit! To whoo! upon the ear  
 The mingl'd discord sounds more near,  
 The owl, the pewit, and the jay,  
 Wakeful and in voice are they?  
 Salamanders in the brake,  
 Busy too, and wide awake!  
 Stout of paunch and long of limb  
 Sporting in the twilight dim?  
 While from every rock and slope  
 Snakelike, coil the roots of trees,  
 Flinging many a mystic rope,  
 Us to frighten, us to seize;  
 From rude knots, with life embued,  
 Polyp-fangs abroad they spread.  
 To snare the wand'rer. 'Neath our tread,  
 Mice, in myriads, thousand-hued,  
 Through the heath and through the moss,  
 Frisk, a gamesome multitude;  
 Glow-worms flit our path across;  
 Swiftly, the bewild'ring throng,  
 A dazzling escort, whirls along.

#### FAUST

Tell me, stand we motionless,  
 Or still forward do we press?  
 All things round us whirl and fly;  
 Rocks and trees make strange grimaces,  
 Dazzling meteors change their places,  
 How they puff and multiply!

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Now grasp my doublet — we at last  
 Have reach'd a central precipice,  
 Whence we a wond'ring glance may cast,  
 Where Mammon lights the dark abyss.

#### FAUST

How through the chasms strangely gleams,  
 A lurid light, like dawn's red glow!  
 Pervading with its quiv'ring beams,  
 The gorges of the gulph below.

There vapours rise, there clouds float by,  
 And here through mist the splendour shines;  
 Now, like a fount, it bursts on high,  
 Now glideth on in slender lines.  
 Far-reaching, with a hundred veins,  
 Through the far valley see it glide,  
 Here, where the gorge the flood restrains,  
 At once it scatters far and wide.  
 And near us sparks of sputt'ring light,  
 Like golden sand-showers, rise and fall  
 While see, in all its tow'ring height,  
 How fiercely glows yon rocky wall!

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Doth not his hall Sir Mammon light,  
 With splendour for this festive night?  
 To see it was a lucky chance,  
 E'en now the boist'rous guests advance!

#### FAUST

How the fierce tempest sweeps around!  
 My neck it strikes with sudden shock!

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Cling to these ribs of granite rock,  
 Or it will hurl you in yon gulf profound.  
 A murky vapour thickens night.  
 Hark! through the forest what a crash!  
 The scar'd owls flit in wild affright.  
 The shiver'd branches creak and clash!  
 The deaf'ning clang the ear appals,  
 Prostrate the leafy palace falls,  
 Rent are the pillars, grey with eld,  
 That the aye-verdant roof upheld.  
 The giant trunks, with mighty groan,  
 By the fierce blast are overthrown!  
 The roots, upriven, creak and moan!  
 In fearful and entangl'd fall,  
 One crashing ruin whelms them all,  
 While through the desolate abyss,  
 Sweeping the wreck-strown precipice,

The raging storm-blasts howl and hiss.  
 Hear'st thou voices sounding clear,  
 Distant now and now more near?  
 Hark! the mountain ridge along,  
 Streams the witches' magic-song!

WITCHES *(in chorus)*

Now to the Brocken the witches hie,  
 The stubble is yellow, the corn is green;  
 Thither the gath'ring legions fly,  
 And sitting aloft is Sir Urian seen.  
 O'er stick and o'er stone they go whirling along,  
 Witches and he-goats a motley throng.

VOICES

Alone old Baubo's coming now;  
 She rides upon a farrow sow.

CHORUS

Honour to who merits honour!  
 Baubo forwards! 'Tis her due!  
 A goodly sow, and dame upon her,  
 Follows then the whole witch crew.

VOICE

Which way didst come?

VOICE

O'er Ilsenstein!  
 There I peep'd in an owl's nest,  
 With her broad eye she gaz'd in mine!

VOICE

Drive to the devil, thou hellish pest!  
 Why ride so hard?

VOICE

She has graz'd my side,  
 Look at the wounds, how deep and how wide!

WITCHES *(in chorus)*

The way is broad, the way is long; '

Scratches the besom and sticks the prong.  
 What mad pursuit! What tumult wild!  
 Crush'd is the mother and stiff'd the child.

WIZARDS *(half chorus)*

Like house-encumber'd snail we creep,  
 While far ahead the women keep.  
 For, when to the devil's house we speed,  
 By a thousand steps they take the lead.

THE OTHER HALF

Not so, precisely do we view it; —  
 They with a thousand steps may do it.  
 But let them hasten as they can,  
 With one long bound 'tis clear'd by man.

VOICES *(above)*

Come with us, come with us from Felsensee.

VOICES *(from below)*

Aloft to you we would mount with glee!  
 We wash, and free from all stain are we,  
 Yet are doom'd to endless sterility.

BOTH CHORUSES

The wind is hush'd, the stars grow pale,  
 The pensive moon her light doth veil,  
 And whirling on, the magic quire,  
 Sputter forth, sparks of drizzling fire.

VOICE *(from below)*

Stay! stay!

VOICE *(from above)*

What voice of woe  
 Calls from the cavern'd depths below?

VOICE *(from below)*

Stay, stay, stay for me!  
 Three centuries I climb in vain,

And yet can ne'er the summit gain!  
Fain would I with my kindred be!

### BOTH CHORUSES

Broom and pitch-fork, goat and prong,  
Serve whereon to whirl along;  
Who vainly strives to climb to-night,  
Is lost for ever, luckless wight!

### DEMI-WITCH *(below)*

I've totter'd after now so long;  
How far before me are the throng!  
No peace at home can I obtain,  
Here too my efforts are in vain.

### CHORUS OF WITCHES

Salve gives the witches strength to rise;  
A rag for a sail does well enough;  
A goodly ship is in every trough;  
To-night who flies not, never flies.

### BOTH CHORUSES

And when the topmost peak we round,  
Then alight we on the ground;  
The heath's wide regions cover ye  
With your mad swarms of witchery.  
*(They let themselves down)*

### MEPHISTOPHELES

They crowd and jostle, whirl and flutter!  
They whisper, babble, twirl, and splutter!  
They glimmer, burn, they stink and stutter!  
All noisomely together blent,  
A genuine witch's element!  
Stick close, or you'll be borne away.  
Where art thou?

### FAUST *(in the distance)*

Here!



## MEPHISTOPHELES

Already whirl'd so far!  
 The master then indeed I needs must play.  
 Make way! Squire Voland comes! Sweet folk, make way!  
 Here, doctor, grasp me! From this ceaseless jar  
 With one long bound a quick retreat we'll make.  
 Even for me too mad these people are.  
 Hard by shines something with peculiar glare,  
 I feel myself allur'd towards yonder brake.  
 Come, come along with me! we'll slip in there.

## FAUST

Spirit of contradiction! Lead the way!  
 Go on, and I will follow after straight.  
 'Twas wisely done, however, I must say,  
 On May-night to the Brocken to repair,  
 And then by choice ourselves to isolate.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Look at those colour'd flames which yonder flare!  
 A merry club is met together there.  
 In a small circle one is not alone.

## FAUST

I'd rather be above, though, I must own!  
 Already fire and eddying smoke I view.  
 The impetuous millions to the devil ride;  
 Full many a riddle will be there untied.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Ay! and full many a one be tied anew.  
 But let the great world rave and riot,  
 While here we house ourselves in quiet.  
 'Tis an old practice to create  
 Our lesser worlds within the great.  
 Young naked witches there I spy,  
 And old ones, veil'd more prudently.  
 For my sake courteous be to all,  
 The pastime's great, the trouble small.  
 Of instruments I hear the cursed din!

One must get used to it. Come in! come in!  
 There's now no help for it. I'll step before,  
 And introducing you as my good friend,  
 Confer on you one obligation more.  
 How say you now? 'Tis no such paltry room.  
 Why only look, you scarce can see the end;  
 A hundred fires in rows disperse the gloom;  
 They dance, they talk, they cook, make love, and drink,  
 Where could we find aught better, do you think?

#### FAUST

To introduce us, do you purpose here  
 As devil or as wizard to appear?

#### MEPHISTOPHELES

Though wont indeed to strict incognito,  
 On gala-days one must one's orders show.  
 No garter have I to distinguish me.  
 But here the cloven foot gives dignity.  
 Dost mark yon crawling snail? This way she hies;  
 She with her searching feelers, hath no doubt,  
 Already with quick instinct, found me out.  
 Here, if I would, for me there's no disguise.  
 From fire to fire, we'll saunter at our leisure,  
 The gallant you, I'll cater for your pleasure.  
*(To a party seated round some expiring embers)*

Old gentlemen, why are ye moping here?  
 You should be in the midst of all the riot,  
 Girt round with revelry and youthful cheer;  
 At home one surely has enough of quiet.

#### GENERAL

Who is there can rely upon the nation,  
 How great soe'er hath been its obligation?  
 'Tis with the people as with women, they  
 To rising stars alone their homage pay.

#### MINISTER

Too far astray they wander now-a-days;  
 I, for my part, extol the good old ways;  
 For truly when ourselves were all the rage,

Then was indeed the genuine golden age.

PARVENU

We were among the knowing ones, I own,  
And often did what best were let alone.  
Yet now when we would gladly keep our ground,  
With hurly-burly every thing spins round.

AUTHOR

Who, speaking generally, now cares indeed,  
A work of even moderate depth to read!  
As for our youth, there ne'er has risen yet  
So shallow and so malapert a set.

MEPHISTOPHELES

*(suddenly appearing very old)*

Since I the last time now the Brocken scale,  
That all are ripe for doom one plainly sees;  
And just because my cask begins to fail,  
So the whole world is also on the lees.

HUCKSTER-WITCH

Stop, gentlemen, nor pass me by!  
Lose not this opportunity!  
Of wares I have a choice collection,  
Pray honour them with your inspection.  
No fellow to my booth you'll find  
On earth, for 'mong my store there's nought,  
Which to the world, and to mankind,  
Hath not some direful mischief wrought.  
No dagger here, which hath not flow'd with blood,  
No bowl, which hath not in some healthy frame  
Infus'd the poison's life-consuming flood,  
No trinket, but hath wrought some woman's shame,  
No weapon but hath cut some sacred tie,  
Or stabb'd behind the back an enemy.

MEPHISTOPHELES

Gossip! but ill the times you understand;  
What's done is done! The past's beyond recall!  
For your antiquities there's no demand!

With novelties pray furnish forth your stall.

FAUST

May this wild scene my senses spare!  
This, with a vengeance, is a fair!

MEPHISTOPHELES

Upward the eddying concourse throng,  
Thinking to push, thyself art push'd along.

FAUST

Who's that, pray?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Mark her well! That's Lilith.

FAUST

Who?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Adam's first wife. Of her rich locks beware!  
That charm in which she's parallel'd by few!  
When in its toils a youth she doth ensnare,  
He will not soon escape, I promise you.

FAUST

There sit a pair, the old one with the young;  
Already they have bravely danc'd and sprung!

MEPHISTOPHELES

To-night there's no cessation; come along!  
Another dance begins; we'll join the throng.

FAUST

*(dancing with the young one)*

Once there appear'd in vision bright,  
An apple-tree to glad mine eyes.  
Two apples with their rosy light  
Allur'd me, and I sought the prize.

## THE FAIR ONE

Apples still fondly ye desire,  
 From paradise it hath been so.  
 Feelings of joy my breast inspire  
 That such too in my garden grow.

MEPHISTOPHELES (*with the old one*)

Once a wild vision troubl'd me.  
 In it I saw a rifted tree.  
 It had a ——;  
 But as it was it pleas'd me too.

## THE OLD ONE

I beg most humbly to saute  
 The gallant with the cloven foot;  
 Let him a —— have ready here,  
 If he a —— does not fear.

## PROCTOPHANTASMIST

Accursed mob! How dare ye thus to meet?  
 Have I not shown and demonstrated too,  
 That ghosts stand not on ordinary feet?  
 Yet here ye dance as other mortals do!

THE FAIR ONE (*dancing*)

Then at our ball, what doth he here?

FAUST (*dancing*)

Ha! He in all must interfere.  
 When others dance, with him it lies  
 Their dancing still to criticise.  
 Each step he counts as never made,  
 On which his skill is not display'd.  
 He's most annoy'd if we advance;  
 If in one narrow round you'd dance,  
 As he in his old mill doth move,  
 Your dancing doubtless he'd approve.  
 And still more pleas'd he'd be if you  
 Would him salute with rev'rence due.

## PROCTOPHANTASMIST

Still here! what arrogance! unheard of quite!  
 Vanish! we now have fill'd the world with light!  
 Laws are unheeded by the devil's host;  
 Wise as we are, yet Tegel hath its ghost.  
 How long at this delusion, day and night,  
 Have I not vainly swept? 'Tis monstrous quite!

## THE FAIR ONE

Cease here to teaze us any more, I pray.

## PROCTOPHANTASMIST

Phantoms, I plainly to your face declare,  
 Since my own spirit can exert no sway,  
 No spiritual control myself will bear.

*(The dancing continues)*

To-night I see I shall in nought succeed;  
 But I'm prepar'd my travels to pursue,  
 And hope before my final step indeed,  
 To triumph over bards and devils too.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Now in some puddle will he take his station,  
 Such is his mode of seeking consolation;  
 Where leeches, feasting on his blood, will drain  
 Spirit and spirits from his haunted brain.

*(To FAUST, who has left the dance)*

But why the charming damsel leave, I pray,  
 Who to you in the dance so sweetly sang?

## FAUST

Ah! in the very middle of her lay,  
 Out of her mouth a small red mouse there sprang.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Suppose there did! One must not be too nice:  
 'Twas well it was not grey, let that suffice.  
 Who 'mid his pleasures for a trifle cares?

## FAUST

Then saw I ——

## MEPHISTOPHELES

What?

## FAUST

Mephisto, seest thou there  
 Standing far off, a lone child, pale and fair?  
 Slow from the spot her drooping form she tears,  
 And seems with shackl'd feet to move along.  
 I own within me the delusion's strong  
 That she the likeness of my Gretchen wears.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Gaze not upon her! 'Tis not good! Forbear!  
 'Tis lifeless, magical, a shape of air,  
 An idol! Such to meet with, bodes no good;  
 That rigid look of her's doth freeze man's blood,  
 And well-nigh petrifies his heart to stone, —  
 The story of Medusa thou hast known.

## FAUST

Ay, verily! a corpse's eyes are those,  
 Which there was no fond loving hand to close.  
 That is the bosom I so fondly press'd,  
 That my sweet Gretchen's form, so oft caress'd.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Deluded fool! 'Tis magic, I declare!  
 To each she doth his lov'd one's image wear.

## FAUST

What bliss! what torture! vainly I essay  
 To turn me from that piteous look away.  
 How strangely doth a single crimson line  
 Around that lovely neck its coil entwine,  
 It shows no broader than a knife's blunt edge!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

Quite right! I see it also, and allege  
 That she beneath her arm her head can bear,  
 Since Perseus cut it off. — But you I swear  
 Your fondness for delusion cherish still!  
 Come now, my friend, and let's ascend the hill!  
 As on the Prater all is bright and gay.  
 And truly if my senses are not gone,  
 I see a theatre, — what's going on?

## SERVIBILIS

They are about to recommence; — the play  
 Will be the last of seven, and spick-span new.  
 'Tis usual here that number to present.  
 A dilettante did the piece invent,  
 And dilettanti will enact it too.  
 Excuse me, gentlemen; to me's assign'd  
 As dilettante to uplift the curtain.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

You on the Blocksberg I'm rejoic'd to find,  
 That 'tis your most appropriate sphere is certain.





# WALPURGIS-NIGHT'S DREAM;

OR

OBERON AND TITANIA'S

GOLDEN WEDDING-FEAST

INTERMEZZO

*Theatre*

MANAGER

VALES, where mists still shift and play,  
 To ancient hill succeeding, —  
 These our scenes; — so we, to-day,  
 May rest, brave sons of Mieding.

HERALD

That the marriage golden be,  
 Must fifty years be ended.  
 More dear this feast of gold to me,  
 Contention now suspended.

OBERON

Spirits, are ye hov'ring near,  
 On downy pinions sailing?  
 Before your king and queen appear,  
 Their reconcilment hailing.

PUCK

Puck draws near and wheels about,  
 In mazy circles dancing!  
 Hundreds swell his joyous shout,  
 Behind him still advancing.

ARIEL

Ariel wakes his dainty air,  
 His lyre celestial stringing. —

Fools lie lureth, and the fair,  
 With his celestial singing.

#### OBERON

Wedded ones, would ye agree,  
 We court your imitation;  
 Would ye fondly love as we,  
 We counsel separation.

#### TITANIA

If husband scold and wife retort,  
 Then bear them far asunder;  
 Her to the burning south transport,  
 And him the North Pole under.

#### THE WHOLE ORCHESTRA (*Fortissimo*)

Flies and midges all unite  
 With frog and chirping cricket,  
 Our orchestra throughout the night,  
 Resounding in the thicket!

#### *Solo*

Yonder doth the bagpipe come!  
 Its sack an airy bubble.  
 Schnick, schnick, schnack, with nasal hum,  
 Its notes it doth redouble.

#### EMBRYO SPIRIT

Spider's foot and midge's wing,  
 A toad in form and feature;  
 Together verses it can string,  
 Though scarce a living creature.

#### A LITTLE PAIR

Tiny step and lofty bound,  
 Through dew and exhalation;  
 Ye trip it deftly on the ground,  
 But gain no elevation.

#### INQUISITIVE TRAVELLER

Can I indeed believe my eyes?  
 Is't not mere masquerading?

What! Oberon in beauteous guise,  
Among the groups parading!

### ORTHODOX

No claws, no tail to whisk about,  
To fright us at our revel; —  
Yet like the gods of Greece, no doubt,  
He too's a genuine devil.

### NORTHERN ARTIST

These that I'm hitting off to-day  
Are sketches unpretending;  
Towards Italy without delay,  
My steps I think of bending.

### PURIST

Alas! ill-fortune leads me here,  
Where riot still grows louder;  
And 'mong the witches gather'd here,  
But two alone wear powder.

### YOUNG WITCH

Your powder and your petticoat,  
Suit hags, there's no gainsaying;  
Hence I sit fearless on my goat,  
My naked charms displaying.

### MATRON

We're too well-bred to squabble here,  
Or insult back to render;  
But may you wither soon, my dear,  
Although so young and tender.

### LEADER OF THE BAND

Nose of fly and gnat's proboscis,  
Throng not the naked beauty!  
Frogs and crickets in the mosses,  
Keep time and do your duty!

WEATHERCOCK (*towards one side*)

What charming company I view  
 Together here collected!  
 Gay bachelors, a hopeful crew,  
 And brides so unaffected.

WEATHERCOCK (*towards the other side*)

Unless indeed the yawning ground  
 Should open to receive them,  
 From this vile crew, with sudden bound  
 To Hell I'd jump and leave them.

## XENIEN

With small sharp shears, in insect guise,  
 Behold us at your revel!  
 That we may tender, filial-wise,  
 Our homage to the devil.

## HENNINGS

Look now at yonder eager crew,  
 How naïvely they're jesting;  
 That they have tender hearts and true,  
 They stoutly keep protesting.

## MUSAGET

Oneself amid this witchery  
 How pleasantly one loses;  
 For witches easier are to me  
 To govern than the Muses!

## CI-DEVANT GENIUS OF THE AGE

With proper folks when we appear,  
 No one can then surpass us!  
 Keep close, wide is the Blocksberg here  
 As Germany's Parnassus.

## INQUISITIVE TRAVELLER

How name ye that stiff formal man,  
 Who strides with lofty paces?  
 He tracks the game where'er he can,  
 He scents the Jesuits' traces.

## CRANE

Where waters troubl'd are or clear,  
 To fish I am delighted;  
 Your pious gentlemen appear  
 With devils here united.

## WORLDLING

By pious people it is true,  
 No medium is rejected;  
 Conventicles, and not a few,  
 On Blocksberg are erected.

## DANCER

Another choir is drawing nigh,  
 Far off the drums are beating.  
 Be still! 'tis but the bittern's cry,  
 Its changeless note repeating.

## DANCING MASTER

Each twirls about and never stops,  
 And as he can advances.  
 The crooked leaps! The clumsy hops!  
 Nor careth how he dances.

## FIDDLER

To take each other's life, I trow,  
 Would cordially delight them!  
 As Orpheus' lyre the beasts, so now  
 The bagpipe doth unite them.

## DOGMATIST

My views, in spite of doubt and sneer,  
 I hold with stout persistence,  
 Inferring from the devils here,  
 The evil one's existence.

## IDEALIST

My every sense rules Phantasy  
 With sway quite too potential.  
 Sure I'm demented if the *I*  
 Alone is the essential.

## REALIST

This entity's a dreadful bore  
 And cannot choose but vex me;  
 The ground beneath me ne'er before  
 Thus totter'd to perplex me.

## SUPERNATURALIST

Well pleas'd assembl'd here I view  
 Of spirits this profusion;  
 From devils, touching angels too,  
 I gather some conclusion.

## SCEPTIC

The ignis fatuus they track out,  
 And think they're near the treasure.  
 Devil alliterates with doubt,  
 Here I abide with pleasure.

## LEADER OF THE BAND

Frog and cricket in the mosses, —  
 Confound your gasconading!  
 Nose of fly and gnat's proboscis; —  
 Most tuneful serenading!

## THE KNOWING ONES

As sans-souci this host we greet,  
 Their jovial humour showing,  
 There's now no walking on our feet,  
 So on our heads we're going.

## THE AWKWARD ONES

In seasons past we snatch'd, tis true,  
 Some tit-bits by our cunning;  
 Our shoes, alas, are now danced through,  
 On our bare soles we're running.

## WILL-O'-THE-WISPS

From marshy bogs we sprang to light,  
 Yet here behold us dancing;  
 The gayest gallants of the night,  
 In glitt'ring rows advancing.

## SHOOTING STAR

With rapid motion from on high,  
 I shot in starry splendour;  
 Now prostrate on the grass I lie; —  
 Who aid will kindly render?

## THE MASSIVE ONES

Room there! wheel round! They're coming! lo!  
 Down sink the bending grasses.  
 Though spirits, yet their limbs we know,  
 Are hugh substantial masses.

## PUCK

Don't stamp so heavily, I pray,  
 Like elephants you're treading;  
 And 'mong the elves be Puck to-day,  
 The stoutest at the wedding.

## ARIEL

If nature boon, or subtle sprite,  
 Endow your soul with pinions; —  
 Then follow to yon rosy height,  
 Through ether's calm dominions.

ORCHESTRA (*pianissimo*)

Drifting cloud and misty wreathes  
 Are fill'd with light elysian.  
 O'er reed and leaf the zephyr breathes,  
 So fades the fairy vision!

*A gloomy Day. A Plain*FAUST *and* MEPHISTOPHELES

## FAUST

In misery! despairing! long wandering pitifully on the  
 face of the earth and now imprison'd! This gentle hapless  
 creature, immur'd in the dungeon as a malefactor and  
 reserved for horrid tortures! That it should come to this! To  
 this! — Perfidious, worthless spirit, and this thou hast



concealed from me! — Stand! ay, stand! roll in malicious rage thy fiendish eyes! Stand and brave me with thine insupportable presence! Imprison'd! In hopeless misery! delivered over to the power of evil spirits and the judgment of unpitying humanity! And me, the while, thou wert lulling with tasteless dissipations! — concealing from me her growing anguish, and leaving her to perish without help!

### MEPHISTOPHELES

She is not the first.

### FAUST

Hound! Execrable monster! Back with him, oh thou infinite spirit! back with the reptile into his dog's shape, in which it was his wont to scamper before me at eventide, to roll before the feet of the harmless wanderer, and to fasten on his shoulders when he fell. Change him again into his favourite shape, that he may crouch on his belly before me in the dust, whilst I spurn him with my foot, the reprobate! — Not the first! — Woe! Woe! By no human soul is it conceivable that more than one human creature has ever sunk into a depth of wretchedness like this, or that the first, in her writhing death-agony, should not have atoned in the sight of all-pardoning Heaven, for the guilt of all the rest! The misery of this one pierces me to the very marrow, and harrows up my soul; thou art grinning calmly over the doom of thousands!

### MEPHISTOPHELES

Now we are once again at our wit's end, just where the o'erstrained reason of you mortals snaps. Why dost thou seek our fellowship, if thou canst not go through with it? Would'st fly, and art not proof against dizziness? Do we force ourselves on thee, or thou on us?

### FAUST

Cease thus to gnash thy ravenous fangs at me! I loathe thee! — Great and glorious spirit, thou who didst vouchsafe

to reveal thyself unto me, thou who dost know my very heart and soul, why hast thou linked me with this base associate, who feeds on mischief and revels in destruction?

MEPHISTOPHELES

Hast done?

FAUST

Save her! or woe to thee! The direst of curses on thee for thousands of years!

MEPHISTOPHELES

I cannot loose the bands of the avenger, nor withdraw his bolts. — Save her! — Who was it plunged her into perdition? I or thou?

FAUST

*(looks wildly around)*

MEPHISTOPHELES

Would'st grasp the thunder? Well for you, poor mortals, that 'tis not yours to wield! To smite to atoms, the being however innocent, who obstructs his path, such is the tyrant's fashion of relieving himself in difficulties.

FAUST

Convey me thither! She shall be free!

MEPHISTOPHELES

And the danger to which thou dost expose thyself? Know, the guilt of blood, shed by thy hand, lies yet upon the town. Over the place where fell the murdered one, avenging spirits hover and watch for the returning murderer.

FAUST

This too from thee? The death and downfall of a world be on thee, monster! Conduct me thither, I say, and set her free!

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I will conduct thee, and what I can do, — hear! Have I all power in heaven and upon earth? I'll cloud the senses of the warder, — do thou possess thyself of the keys and lead her forth with human hand. I will keep watch! The magic steeds are waiting, I bear thee off. Thus much is in my power.

## FAUST

Up and away!

*Night. An open Plain*

## FAUST, MEPHISTOPHELES

*(Rushing along on black horses)*

## FAUST

What weave they round the Ravenstone?

## MEPHISTOPHELES

I know not what they shape and brew.

## FAUST

They're soaring, swooping, bending, stooping.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

A witches' pack.

## FAUST

They charm, they strew.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

On! On!

*Dungeon*

FAUST *(with a bunch of keys and a lamp before a small iron door)*

A fear unwonted o'er my spirit falls;  
 Man's concentrated woe o'erwhelms me here;  
 She dwells immur'd within these dripping walls;  
 Her only trespass a delusion dear!

And thou dost linger at the fatal door!  
 Thou dread'st to look upon her face once more!  
 On! While thou dalliest, draws her death-hour near.  
*(He seizes the lock. Singing within)*

My mother, the harlot,  
 She took me and slew!  
 My father, the scoundrel,  
 Hath eaten me too!  
 My sweet little sister  
 Hath all my bones laid,  
 Where soft winds are playing  
 All in the green shade;  
 Then became I a wood-bird, and sang on the spray,  
 Fly away! little bird, fly away! fly away!

(FAUST — *opening the lock*)

Ah! she forebodes not that her lover's near,  
 The clanking chains, the rustling straw to hear.  
*(He enters)*

MARGARET (*hiding her face in the bed of straw*)  
 Woe! woe! they come! oh bitter 'tis to die!

FAUST (*softly*)

Hush! hush! be still! I come to set thee free?

MARGARET (*throwing herself at his feet*)  
 If thou art human, feel my misery.

FAUST

Thou wilt awake the jailor with thy cry!  
*(He grasps the chains to unlock them)*

MARGARET (*on her knees*)

Who, executioner, to thee could give  
 O'er me this cruel power?  
 To bear me off at midnight's solemn hour!  
 Be merciful, and spare me! let me live!  
 Is dawn not time enough?  
*(she stands up)*

I'm still so young!  
 So very young, and must so early die!  
 Fair was I once, thence hath my ruin sprung.  
 My love is now afar, he then was nigh;  
 Torn lies the garland, the fair blossoms strew'd.  
 Oh do not seize me with a hand so rude!  
 Spare me! What harm have I e'er done to thee?  
 For mercy let me not in vain implore,  
 I ne'er have seen thee in my life before!

FAUST

Can I endure this bitter agony?

MARGARET

I'm wholly in thy power. Ah suffer me  
 But once again to give my babe the breast.  
 Through the long night I sooth'd it and caress'd;  
 They took it from me but to give me pain,  
 And now, they say that I my child have slain.  
 Ah, ne'er shall I be happy, ne'er again.  
 Then they sing songs about me! How wicked of the throng  
 A ballad of the olden time ends so,  
 How came they to apply the song?

FAUST

*(throwing himself on the ground)*

See, at thy feet a lover bendeth low,  
 To loose the bonds of wretchedness and woe.

MARGARET

*(throws herself beside him)*

Oh, let us kneel and move the saints by prayer!  
 Look! look! yon stairs below  
 Under the threshold there,  
 Hell's flames are all aglow!  
 Beneath the floor  
 With hideous noise,  
 The devils roar!

FAUST

*(aloud)*

Gretchen! Gretchen!

MARGARET

*(listening)*

That was my lov'd one's voice!

*(she springs up, the chains fall off)*

Where is he? I have heard him call, I'm free!

I will away, there's none shall hinder me.

I to his neck will fly,

Upon his bosom lie!

Gretchen, he call'd! on yonder threshold stood.

Through all the howling of Hell's fiery flood,

The fiends' dark sneers, their devilish scorn above,

I knew the sweet, the blissful tones of love.

FAUST

'Tis I!

MARGARET

'Tis thou! O say so once again!

*(embracing him)*

'Tis he! 'Tis he! where's now the torturing pain?

Where are the fetters? where the dungeon's gloom?

'Tis thou! 'Tis thou! To save me thou art come!

And I am sav'd! —

Already now the very street I see

Where the first time I caught a glimpse of thee.

And there too is the pleasant garden shade,

Where I and Martha for thy coming staid.

FAUST

*(endeavouring to lead her away)*

Come! come away!

MARGARET

Oh still delay!

I love to linger where thou stay'st.

*(caressing him)*

FAUST

Oh come! for if thou dost not haste,

Our ling'ring we shall both deplore.

## MARGARET

What dearest? can'st thou kiss me now no more!  
 So short a time away from me, and yet,  
 Love's fond embrace thou could'st so soon forget!  
 Why on thy neck so anxious do I feel?  
 When formerly a perfect heaven of bliss,  
 From thy dear looks and words would o'er me steal.  
 Ah! with what tenderness thou then did'st kiss!  
 Kiss me!  
 Or I'll kiss thee!

*(she embraces him)*

Woe! woe! Thy lips are cold, — are dumb.  
 Thy love where hast thou left?  
 Who hath me of thy love bereft?  
*(she turns away from him)*

## FAUST

Only take courage! dearest! prithee, come!  
 Thee to my heart with tenderness I'll hold,  
 And cherish thee with ardour thousand-fold;  
 I but entreat thee now to follow me!

## MARGARET

*(turning towards him)*

And art thou he? and art thou really he?

## FAUST

'Tis I! Oh come!

## MARGARET

Thou wilt strike off my chain,  
 And thou wilt take me to thine arms again.  
 How comes it that thou dost not shrink from me? —  
 And dost thou know, love, whom thou would'st set free?

## FAUST

Come! come! already night begins to wane.

## MARGARET

I sent my mother to her grave,  
 I drown'd my child beneath the wave.

Was it not given to thee and me — thee too?  
 'Tis thou thyself! I scarce believe it yet.  
 Give me thy hand! It is no dream! 'Tis true!  
 Thine own dear hand! — But how is this? 'Tis wet!  
 Quick, wipe it off! It seems like blood — Ah me!  
 Whose blood? what hast thou done? put up thy sword;  
 I pray thee, do!

FAUST

Death is in every word.  
 Oh, dearest, let the past forgotten be.

MARGARET

Yet must thou linger here in sorrow.  
 The graves I will describe to thee,  
 And thou must see to them to-morrow.  
 Reserve the best place for my mother,  
 Close at her side inter my brother,  
 Me at some little distance lay,  
 But, I entreat thee, not too far away!  
 And place my little babe on my right breast.  
 The little one alone will lie near me! —  
 Ah 'twas a sweet, a precious joy, of yore  
 To nestle at thy side so lovingly!  
 It will be mine no more, ah never more!  
 I feel as if I forc'd my love on thee,  
 As if thou still wert thrusting me away;  
 Yet 'tis thyself, thy fond, kind looks I see.

FAUST

If thou dost feel 'tis I, then come, I pray.

MARGARET

What, there? without?

FAUST

Yes, forth in the free air.

MARGARET

Ay, if the grave's without, — If death lurk there!  
 Hence to the everlasting resting-place;



And not one step beyond! — Thou'rt leaving me?  
Oh Henry! would that I could go with thee!

FAUST

Thou can'st! But will it! open stands the door.

MARGARET

I dare not go! I've nought to hope for more.  
What boots it to escape? They lurk for me.  
'Tis wretched still to beg from day to day,  
And burthen'd with an evil conscience too!  
'Tis wretched in a foreign land to stray,  
And they will catch me whatsoe'er I do!

FAUST

But I will ever bear thee company.

MARGARET

Quick! Quick!  
Save thy poor child  
Keep to the path  
The brook along,  
Over the bridge  
To the wood beyond,  
To the left, where the plank is,  
In the pond.  
Seize it at once!  
It tries to rise,  
It struggles yet!  
Save it. Oh save!

FAUST

Collect thy thoughts, one step and thou art free!

MARGARET

Were we but only past the hill!  
There sits my mother on a stone.  
Over my brain there falls a chill!  
There sits my mother on a stone;  
Slowly her head moves to and fro.

She winks not, nods not, her head droops low.  
 She slumber'd so long, nor wak'd again.  
 That we might be happy she slumber'd then.  
 Ah! those were pleasant times!

FAUST

Alas! since here  
 Nor argument avails, nor prayer, nor tear,  
 I'll venture forcibly to bear thee hence!

MARGARET

Loose me! I will not suffer violence!  
 Withdraw thy murd'rous hand, hold not so fast!  
 I have done all to please thee in the past.

FAUST

Day dawns! My love! My love!

MARGARET

Yes! day draws near,  
 The day of judgment, too, will soon appear.  
 It should have been my bridal! No one tell,  
 That thy poor Margaret thou hast known too well.  
 Woe to my garland! Its bloom is o'er!  
 Though not at the dance, we shall meet once more.  
 The crowd doth gather, in silence it rolls.  
 The squares, the streets, scarce hold the throng.  
 The staff is broken, — the death-bell tolls, —  
 They bind and seize me; I'm hurried along,  
 To the seat of blood already I'm bound;  
 Quivers each neck as the naked steel  
 Quivers on mine the blow to deal.  
 The silence of the grave now broods around!

FAUST

Would I had ne'er been born!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*appears without*)

Up! or you're lost.  
 Vain hesitation! Babbling, quaking!  
 My steeds are shiv'ring. Morn is breaking.

## MARGARET

What from the floor ascendeth like a ghost?  
 'Tis he! 'Tis he! Him from my presence chase!  
 What is his purpose in this holy place?  
 It is for me he cometh!

## FAUST

Thou shalt live!

## MARGARET

Judgment of God! To thee my soul I give!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*)

Come! come! I'll leave thee else to share her doom.

## MARGARET

Father, I'm thine! Save me! To thee I come!  
 Angelic hosts! your downy pinions wave,  
 Encamp around me to protect and save!  
 Henry! I shudder now to look on thee.

## MEPHISTOPHELES

She now is judg'd!

VOICES (*from above*)

Is saved!

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*)

Come thou with me!

(*Vanishes with FAUST*)

VOICE (*from within, dying away*)

Henry! Henry!

# IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS

## PERSONS OF THE DRAMA

IPHIGENIA. THOAS, *King of the Taurians*

ORESTES. PYLADES. ARKAS

## ACT THE FIRST

### SCENE I

*A Grove before the Temple of Diana*

IPHIGENIA

BENEATH your leafy gloom, ye waving boughs  
Of this old, shady, consecrated grove,  
As in the goddess' silent sanctuary,  
With the same shudd'ring feeling forth I step,  
As when I trod it first, nor ever here  
Doth my unquiet spirit feel at home.  
Long as the mighty will, to which I bow,  
Hath kept me here conceal'd, still, as at first,  
I feel myself a stranger. For the sea  
Doth sever me, alas! from those I love,  
And day by day upon the shore I stand,  
My soul still seeking for the land of Greece.  
But to my sighs, the hollow-sounding waves  
Bring, save their own hoarse murmurs, no reply.  
Alas for him! who friendless and alone,  
Remote from parents and from brethren dwells;  
From him grief snatches every coming joy  
Ere it doth reach his lip. His restless thoughts  
Revert for ever to his father's halls,  
Where first to him the radiant sun unclos'd  
The gates of heav'n; where closer, day by day,  
Brothers and sisters, leagu'd in pastime sweet,  
Around each other twin'd the bonds of love.  
I will not judge the counsel of the gods;

Yet, truly, woman's lot doth merit pity.  
 Man rules alike at home and in the field,  
 Nor is in foreign climes without resource;  
 Possession gladdens him, him conquest crowns,  
 And him an honourable death awaits.  
 How circumscrib'd is woman's destiny!  
 Obedience to a harsh, imperious lord,  
 Her duty, and her comfort; sad her fate,  
 Whom hostile fortune drives to lands remote:  
 Thus I, by noble Thoas, am detain'd,  
 Bound with a heavy, though a sacred chain.  
 Oh! with what shame, Diana, I confess  
 That with repugnance I perform these rites  
 For thee, divine protectress! unto whom  
 I would in freedom dedicate my life.  
 In thee, Diana, I have always hop'd,  
 And still I hope in thee, who didst infold  
 Within the holy shelter of thine arm  
 The outcast daughter of the mighty king.  
 Daughter of Jove! hast thou from ruin'd Troy  
 Led back in triumph to his native land  
 The mighty man, whom thou didst sore afflict,  
 His daughter's life in sacrifice demanding, —  
 Hast thou for him, the godlike Agamemnon,  
 Who to thine altar led his darling child,  
 Preserv'd his wife, Electra, and his son,  
 His dearest treasures? — then at length restore  
 Thy suppliant also to her friends and home,  
 And save her, as thou once from death didst save,  
 So now, from living here, a second death.

## SCENE II

IPHIGENIA.      ARKAS

ARKAS

The king hath sent me hither, and commands  
 To hail Diana's priestess. This the day,  
 On which for new and wonderful success,  
 Tauris her goddess thanks. The king and host  
 Draw near, — I come to herald their approach.

## IPHIGENIA

We are prepar'd to give them worthy greeting;  
 Our goddess doth behold with gracious eye  
 The welcome sacrifice from Thoas' hand.

## ARKAS

Oh, priestess, that thine eye more mildly beam'd, —  
 Thou much-rever'd one, — that I found thy glance,  
 O consecrated maid, more calm, more bright,  
 To all a happy omen! Still doth grief,  
 With gloom mysterious, shroud thy inner mind;  
 Still, still, through many a year we wait in vain  
 For one confiding utt'rance from thy breast.  
 Long as I've known thee in this holy place,  
 That look of thine hath ever made me shudder;  
 And, as with iron bands, thy soul remains  
 Lock'd in the deep recesses of thy breast.

## IPHIGENIA

As doth become the exile and the orphan.

## ARKAS

Dost thou then here seem exil'd and an orphan?

## IPHIGENIA

Can foreign scenes our fatherland replace?

## ARKAS

Thy fatherland is foreign now to thee.

## IPHIGENIA

Hence is it that my bleeding heart ne'er heals.  
 In early youth, when first my soul, in love,  
 Held father, mother, brethren fondly twin'd,  
 A group of tender germs, in union sweet,  
 We sprang in beauty from the parent stem,  
 And heavenward grew. An unrelenting curse  
 Then seiz'd and sever'd me from those I lov'd,  
 And wrench'd with iron grasp the beauteous bands.  
 It vanish'd then, the fairest charm of youth,

The simple gladness of life's early dawn;  
 Though sav'd, I was a shadow of myself,  
 And life's fresh joyance bloom'd in me no more.

ARKAS

If thus thou ever dost lament thy fate,  
 I must accuse thee of ingratitude.

IPHIGENIA

Thanks have you ever.

ARKAS

Not the honest thanks  
 Which prompt the heart to offices of love;  
 The joyous glance, revealing to the host  
 A grateful spirit, with its lot content.  
 When thee a deep mysterious destiny  
 Brought to this sacred fane, long years ago,  
 To greet thee, as a treasure sent from heaven,  
 With reverence and affection, Thoas came.  
 Benign and friendly was this shore to thee,  
 Which had before each stranger's heart appall'd,  
 For, till thy coming, none e'er trod our realm  
 But fell, according to an ancient rite,  
 A bloody victim at Diana's shrine.

IPHIGENIA

Freely to breathe alone is not to live.  
 Say, is it life, within this holy fane,  
 Like a poor ghost around its sepulchre  
 To linger out my days? Or call you that  
 A life of conscious happiness and joy,  
 When every hour, dream'd listlessly away,  
 Leads to those dark and melancholy days,  
 Which the sad troop of the departed spend  
 In self-forgetfulness on Lethe's shore?  
 A useless life is but an early death;  
 This, woman's lot, is eminently mine.

ARKAS

I can forgive, though I must needs deplore,

The noble pride which underrates itself.  
 It robs thee of the happiness of life.  
 And hast thou, since thy coming here, done nought?  
 Who cheer'd the gloomy temper of the king?  
 Who hath with gentle eloquence annull'd,  
 From year to year, the usage of our sires,  
 By which, a victim at Diana's shrine,  
 Each stranger perish'd, thus from certain death  
 Sending so oft the rescued captive home?  
 Hath not Diana, harbouring no revenge  
 For this suspension of her bloody rites,  
 In richest measure heard thy gentle prayer?  
 On joyous pinions o'er the advancing host,  
 Doth not triumphant conquest proudly soar?  
 And feels not every one a happier lot,  
 Since Thoas, who so long hath guided us  
 With wisdom and with valour, sway'd by thee,  
 The joy of mild benignity approves,  
 Which leads him to relax the rigid claims  
 Of mute submission? Call thyself useless! Thou,  
 Thou, from whose being o'er a thousand hearts,  
 A healing balsam flows? when to a race,  
 To whom a god consign'd thee, thou dost prove  
 A fountain of perpetual happiness,  
 And from this dire inhospitable shore  
 Dost to the stranger grant a safe return?

#### IPHIGENIA

The little done doth vanish to the mind,  
 Which forward sees how much remains to do.

#### ARKAS

Him dost thou praise, who underrates his deeds?

#### IPHIGENIA

Who estimates his deeds is justly blam'd.

#### ARKAS

We blame alike, who proudly disregard  
 Their genuine merit, and who vainly prize  
 Their spurious worth too highly. Trust me, priestess,



And hearken to the counsel of a man  
 With honest zeal devoted to thy service:  
 When Thoas comes to-day to speak with thee,  
 Lend to his purpos'd words a gracious ear.

IPHIGENIA

The well-intention'd counsel troubles me:  
 His offer studiously I've sought to shun.

ARKAS

Thy duty and thy interest calmly weigh.  
 Since the king lost his son, he trusts but few,  
 Nor those as formerly. Each noble's son  
 He views with jealous eye as his successor;  
 He dreads a solitary, helpless age,  
 Or rash rebellion, or untimely death.  
 A Scythian studies not the rules of speech,  
 And least of all the king. He who is used  
 To act and to command, knows not the art,  
 From far, with subtle tact, to guide discourse  
 Through many windings to its destin'd goal.  
 Do not embarrass him with shy reserve  
 And studied misconception: graciously,  
 And with submission, meet the royal wish.

IPHIGENIA

Shall I then speed the doom that threatens me?

ARKAS

His gracious offer canst thou call a threat?

IPHIGENIA

'Tis the most terrible of all to me.

ARKAS

For his affection grant him confidence.

IPHIGENIA

If he will first redeem my soul from fear.

## ARKAS

Why dost thou hide from him thy origin?

## IPHIGENIA

A priestess secrecy doth well become.

## ARKAS

Nought to our monarch should a secret be;  
And, though he doth not seek to fathom thine,  
His noble nature feels, ay, deeply feels,  
That studiously thou hid'st thyself from him.

## IPHIGENIA

Displeasure doth he harbour 'gainst me, then?

## ARKAS

Almost it seems so. True, he speaks not of thee,  
But casual words have taught me that the wish  
To call thee his hath firmly seiz'd his soul;  
Oh, do not leave the monarch to himself!  
Lest his displeasure, rip'ning in his breast,  
Should work thee woe, so with repentance thou  
Too late my faithful counsel shalt recall.

## IPHIGENIA

How! doth the monarch purpose what no man  
Of noble mind, who loves his honest name,  
Whose bosom reverence for the gods restrains,  
Would ever think of? Will he force employ  
To tear me from this consecrated fane?  
Then will I call the gods, and chiefly thee,  
Diana, goddess resolute, to aid me;  
Thyself a virgin, thou'lt a virgin shield,  
And succour to thy priestess gladly yield.

## ARKAS

Be tranquil! Passion, and youth's fiery blood  
Impel not Thoas rashly to commit  
A deed so lawless. In his present mood,  
I fear from him another harsh resolve;

Which (for his soul is steadfast and unmov'd,)  
 He then will execute without delay.  
 Therefore I pray thee, canst thou grant no more,  
 At least be grateful — give thy confidence.

## IPHIGENIA

Oh tell me what is further known to thee.

## ARKAS

Learn it from him. I see the king approach;  
 Thou honour'st him, and thy own heart will prompt thee  
 To meet him kindly and with confidence.  
 A noble man by woman's gentle word  
 May oft be led.

IPHIGENIA, *alone*

I see not how I can  
 Follow the counsel of my faithful friend.  
 But willingly the duty I perform  
 Of giving thanks for benefits receiv'd,  
 And much I wish that to the king my lips  
 With truth could utter what would please his ear.

## SCENE III

IPHIGENIA.                      THOAS

## IPHIGENIA

Her royal gifts the goddess shower on thee!  
 Imparting conquest, wealth, and high renown,  
 Dominion, and the welfare of thy house,  
 With the fulfilment of each pious wish,  
 That thou, who over numbers rul'st supreme,  
 Thyself may'st be supreme in happiness!

## THOAS

Contented were I with my people's praise;  
 My conquests others more than I enjoy.  
 Oh! be he king or subject, he's most blest,  
 Who in his home finds happiness and peace.

Thou shar'dst my sorrow, when a hostile sword  
 Tore from my side my last, my dearest son;  
 Long as fierce vengeance occupied my heart,  
 I did not feel my dwelling's dreary void;  
 But now, returning home, my rage appeas'd,  
 My foes defeated, and my son aveng'd,  
 I find there nothing left to comfort me.  
 The glad obedience, which I used to see  
 Kindling in every eye, is smother'd now  
 In discontent and gloom; each, pond'ring, weighs  
 The changes which a future day may bring,  
 And serves the childless king, because compell'd.  
 To-day I come within this sacred fane,  
 Which I have often enter'd to implore  
 And thank the gods for conquest. In my breast  
 I bear an old and fondly-cherish'd wish,  
 To which methinks thou canst not be a stranger;  
 Thee, maid, a blessing to myself and realm,  
 I hope, as bride, to carry to my home.

#### IPHIGENIA

Too great thine offer, king, to one unknown;  
 Abash'd the fugitive before thee stands,  
 Who on this shore sought only what thou gav'st,  
 Safety and peace.

#### THOAS

Thus still to shroud thyself  
 From me, as from the lowest, in the veil  
 Of mystery which wrapp'd thy coming here,  
 Would in no country be deem'd just or right.  
 Strangers this shore appall'd; 'twas so ordain'd  
 Alike by law and stern necessity.  
 From thee alone — a kindly welcom'd guest,  
 Who hast enjoy'd each hallow'd privilege,  
 And spent thy days in freedom unrestrain'd —  
 From thee I hop'd that confidence to gain  
 Which every faithful host may justly claim.

#### IPHIGENIA

If I conceal'd, O king, my name, my race,

'Twas fear that prompted me, and not mistrust.  
 For didst thou know who stands before thee now,  
 And what accursed head thy arm protects,  
 A shudd'ring horror would possess thy heart;  
 And, far from wishing me to share thy throne,  
 Thou, ere the time appointed, from thy realm  
 Wouldst banish me perchance, and thrust me forth,  
 Before a glad reunion with my friends  
 And period to my wand'rings is ordain'd,  
 To meet that sorrow, which in every clime,  
 With cold, inhospitable, fearful hand,  
 Awaits the outcast, exil'd from his home.

THOAS

Whate'er respecting thee the gods decree,  
 Whate'er their doom for thee and for thy house,  
 Since thou hast dwelt amongst us, and enjoy'd  
 The privilege the pious stranger claims,  
 To me hath fail'd no blessing sent from Heaven;  
 And to persuade me, that protecting thee  
 I shield a guilty head, were hard indeed.

IPHIGENIA

Thy bounty, not the guest, draws blessings down.

THOAS

The kindness shown the wicked is not blest.  
 End then thy silence, priestess; not unjust  
 Is he who doth demand it. In my hands  
 The goddess plac'd thee; thou hast been to me  
 As sacred as to her, and her behest  
 Shall for the future also be my law.  
 If thou canst hope in safety to return  
 Back to thy kindred, I renounce my claims:  
 But is thy homeward path for ever clos'd —  
 Or doth thy race in hopeless exile rove,  
 Or lie extinguish'd by some mighty woe —  
 Then may I claim thee by more laws than one.  
 Speak openly, thou know'st I keep my word.

## IPHIGENIA

Its ancient bands reluctantly my tongue  
 Doth loose, a long-hid secret to divulge;  
 For once imparted, it resumes no more  
 The safe asylum of the inmost heart,  
 But thenceforth, as the powers above decree,  
 Doth work its ministry of weal or woe.  
 Attend! I issue from the Titan's race.

## THOAS

A word momentous calmly hast thou spoken.  
 Him nam'st thou ancestor whom all the world  
 Knows as a sometime favourite of the gods?  
 Is it that Tantalus, whom Jove himself  
 Drew to his council and his social board?  
 On whose experienc'd words, with wisdom fraught,  
 As on the language of an oracle,  
 E'en gods delighted hung?

## IPHIGENIA

'Tis even he;

But gods should not hold intercourse with men  
 As with themselves. Too weak the human race,  
 Not to grow dizzy on unwonted heights.  
 Ignoble was he not, and no betrayer;  
 To be the Thunderer's slave, he was too great;  
 To be his friend and comrade, — but a man.  
 His crime was human, and their doom severe;  
 For poets sing, that treachery and pride  
 Did from Jove's table hurl him headlong down,  
 To grovel in the depths of Tartarus.  
 Alas, and his whole race their hate pursues.

## THOAS

Bear they their own guilt, or their ancestors'?

## IPHIGENIA

The Titan's mighty breast and nervous frame  
 Was his descendant's certain heritage;  
 But round their brow Jove forg'd a band of brass.

Wisdom and patience, prudence and restraint,  
 He from their gloomy, fearful eye conceal'd;  
 In them each passion grew to savage rage,  
 And headlong rush'd uncheck'd. The Titan's son,  
 The strong-will'd Pelops, won his beauteous bride,  
 Hippodamia, child of Enomaus,  
 Through treachery and murder; she ere long  
 Bore him two children, Atreus and Thyestes;  
 With envy they beheld the growing love  
 Their father cherish'd for a first-born son  
 Sprung from another union. Bound by hate,  
 In secret they contrive their brother's death.  
 The sire, the crime imputing to his wife,  
 With savage fury claim'd from her his child,  
 And she in terror did destroy herself —

#### THOAS

Thou'rt silent? Pause not in thy narrative!  
 Do not repent thy confidence — say on!

#### IPHIGENIA

How blest is he who his progenitors  
 With pride remembers, to the list'ner tells  
 The story of their greatness, of their deeds,  
 And, silently rejoicing, sees himself  
 Link'd to this goodly chain! For the same stock  
 Bears not the monster and the demigod:  
 A line, or good or evil, ushers in  
 The glory or the terror of the world. —  
 After the death of Pelops, his two sons  
 Rul'd o'er the city with divided sway.  
 But such an union could not long endure.  
 His brother's honour first Thyestes wounds.  
 In vengeance Atreus drove him from the realm.  
 Thyestes, planning horrors, long before  
 Had stealthily procur'd his brother's son,  
 Whom he in secret nurtur'd as his own.  
 Revenge and fury in his breast he pour'd,  
 Then to the royal city sent him forth,  
 That in his uncle he might slay his sire,  
 The meditated murder was disclos'd,

And by the king most cruelly aveng'd,  
 Who slaughter'd, as he thought, his brother's son.  
 Too late he learn'd whose dying tortures met  
 His drunken gaze; and seeking to assuage  
 The insatiate vengeance that possess'd his soul,  
 He plann'd a deed unheard of. He assum'd  
 A friendly tone, seem'd reconcil'd, appeas'd,  
 And lur'd his brother, with his children twain,  
 Back to his kingdom; these he seiz'd and slew;  
 Then plac'd the loathsome and abhorrent food  
 At his first meal before the unconscious sire.  
 And when Thyestes had his hunger still'd  
 With his own flesh, a sadness seiz'd his soul;  
 He for his children ask'd, — their steps, their voice,  
 Fancied he heard already at the door;  
 And Atreus, grinning with malicious joy,  
 Threw in the members of the slaughter'd boys, —  
 Shudd'ring, O king, thou dost avert thy face:  
 So did the sun his radiant visage hide,  
 And swerve his chariot from the eternal path.  
 These, monarch, are thy priestess' ancestors,  
 And many a dreadful fate of mortal doom,  
 And many a deed of the bewilder'd brain,  
 Dark night doth cover with her sable wing,  
 Or shroud in gloomy twilight.

#### THOAS

Hidden there

Let them abide. A truce to horror now,  
 And tell me by what miracle thou sprang'st  
 From race so savage.

#### IPHIGENIA

Atreus' eldest son

Was Agamemnon; he, O king, my sire:  
 But I may say with truth, that, from a child,  
 In him the model of a perfect man  
 I witness'd ever. Clytemnestra bore  
 To him, myself, the firstling of their love,  
 Electra then. Peaceful the monarch rul'd,  
 And to the house of Tantalus was given



A long-withheld repose. A son alone  
 Was wanting to complete my parent's bliss;  
 Scarce was this wish fulfill'd, and young Orestes,  
 The household's darling, with his sisters grew,  
 When new misfortunes vex'd our ancient house.  
 To you hath come the rumour of the war,  
 Which, to avenge the fairest woman's wrongs,  
 The force united of the Grecian kings  
 Round Ilion's walls encamp'd. Whether the town  
 Was humbl'd, and achiev'd their great revenge,  
 I have not heard. My father led the host.  
 In Aulis vainly for a favouring gale  
 They waited; for, enrag'd against their chief,  
 Diana stay'd their progress, and requir'd,  
 Through Chalcas' voice, the monarch's eldest daughter.  
 They lur'd me with my mother to the camp,  
 And at Diana's altar doom'd this head. —  
 She was pleas'd, she did not wish my blood,  
 And wrapt me in a soft protecting cloud;  
 Within this temple from the dream of death  
 I waken'd first. Yes, I myself am she;  
 Iphigenia, — I who speak to thee  
 Am Atreus' grandchild, Agamemnon's child,  
 And great Diana's consecrated priestess.

#### THOAS

I yield no higher honour or regard  
 To the king's daughter than the maid unknown;  
 Once more my first proposal I repeat;  
 Come, follow me, and share what I possess.

#### IPHIGENIA

How dare I venture such a step, O king?  
 Hath not the goddess who protected me  
 Alone a right to my devoted head?  
 'Twas she who chose for me this sanctuary,  
 Where she perchance reserves me for my sire,  
 By my apparent death enough chastis'd,  
 To be the joy and solace of his age.  
 Perchance my glad return is near; and how  
 If I, unmindful of her purposes,

Had here attach'd myself against her will?  
I ask'd a signal, did she wish my stay.

THOAS

The signal is that still thou tarriest here.  
Seek not evasively such vain pretexts.  
Not many words are needed to refuse,  
By the refus'd the *no* alone is heard.

IPHIGENIA

Mine are not words meant only to deceive;  
I have to thee my inmost heart reveal'd.  
And doth no inward voice suggest to thee,  
How I with yearning soul must pine to see  
My father, mother, and my long-lost home?  
Oh let thy vessels bear me thither, king!  
That in the ancient halls, where sorrow still  
In accents low doth fondly breathe my name,  
Joy, as in welcome of a new-born child,  
May round the columns twine the fairest wreath.  
Thou wouldst to me and mine new life impart.

THOAS

Then go! the promptings of thy heart obey;  
Despise the voice of reason and good counsel.  
Be quite the woman, sway'd by each desire,  
That bridleless impels her to and fro.  
When passion rages fiercely in her breast,  
No sacred tie withholds her from the wretch  
Who would allure her to forsake for him  
A husband's or a father's guardian arms;  
Extinct within her heart its fiery glow,  
The golden tongue of eloquence in vain  
With words of truth and power assails her ear.

IPHIGENIA

Remember now, O king, thy noble words!  
My trust and candour wilt thou thus repay?  
Thou seem'dst, methought, prepar'd to hear the truth.

## THOAS

For this unlook'd-for answer not prepar'd.  
 Yet 'twas to be expected; knew I not  
 That 'twas with woman I had now to deal?

## IPHIGENIA

Upbraid not thus, O king, our feeble sex!  
 Though not in dignity to match with yours,  
 The weapons woman wields are not ignoble.  
 And trust me, Thoas, in thy happiness  
 I have a deeper insight than thyself.  
 Thou thinkest, ignorant alike of both,  
 A closer union would augment our bliss;  
 Inspir'd with confidence and honest zeal  
 Thou strongly urgest me to yield consent;  
 And here I thank the gods, who give me strength  
 To shun a doom unratified by them.

## THOAS

'Tis not a god, 'tis thine own heart that speaks.

## IPHIGENIA

'Tis through the heart alone they speak to us.

## THOAS

To hear them have I not an equal right?

## IPHIGENIA

The raging tempest drowns the still, small voice.

## THOAS

This voice no doubt the priestess hears alone.

## IPHIGENIA

Before all others should the prince attend it.

## THOAS

Thy sacred office, and ancestral right  
 To Jove's own table, place thee with the gods  
 In closer union than an earth-born savage.

## IPHIGENIA

Thus must I now the confidence atone  
Thyself extorted from me!

## THOAS

I'm a man,  
And better 'tis we end this conference.  
Hear then my last resolve. Be priestess still  
Of the great goddess who selected thee;  
And may she pardon me, that I from her,  
Unjustly and with secret self-reproach,  
Her ancient sacrifice so long withheld.  
From olden times no stranger near'd our shore  
But fell a victim at her sacred shrine.  
But thou, with kind affection (which at times  
Seem'd like a gentle daughter's tender love,  
At times assum'd to my enraptur'd heart  
The modest inclination of a bride),  
Didst so intral me, as with magic bonds,  
That I forgot my duty. Thou didst rock  
My senses in a dream: I did not hear  
My people's murmurs: now they cry aloud,  
Ascribing my poor son's untimely death  
To this my guilt. No longer for thy sake  
Will I oppose the wishes of the crowd,  
Who urgently demand the sacrifice.

## IPHIGENIA

For mine own sake I ne'er desired it from thee.  
Who to the gods ascribe a thirst for blood  
Do misconceive their nature, and impute  
To them their own inhuman dark desires.  
Did not Diana snatch me from the priest,  
Preferring my poor service to my death?

## THOAS

'Tis not for us, on reason's shifting grounds,  
Lightly to guide and construe rites divine.  
Perform thy duty; I'll accomplish mine.  
Two strangers, whom in caverns of the shore

We found conceal'd, and whose arrival here  
 Bodes to my realm no good, are in my power.  
 With them thy goddess may once more resume  
 Her ancient, pious, long-suspended rites!  
 I send them here, — thy duty not unknown

[*Exit*

IPHIGENIA, *alone*

Gracious protectress! thou hast clouds  
 To shelter innocence distress'd,  
 And genial gales from Fate's rude grasp,  
 Safely to waft her o'er the sea,  
 O'er the wide earth's remotest realms,  
 Where'er it seemeth good to thee.  
 Wise art thou, — thine all-seeing eye  
 The future and the past surveys,  
 And doth on all thy children rest,  
 E'en as thy pure and guardian light  
 Keeps o'er the earth its silent watch,  
 The beauty and the life of night.  
 O Goddess! keep my hands from blood!  
 Blessing it never brings, nor peace;  
 And still in evil hours the form  
 Of the chance-murder'd man appears  
 To fill the unwilling murderer's soul  
 With horrible and gloomy fears.  
 For fondly the Immortals view  
 Man's widely-scatter'd, simple race;  
 And the poor mortal's transient life  
 Gladly prolong, that he may raise  
 Awhile to their eternal heavens  
 His sympathetic joyous gaze.

# ACT THE SECOND

## SCENE I

ORESTES.      PYLADES

ORESTES

It is the path of death that now we tread:  
 At every step my soul grows more serene.  
 When I implor'd Apollo to remove  
 The grisly band of Furies from my side,  
 He seem'd, with hope-inspiring, godlike words,  
 To promise aid and safety in the fane  
 Of his lov'd sister, who o'er Tauris rules.  
 Thus the prophetic word fulfils itself,  
 That with my life shall terminate my woe.  
 How easy 'tis for me, whose heart is crush'd,  
 Whose sense is deaden'd by a hand divine,  
 Thus to renounce the beauteous light of day!  
 And must the son of Atreus not entwine  
 The wreath of conquest round his dying brow —  
 Must I, as my forefathers, as my sire,  
 Bleed like a victim, — an ignoble death —  
 So be it! Better at the altar here,  
 Than in a nook obscure, where kindred hands  
 Have spread assassination's wily net.  
 Yield me this brief repose, infernal Powers!  
 Ye, who, like loosen'd hounds, still scent the blood,  
 Which, trickling from my feet, betrays my path.  
 Leave me! ere long I come to you below.  
 Nor you, nor I, should view the light of day.  
 The soft green carpet of the beauteous earth  
 Is no arena for unhallow'd fiends.  
 Below I seek you, where an equal fate  
 Binds all in murky, never-ending night.  
 Thee only, thee, my Pylades, my friend,  
 The guiltless partner of my crime and curse,  
 Thee am I loath, before thy time, to take  
 To yonder cheerless shore! Thy life or death  
 Alone awakens in me hope or fear.

## PYLADES

Like thee, Orestes, I am not prepar'd  
 Downwards to wander to yon realm of shade.  
 I purpose still, through the entangl'd paths,  
 Which seem as they would lead to blackest night,  
 Again to guide our upward way to life.  
 Of death I think not; I observe and mark  
 Whether the gods may not perchance present  
 Means and fit moment for a joyful flight.  
 Dreaded or not, the stroke of death must come;  
 And though the priestess stood with hand uprais'd,  
 Prepar'd to cut our consecrated locks,  
 Our safety still should be my only thought:  
 Uplift thy soul above this weak despair;  
 Desponding doubts but hasten on our peril.  
 Apollo pledg'd to us his sacred word,  
 That in his sister's holy fane for thee  
 Were comfort, aid, and glad return prepar'd.  
 The words of Heaven are not equivocal,  
 As in despair the poor oppress'd one thinks.

## ORESTES

The mystic web of life my mother spread  
 Around my infant head, and so I grew,  
 An image of my sire; and my mute look  
 Was aye a bitter and a keen reproof  
 To her and base Egisthus. Oh, how oft,  
 When silently within our gloomy hall  
 Electra sat, and mus'd beside the fire,  
 Have I with anguish'd spirit climb'd her knee,  
 And watch'd her bitter tears with sad amaze!  
 Then would she tell me of our noble sire:  
 How much I long'd to see him — be with him!  
 Myself at Troy one moment fondly wish'd,  
 My sire's return, the next. The day arrived —

## PYLADES

Oh, of that awful hour let fiends of hell  
 Hold nightly converse! Of a time more fair  
 May the remembrance animate our hearts

To fresh heroic deeds. The gods require  
 On this wide earth the service of the good,  
 To work their pleasure. Still they count on thee;  
 For in thy father's train they sent thee not,  
 When he to Orcus went unwilling down.

ORESTES

Would I had seiz'd the border of his robe,  
 And follow'd him!

PYLADES

They kindly car'd for me  
 Who here detain'd thee; for if thou hadst died  
 I know not what had then become of me;  
 Since I with thee, and for thy sake alone,  
 Have from my childhood liv'd, and wish to live.

ORESTES

Do not remind me of those tranquil days,  
 When me thy home a safe asylum gave;  
 With fond solicitude thy noble sire  
 The half-nipp'd, tender flow'ret gently rear'd;  
 While thou, a friend and playmate always gay,  
 Like to a light and brilliant butterfly  
 Around a dusky flower, didst around me  
 Still with new life thy merry gambols play,  
 And breathe thy joyous spirit in my soul,  
 Until, my cares forgetting, I with thee  
 Was lur'd to snatch the eager joys of youth.

PYLADES

My very life began when thee I lov'd.

ORESTES

Say, then thy woes began, and thou speak'st truly.  
 This is the sharpest sorrow of my lot,  
 That, like a plague-infected wretch, I bear  
 Death and destruction hid within my breast;  
 That, where I tread, e'en on the healthiest spot,  
 Ere long the blooming faces round betray  
 The writhing features of a ling'ring death.



## PYLADES

Were thy breath venom, I had been the first  
 To die that death, Orestes. Am I not,  
 As ever, full of courage and of joy?  
 And love and courage are the spirit's wings  
 Wafting to noble actions.

## ORESTES

Noble actions?

Time was, when fancy painted such before us!  
 When oft, the game pursuing, on we roam'd  
 O'er hill and valley; hoping that ere long  
 With club and weapon arm'd, we so might track  
 The robber to his den, or monster huge.  
 And then at twilight, by the glassy sea,  
 We peaceful sat, reclin'd against each other  
 The waves came dancing to our very feet,  
 And all before us lay the wide, wide world.  
 Then on a sudden one would seize his sword,  
 And future deeds shone round us like the stars,  
 Which gemm'd in countless throngs the vault of night.

## PYLADES

Endless, my friend, the projects which the soul  
 Burns to accomplish. We would every deed  
 At once perform as grandly as it shows  
 After long ages, when from land to land  
 The poet's swelling song hath roll'd it on.  
 It sounds so lovely what our fathers did,  
 When, in the silent evening shade reclin'd,  
 We drink it in with music's melting tones;  
 And what we do is, as their deeds to them,  
 Toilsome and incomplete!  
 Thus we pursue what always flies before;  
 We disregard the path in which we tread,  
 Scarce see around the footsteps of our sires,  
 Or heed the trace of their career on earth.  
 We ever hasten on to chase their shades,  
 Which godlike, at a distance far remote,  
 On golden clouds reclin'd, the mountains crown.

The man I prize not who esteems himself  
 Just as the people's breath may chance to raise him.  
 But thou, Orestes, to the gods give thanks,  
 That they have done so much through thee already.

ORESTES

When they ordain a man to noble deeds,  
 To shield from dire calamity his friends,  
 Extend his empire, or protect its bounds,  
 Or put to flight its ancient enemies,  
 Let him be grateful! For to him a god  
 Imparts the first, the sweetest joy of life.  
 Me have they doom'd to be a slaughterer,  
 To be an honour'd mother's murderer,  
 And shamefully a deed of shame avenging,  
 Me through their own decree they have o'erwhelm'd.  
 Trust me, the race of Tantalus is doom'd;  
 Nor may his last descendant leave the earth,  
 Or crown'd with honour or unstain'd by crime.

PYLADES

The gods avenge not on the son the deeds  
 Done by the father. Each, or good or bad,  
 Of his own actions reaps the due reward.  
 The parents' blessing, not their curse, descends.

ORESTES

Methinks their blessing did not lead us here.

PYLADES

It was at least the mighty gods' decree.

ORESTES

Then is it their decree which doth destroy us.

PYLADES

Perform what they command, and wait the event.  
 Do thou Apollo's sister bear from hence,  
 That they at Delphi may united dwell,

Rever'd and honour'd by a noble race:  
 Thee, for this deed, the heav'nly pair will view  
 With gracious eye, and from the hateful grasp  
 Of the infernal Powers will rescue thee.  
 E'en now none dares intrude within this grove.

ORESTES

So shall I die at least a peaceful death.

PYLADES

Far other are my thoughts, and not unskill'd  
 Have I the future and the past combin'd  
 In quiet meditation. Long, perchance,  
 Hath ripen'd in the counsel of the gods  
 The great event. Diana wish'd to leave  
 This savage region foul with human blood:  
 We were selected for the high emprise;  
 To us it is assign'd, and strangely thus  
 We are conducted to the threshold here.

ORESTES

My friend, with wondrous skill thou link'st thy wish  
 With the predestin'd purpose of the gods.

PYLADES

Of what avail is prudence, if it fail  
 Heedful to mark the purposes of Heaven?  
 A noble man, who much hath sinn'd, some god  
 Doth summon to a dangerous enterprise,  
 Which to achieve appears impossible.  
 The hero conquers, and atoning serves  
 Mortals and gods, who thenceforth honour him.

ORESTES

Am I foredoom'd to action and to life,  
 Would that a god from my distemper'd brain  
 Might chase this dizzy fever, which impels  
 My restless steps along a slipp'ry path,  
 Stain'd with a mother's blood, to direful death;  
 And pitying, dry the fountain, whence the blood,  
 For ever spouting from a mother's wounds,  
 Eternally defiles me!

## PYLADES

Wait in peace!

Thou dost increase the evil, and dost take  
The office of the Furies on thyself.  
Let me contrive, — be still! And when at length  
The time for action claims our powers combin'd,  
Then will I summon thee, and on we'll stride,  
With cautious boldness to achieve the event.

## ORESTES

I hear Ulysses speak!

## PYLADES

Nay, mock me not.

Each must select the hero after whom  
To climb the steep and difficult ascent  
Of high Olympus. And to me it seems  
That him nor stratagem nor art defile  
Who consecrates himself to noble deeds.

## ORESTES

I most esteem the brave and upright man.

## PYLADES

And therefore have I not desir'd thy counsel.  
One step is ta'en already: from our guards  
I have extorted this intelligence.  
A strange and godlike woman now restrains  
The execution of that bloody law:  
Incense, and prayer, and an unsullied heart,  
These are the gifts she offers to the gods.  
Her fame is widely spread, and it is thought  
That from the race of Amazon she springs,  
And hither fled some great calamity.

## ORESTES

Her gentle sway, it seems, lost all its power  
At the approach of one so criminal,  
Whom the dire curse enshrouds in gloomy night.  
Our doom to seal, the pious thirst for blood

Again unchains the ancient cruel rite:  
 The monarch's savage will decrees our death;  
 A woman cannot save when he condemns.

PYLADES

That 'tis a woman is a ground for hope!  
 A man, the very best, with cruelty  
 At length may so familiarize his mind,  
 His character through custom so transform,  
 That he shall come to make himself a law  
 Of what at first his very soul abhorr'd.  
 But woman doth retain the stamp of mind  
 She first assum'd. On her we may depend  
 In good or evil with more certainty.  
 She comes; leave us alone. I dare not tell  
 At once our names, nor unreserv'd confide  
 Our fortunes to her. Now retire awhile,  
 And ere she speaks with thee we'll meet again.

SCENE II

IPHIGENIA. PYLADES

IPHIGENIA

Whence art thou? Stranger, speak! To me thy bearing  
 Stamps thee of Grecian, not of Scythian race.

*(She unbinds his chains)*

The freedom that I give is dangerous:  
 The gods avert the doom that threatens you!

PYLADES

Delicious music! dearly welcome tones  
 Of our own language in a foreign land!  
 With joy my captive eye once more beholds  
 The azure mountains of my native coast.  
 Oh, let this joy that I too am a Greek  
 Convince thee, priestess! How I need thine aid,  
 A moment I forget, my spirit wrapt  
 In contemplation of so fair a vision.  
 If fate's dread mandate doth not seal thy lips,  
 From which of our illustrious races, say,  
 Dost thou thy godlike origin derive?

## IPHIGENIA

A priestess, by the Goddess' self ordain'd  
 And consecrated too, doth speak with thee.  
 Let that suffice: but tell me, who art thou,  
 And what unblest'd o'erruling destiny  
 Hath hither led thee with thy friend?

## PYLADES

The woe,

Whose hateful presence ever dogs our steps,  
 I can with ease relate. Oh, would that thou  
 Couldst with like ease, divine one, shed on us  
 One ray of cheering hope! We are from Crete,  
 Adrastus' sons, and I, the youngest born,  
 Named Cephalus; my eldest brother, he,  
 Laodamus. Between us two a youth  
 Of savage temper grew, who oft disturb'd  
 The joy and concord of our youthful sports.  
 Long as our father led his powers at Troy,  
 Passive our mother's mandate we obey'd;  
 But when, enrich'd with booty, he return'd,  
 And shortly after died, a contest fierce  
 For the succession and their father's wealth,  
 Parted the brothers. I the eldest joined;  
 He slew the second; and the Furies hence  
 For kindred murder dog his restless steps.  
 But to this savage shore the Delphian god  
 Hath sent us, cheer'd by hope, commanding us  
 Within his sister's temple to await  
 The blessed hand of aid. We have been ta'en,  
 Brought hither, and now stand for sacrifice.  
 My tale is told.

## IPHIGENIA

Tell me, is Troy o'erthrown?

Assure me of its fall.

## PYLADES

It lies in ruins.

But oh, ensure deliverance to us!  
 Hasten, I pray, the promis'd aid of heav'n.

Pity my brother, say a kindly word;  
 But I implore thee, spare him when thou speakest.  
 Too easily his inner mind is torn  
 By joy, or grief, or cruel memory.  
 A feverish madness oft doth seize on him,  
 Yielding his spirit, beautiful and free,  
 A prey to furies.

## IPHIGENIA

Great as is thy woe,  
 Forget it, I conjure thee, for a while,  
 Till I am satisfied.

## PYLADES

The stately town,  
 Which ten long years withstood the Grecian host,  
 Now lies in ruins, ne'er to rise again;  
 Yet many a hero's grave will oft recall  
 Our sad remembrance to that barbarous shore;  
 There lies Achilles and his noble friend.

## IPHIGENIA

And are ye, godlike forms, reduc'd to dust!

## PYLADES

Nor Palamede, nor Ajax, ere again  
 The daylight of their native land behold.

## IPHIGENIA

He speaks not of my father, doth not name  
 Him with the fallen. He may yet survive!  
 I may behold him! still hope on, my heart!

## PYLADES

Yet happy are the thousands who receiv'd  
 Their bitter death-blow from a hostile hand!  
 For terror wild, and end most tragical,  
 Some hostile, angry, deity prepar'd,  
 Instead of triumph, for the home-returning.  
 Do human voices never reach this shore?  
 Far as their sound extends, they bear the fame

Of deeds unparallel'd. And is the woe  
 Which fills Mycene's halls with ceaseless sighs  
 To thee a secret still? — And know'st thou not  
 That Clytemnestra, with Ægisthus' aid,  
 Her royal consort artfully ensnar'd,  
 And murder'd on the day of his return? —  
 The monarch's house thou honourest! I perceive  
 Thy heaving bosom vainly doth contend  
 With tidings fraught with such unlook'd-for woe.  
 Art thou the daughter of a friend? or born  
 Within the circuit of Mycene's walls?  
 Do not conceal it, nor avenge on me  
 That here the horrid crime I first announc'd.

IPHIGENIA

Proceed, and tell me how the deed was done.

PYLADES

The day of his return, as from the bath  
 Arose the monarch, tranquil and refresh'd,  
 His robe demanding from his consort's hand,  
 A tangl'd garment, complicate with folds,  
 She o'er his shoulders flung and noble head;  
 And when, as from a net, he vainly strove  
 To extricate himself, the traitor, base  
 Ægisthus, smote him, and envelop'd thus  
 Great Agamemnon sought the shades below,

IPHIGENIA

And what reward receiv'd the base accomplice?

PYLADES

A queen and kingdom he possess'd already.

IPHIGENIA

Base passion prompted, then, the deed of shame?

PYLADES

And feelings, cherish'd long, of deep revenge.



## IPHIGENIA

How had the monarch injured Clytemnestra?

## PYLADES

By such a dreadful deed, that if on earth  
 Aught could exculpate murder, it were this.  
 To Aulis he allur'd her, when the fleet  
 With unpropitious winds the goddess stay'd;  
 And there, a victim at Diana's shrine,  
 The monarch, for the welfare of the Greeks,  
 Her eldest daughter doom'd. And this, 'tis said,  
 Planted such deep abhorrence in her heart,  
 That to Ægisthus she resign'd herself,  
 And round her husband flung the web of death.

IPHIGENIA (*veiling herself*)

It is enough! Thou wilt again behold me.

PYLADES, *alone*

The fortune of this royal house, it seems,  
 Doth move her deeply. Whosoe'er she be,  
 She must herself have known the monarch well; —  
 For our good fortune, from a noble house.  
 She hath been sold to bondage. Peace, my heart!  
 And let us steer our course with prudent zeal  
 Toward the star of hope which gleams upon us.

# ACT THE THIRD

## SCENE I

IPHIGENIA. ORESTES

IPHIGENIA

Unhappy man, I only loose thy bonds  
In token of a still severer doom.  
The freedom which the sanctuary imparts,  
Like the last life-gleam o'er the dying face,  
But heralds death. I cannot, dare not say  
Your doom is hopeless; for, with murd'rous hand,  
Could I inflict the fatal blow myself?  
And while I here am priestess of Diana,  
None, be he who he may, dare touch your heads.  
But the incensed king, should I refuse  
Compliance with the rites himself enjoin'd,  
Will choose another virgin from my train  
As my successor. Then, alas! with nought,  
Save ardent wishes, can I succour you,  
Much honour'd countryman! The humblest slave,  
Who had but near'd our sacred household hearth,  
Is dearly welcome in a foreign land;  
How with proportion'd joy and blessing, then,  
Shall I receive the man who doth recall  
The image of the heroes, whom I learn'd  
To honour from my parents, and who cheers  
My inmost heart with flatt'ring gleams of hope!

ORESTES

Does prudent forethought prompt thee to conceal  
Thy name and race? or may I hope to know  
Who, like a heavenly vision, meets me thus?

IPHIGENIA

Yes, thou shalt know me. Now conclude the tale  
Of which thy brother only told me half:  
Relate their end, who coming home from Troy,  
On their own threshold met a doom severe

And most unlook'd for. I, though but a child  
 When first conducted hither, well recall  
 The timid glance of wonder which I cast  
 On those heroic forms. When they went forth,  
 It seem'd as though Olympus from her womb  
 Had cast the heroes of a by-gone world,  
 To frighten Ilion; and, above them all,  
 Great Agamemnon tower'd pre-eminent!  
 Oh tell me! Fell the hero in his home,  
 Through Clytemnestra's and Ægisthus' wiles?

ORESTES

He fell!

IPHIGENIA

Unblest Mycene! Thus the sons  
 Of Tantalus, with barbarous hands, have sown  
 Curse upon curse; and, as the shaken weed  
 Scatters around a thousand poison-seeds,  
 So they assassins ceaseless generate,  
 Their children's children ruthless to destroy. —  
 Now tell the remnant of thy brother's tale,  
 Which horror darkly hid from me before.  
 How did the last descendant of the race, —  
 The gentle child, to whom the Gods assign'd  
 The office of avenger, — how did he  
 Escape that day of blood? Did equal fate  
 Around Orestes throw Avernus' net?  
 Say, was he saved? and is he still alive?  
 And lives Electra, too?

ORESTES

They both survive.

IPHIGENIA

Golden Apollo, lend thy choicest beams!  
 Lay them an offering at the throne of Jove!  
 For I am poor and dumb.

ORESTES

If social bonds  
 Or ties more close connect thee with this house,

As this thy joy evinces, rein thy heart;  
 For insupportable the sudden plunge  
 From happiness to sorrow's gloomy depth.  
 As yet thou only know'st the hero's death.

IPHIGENIA

And is not this intelligence enough?

ORESTES

Half of the horror yet remains untold.

IPHIGENIA

Electra and Orestes both survive,  
 What have I then to fear?

ORESTES

And fear'st thou nought  
 For Clytemnestra?

IPHIGENIA

Her, nor hope nor fear  
 Have power to save.

ORESTES

She to the land of hope  
 Hath bid farewell.

IPHIGENIA

Did her repentant hand  
 Shed her own blood?

ORESTES

Not so; yet her own blood  
 Inflicted death.

IPHIGENIA

Speak less ambiguously.  
 Uncertainty around my anxious head  
 Her dusky, thousand-folded, pinion waves.

ORESTES

Have then the powers above selected me  
 To be the herald of a dreadful deed,

Which, in the drear and soundless realms of night,  
 I fain would hide for ever? 'Gainst my will  
 Thy gentle voice constrains me; it demands,  
 And shall receive, a tale of direst woe.  
 Electra, on the day when fell her sire,  
 Her brother from impending doom conceal'd;  
 Him Strophius, his father's relative,  
 With kindest care receiv'd, and rear'd the child  
 With his own son, named Pylades, who soon  
 Around the stranger twin'd the bonds of love.  
 And as they grew, within their inmost souls  
 There sprang the burning longing to revenge  
 The monarch's death. Unlook'd for, and disguis'd,  
 They reach Mycene, feigning to have brought  
 The mournful tidings of Orestes' death,  
 Together with his ashes. Them the queen  
 Gladly receives. Within the house they enter;  
 Orestes to Electra shows himself:  
 She fans the fires of vengeance into flame,  
 Which in the sacred presence of a mother  
 Had burn'd more dimly. Silently she leads  
 Her brother to the spot where fell their sire;  
 Where lurid blood-marks, on the oft-wash'd floor,  
 With pallid streaks, anticipate revenge.  
 With fiery eloquence she pictures forth  
 Each circumstance of that atrocious deed, —  
 Her own oppress'd and miserable life,  
 The prosperous traitor's insolent demeanour,  
 The perils threat'ning Agamemnon's race  
 From her who had become their stepmother;  
 Then in his hand the ancient dagger thrusts,  
 Which often in the house of Tantalus  
 With savage fury rag'd, — and by her son  
 Is Clytemnestra slain.

#### IPHIGENIA

Immortal powers!

Whose pure and blest existence glides away  
 'Mid ever shifting clouds, me have ye kept  
 So many years secluded from the world,  
 Retain'd me near yourselves, consign'd to me

The childlike task to feed the sacred fire,  
 And taught my spirit, like the hallow'd flame,  
 With never-clouded brightness to aspire  
 To your pure mansions, — but at length to feel  
 With keener woe the misery of my house?  
 Oh tell me of the poor unfortunate!  
 Speak of Orestes!

### ORESTES

Would that he were dead!  
 Forth from his mother's blood her ghost arose,  
 And to the ancient daughters of the night  
 Cries, — "Let him not escape, — the matricide!  
 Pursue the victim, dedicate to you!"  
 They hear, and glare around with hollow eyes,  
 Like greedy eagles. In their murky dens  
 They stir themselves, and from the corners creep  
 Their comrades, dire Remorse and pallid Fear;  
 Before them fumes a mist of Acheron;  
 Perplexingly around the murderer's brow  
 The eternal contemplation of the past  
 Rolls in its cloudy circles. Once again  
 The grisly band, commission'd to destroy,  
 Pollute earth's beautiful and heaven-sown fields,  
 From which an ancient curse had banish'd them.  
 Their rapid feet the fugitive pursue;  
 They only pause to start a wilder fear.

### IPHIGENIA

Unhappy one; thy lot resembles his,  
 Thou feel'st what he, poor fugitive, must suffer.

### ORESTES

What say'st thou? why presume my fate like his?

### IPHIGENIA

A brother's murder weighs upon thy soul;  
 Thy younger brother told the mournful tale.

### ORESTES

I cannot suffer that thy noble soul •

Should be deceiv'd by error. Rich in guile,  
 And practis'd in deceit, a stranger may  
 A web of falsehood cunningly devise  
 To snare a stranger; — between us be truth.  
 I am Orestes! and this guilty head  
 Is stooping to the tomb, and covets death;  
 It will be welcome now in any shape.  
 Whoe'er thou art, for thee and for my friend  
 I wish deliverance; — I desire it not.  
 Thou seem'st to linger here against thy will;  
 Contrive some means of flight, and leave me here:  
 My lifeless corpse hurl'd headlong from the rock,  
 My blood shall mingle with the dashing waves,  
 And bring a curse upon this barbarous shore!  
 Return together home to lovely Greece,  
 With joy a new existence to commence.

[ORESTES *retires*

#### IPHIGENIA

At length Fulfilment, fairest child of Jove,  
 Thou dost descend upon me from on high!  
 How vast thine image! scarce my straining eye  
 Can reach thy hands, which, fill'd with golden fruit  
 And wreaths of blessing, from Olympus' height  
 Shower treasures down. As by his bounteous gifts  
 We recognize the monarch (for what seems  
 To thousands opulence is nought to him),  
 So you, ye heavenly Powers, are also known  
 By bounty long withheld, and wisely plann'd.  
 Ye only know what things are good for us;  
 Ye view the future's wide-extended realm;  
 While from our eye a dim or starry veil  
 The prospect shrouds. Calmly ye hear our prayers,  
 When we like children sue for greater speed.  
 Not immature ye pluck heaven's golden fruit;  
 And woe to him, who with impatient hand,  
 His date of joy forestalling, gathers death.  
 Let not this long-awaited happiness,  
 Which yet my heart hath scarcely realiz'd,  
 Like to the shadow of departed friends,  
 Glide vainly by with triple sorrow fraught!

ORESTES, *returning*

Dost thou for Pylades and for thyself  
 Implore the gods, blend not my name with yours;  
 Thou wilt not save the wretch whom thou wouldst join,  
 But wilt participate his curse and woe.

IPHIGENIA

My destiny is firmly bound to thine.

ORESTES

No, say not so; alone and unattended  
 Let me descend to Hades. Though thou shouldst  
 In thine own veil enwrap the guilty one,  
 Thou couldst not shroud him from his wakeful foes;  
 And e'en thy sacred presence, heavenly maid,  
 Drives them aside, but scares them not away.  
 With brazen impious feet they dare not tread  
 Within the precincts of this sacred grove:  
 Yet in the distance, ever and anon,  
 I hear their horrid laughter, like the howl  
 Of famish'd wolves, beneath the tree wherein  
 The traveller hides. Without, encamp'd they lie,  
 And should I quit this consecrated grove,  
 Shaking their serpent locks, they would arise,  
 And, raising clouds of dust on every side,  
 Ceaseless pursue their miserable prey.

IPHIGENIA

Orestes, canst thou hear a friendly word?

ORESTES

Reserve it for one favour'd by the gods.

IPHIGENIA

To thee they give anew the light of hope.

ORESTES

Through clouds and smoke I see the feeble gleam  
 Of the death-stream which lights me down to hell.



## IPHIGENIA

Hast thou one sister only, thy Electra?

## ORESTES

I knew but one: yet her kind destiny,  
Which seem'd to us so terrible, betimes  
Removed an elder sister from the woe  
That dogs the race of Pelops. Cease, oh cease  
Thy questions, maiden, nor thus league thyself  
With the Eumenides, who blow away,  
With fiendish joy, the ashes from my soul,  
Lest the last spark of horror's fiery brand  
Should be extinguish'd there. Must then the fire,  
Deliberately kindl'd and supplied  
With hellish sulphur, never cease to sear  
My tortur'd bosom?

## IPHIGENIA

In the flame I throw

Sweet incense. Let the gentle breath of love,  
Low murmuring, cool thy bosom's fiery glow.  
Orestes, fondly lov'd, — canst thou not hear me?  
Hath the terrific Furies' grisly band  
Completely dried the lifeblood in thy veins?  
Creeps there, as from the Gorgon's direful head,  
A petrifying charm through all thy limbs?  
If hollow voices, from a mother's blood,  
Call thee to hell, may not a sister's word  
With benediction pure ascend to heaven,  
And summon thence some gracious power to aid thee?

## ORESTES

She calls! she calls! — Thou too desir'st my death?  
Is there a fury shrouded in thy form?  
Who art thou, that thy voice thus horribly  
Can harrow up my bosom's inmost depths?

## IPHIGENIA

Thine inmost heart reveals it. I am she, —  
Iphigenia, — look on me, Orestes!

## ORESTES

Thou!

## IPHIGENIA

My own brother!

## ORESTES

Hence, away, begone!

Touch not these locks, I counsel thee; from me,  
As from Creusa's bridal robe, proceeds  
An unextinguishable fire. Depart!  
Like Hercules, an ignominious death,  
Unworthy wretch, lock'd in myself, I'll die.

## IPHIGENIA

Thou shalt not perish! Would that I might hear  
One quiet word from thee! dispel my doubts,  
Make sure the bliss I have implor'd so long.  
A wheel of joy and sorrow in my heart  
Ceaseless revolves. With shy reserve I turn  
From one unknown; but unto thee, my brother,  
My inmost heart resistlessly impels me.

## ORESTES

Is this Lyæus' temple? Doth the glow  
Of holy rage unbridl'd thus possess  
The sacred priestess?

## IPHIGENIA

Hear me, oh, look up!

See how my heart, which hath been clos'd so long,  
Doth open to the bliss of seeing thee,  
The dearest treasure that the world contains, —  
Of falling on thy neck, and folding thee  
Within my longing arms, which have till now  
Met the embraces of the empty wind.  
Do not repulse me, — the eternal spring,  
Whose crystal waters from Parnassus flow,  
Bounds not more gaily on from rock to rock,  
Down to the golden vale, than from my heart  
The waters of affection freely gush,,

And round me form a circling sea of bliss.  
Orestes! Oh, my brother!

### ORESTES

Lovely nymph!  
Nor thy caresses, nor thyself I trust;  
Diana claims attendants more severe,  
And doth avenge her desecrated fane.  
Remove thy circling arm! and if thou wilt  
Safety and love upon a youth bestow,  
Unto my friend, more worthy than myself,  
Impart thy gifts; among yon rocks he roves;  
Go seek him, guide him hence, and heed not me.

### IPHIGENIA

Brother, command thyself, and better know  
Thy new-found sister, nor misconstrue thus  
Her pure and heav'nly joy. Ye Gods, remove  
From his fix'd eye delusion, lest this hour  
Of highest bliss should make us trebly wretched!  
Oh she is here, thine own, thy long-lost sister,  
Whom great Diana from the altar snatch'd,  
And safely plac'd here in her sacred fane.  
A captive thou, prepar'd for sacrifice,  
And findest here a sister in the priestess.

### ORESTES

Accursed race! Now may the sun behold  
Your final doom. Is not Electra here?  
That she with us may perish, nor her life  
For heavier doom and deeper woe reserve.  
'Tis well, — I follow, priestess! Fratricide  
Is an old custom of our ancient house;  
And you, ye Gods, I thank, that ye resolve  
Childless to root me hence. Thee let me counsel  
To view too fondly neither sun nor stars.  
Come follow to the gloomy realms below!  
As dragons, gender'd in the sulphur pool,  
Swallow each other with voracious rage,  
So our accurs'd race destroys itself.  
Childless and guiltless come below with me!

There's pity in thy look! oh, gaze not so, —  
 'Twas with such looks that Clytemnestra sought  
 An entrance to her son Orestes' heart,  
 And yet his uprais'd arm her bosom pierc'd.  
 His mother fell! — Appear, indignant shade!  
 Within the circle step, ye fiends of hell,  
 Be present at the welcome spectacle,  
 The last, most horrible, that ye prepare!  
 Nor hate, nor vengeance, whets the poignard now,  
 A sister is constrain'd to deal the blow.  
 Weep not! Thy guiltless soul is free from crime.  
 From earliest infancy I nought have lov'd,  
 As thee I could have lov'd, my sister. Come,  
 The weapon raise, spare not, this bosom rend,  
 And make an outlet for its boiling streams!  
(*He sinks exhausted*)

### IPHIGENIA

Alone I cannot bear this bliss and woe.  
 Where art thou, Pylades? Thine aid I need.  
(*Iphigenia retires*)

### SCENE II

#### ORESTES

*Recovering from his swoon and standing up*

Give yet another! reach from Lethe's stream  
 The last reviving draught of cool refreshment!  
 Soon shall its waters in my bosom still  
 Life's fitful fever; and my spirit then  
 Adown oblivion's stream shall glide to you,  
 Ye spirits, shrouded in eternal mist.  
 With tranquil pleasure in your deep repose  
 A weary son of earth may lave his soul! —  
 What whisp'ring sounds pervade the dreary grove?  
 What hollow murmurs haunt its twilight gloom? —  
 They gather round to view the stranger guest!  
 Who are yon troop in high communion met,  
 Like an assembl'd family of princes?  
 They mingle peacefully, of every age,  
 And either sex, yet are their godlike forms

Cast in a kindred mould. 'Tis they, 'tis they,  
 The fathers of my race! With Atreus,  
 In friendly converse glides Thyestes' shade,  
 And children playfully around them sport.  
 Is there no enmity among you now?  
 And is revenge extinguish'd with the sun?  
 I then am welcome, and may hope to join  
 Your solemn company. My fathers, hail!  
 Orestes, last descendant of your race,  
 Salutes you. What ye sow'd, that hath he reap'd  
 Laden with curses he descends to you.  
 But burdens here are lighter far to bear.  
 Receive him, oh, receive him in your circle!  
 Thee, Atreus, I revere, and thee, Thyestes:  
 Here all are free from enmity and hate. —  
 Show me my father, whom I only once  
 In life beheld. — Art thou my father, thou,  
 My mother leading thus familiarly?  
 Dares Clytemnestra reach her hand to thee;  
 Then may Orestes also draw near her,  
 And say, behold thy son! — My ancestors,  
 Behold your son, and bid him welcome here.  
 Among the sons of ancient Tantalus,  
 A kind salute on earth was murder's watchword,  
 And all their joys commence beyond the grave.  
 Ye welcome me! Ye bid me join your circle!  
 Oh, lead me to my honour'd ancestor!  
 Where is the aged hero? that I may  
 Behold the dear, the venerable head,  
 Of him, who with the gods in council sat.  
 You seem to shudder and to turn away?  
 What may this mean? Suffers the godlike man?  
 Alas! the mighty gods, with ruthless hate,  
 To his heroic breast, with brazen chains,  
 Have cruel pangs indissolubly bound.

### SCENE III

ORESTES. IPHIGENIA. PYLADES

ORESTES

How! are ye come already? Sister, welcome.  
 Electra still is missing; some kind god

With gentle arrow send her quickly hither.  
 Thee, my poor friend, I must compassionate!  
 Come with me, come to Pluto's gloomy throne,  
 There to salute our hosts like stranger guests.

### IPHIGENIA

Celestial pair, who from the realms above  
 By night and day shed down the beauteous light  
 To cheer mankind, but who may not illumine  
 Departed spirits, save a mortal pair!  
 A brother's and a sister's anguish pity!  
 For thou, Diana, lov'st thy gentle brother  
 Beyond what earth and heaven can offer thee;  
 And dost, with quiet yearning, ever turn  
 Thy virgin face to his eternal light.  
 Let not my only brother, found so late,  
 Rave in the darkness of insanity!  
 And is thy will, when thou didst here conceal me,  
 At length fulfill'd, — would'st thou to me through him,  
 To him through me, thy gracious aid extend, —  
 Oh, free him from the fetters of this curse,  
 Lest vainly pass the precious hours of safety.

### PYLADES

Dost thou not know us, and this sacred grove,  
 And this blest light, which shines not on the dead?  
 Dost thou not feel thy sister and thy friend,  
 Who hold thee living in their firm embrace?  
 Grasp us! we are not shadows. Mark my words!  
 Collect thyself, — each moment now is precious,  
 And our return hangs on a slender thread,  
 Which, as it seems, some gracious fate doth spin.

### ORESTES to IPHIGENIA

My sister, let me for the first time taste,  
 With open heart, pure joy within thine arms!  
 Ye gods, who charge the heavy clouds with dread,  
 And sternly gracious send the long-sought rain  
 With thunder and the rush of mighty winds,  
 A horrid deluge on the trembling earth;  
 Yet dissipate at length man's dread suspense,

Exchanging timid wonder's anxious gaze  
 For grateful looks and joyous songs of praise,  
 When in each sparkling drop which gems the leaves,  
 Apollo, thousand-fold, reflects his beam,  
 And Iris colours with a magic hand  
 The dusky texture of the parting clouds;  
 Oh, let me also in my sister's arms,  
 And on the bosom of my friend, enjoy  
 With grateful thanks the bliss ye now bestow!  
 My heart assures me that your curses cease.  
 The dread Eumenides at length retire,  
 The brazen gates of Tartarus I hear  
 Behind them closing with a thund'ring clang.  
 A quick'ning odour from the earth ascends,  
 Inviting me to chase, upon its plains,  
 The joys of life and deeds of high emprise.

#### PYLADES

Lose not the moments which are limited!  
 The favouring gale, which swells our parting sail,  
 Must to Olympus waft our perfect joy.  
 Quick counsel and resolve the time demands.

# ACT THE FOURTH

## SCENE I

### IPHIGENIA

When the Powers on high decree  
 For a feeble child of earth  
 Dire perplexity and woe,  
 And his spirit doom to pass  
 With tumult wild from joy to grief,  
 And back again from grief to joy,  
 In fearful alternation;  
 They in mercy then provide,  
 In the precincts of his home,  
 Or upon the distant shore,  
 That to him may never fail  
 Ready help in hours of need,  
 A tranquil, faithful friend.  
 Oh, bless, ye heavenly powers, our Pylades,  
 And every project that his mind may form!  
 In combat his the vigorous arm of youth,  
 And in the counsel his the eye of age.  
 His soul is tranquil; in his inner mind  
 He guards a sacred, undisturb'd repose,  
 And from its silent depths a rich supply  
 Of aid and counsel draws for the distress'd.  
 He tore me from my brother, upon whom,  
 With fond amaze, I gaz'd and gaz'd again;  
 I could not realize my happiness,  
 Nor loose him from my arms, and heeded not  
 The danger's near approach that threatens us.  
 To execute their project of escape,  
 They hasten to the sea, where in a bay  
 Their comrades in the vessel lie conceal'd  
 And wait a signal. Me they have supplied  
 With artful answers, should the monarch send  
 To urge the sacrifice. Alas! I see  
 I must consent to follow like a child.  
 I have not learn'd deception, nor the art



To gain with crafty wiles my purposes.  
 Detested falsehood! it doth not relieve  
 The breast like words of truth: it comforts not,  
 But is a torment in the forger's heart,  
 And, like an arrow which a god directs,  
 Flies back and wounds the archer. Through my heart  
 One fear doth chase another; perhaps with rage,  
 Again on the unconsecrated shore,  
 The Furies' grisly band my brother seize.  
 Perchance they are surpris'd? Methinks I hear  
 The tread of armed men. A messenger  
 Is coming from the king, with hasty steps.  
 How throbs my heart, how troubl'd is my soul,  
 Now that I see the countenance of one,  
 Whom with a word untrue I must encounter!

## SCENE II

IPHIGENIA.            ARKAS

ARKAS

Priestess, with speed conclude the sacrifice!  
 Impatiently the king and people wait.

IPHIGENIA

I had perform'd my duty and thy will,  
 Had not an unforeseen impediment  
 The execution of my purpose thwarted.

ARKAS

What is it that obstructs the king's commands?

IPHIGENIA

Chance, which from mortals will not brook control

ARKAS

Possess me with the reason, that with speed  
 I may inform the king, who hath decreed  
 The death of both.

## IPHIGENIA

The gods have not decreed it.  
 The elder of these men doth bear the guilt  
 Of kindred murder; on his steps attend  
 The dread Eumenides. They seiz'd their prey  
 Within the inner fane, polluting thus  
 The holy sanctuary. I hasten now,  
 Together with my virgin-train, to bathe  
 Diana's image in the sea, and there  
 With solemn rites its purity restore.  
 Let none presume our silent march to follow!

## ARKAS

This hindrance to the monarch I'll announce:  
 Do not commence the rite till he permit.

## IPHIGENIA

The priestess interferes alone in this.

## ARKAS

An incident so strange the king should know.

## IPHIGENIA

Here, nor his counsel nor command avails.

## ARKAS

Oft are the great consulted out of form.

## IPHIGENIA

Do not insist on what I must refuse.

## ARKAS

A needful and a just demand refuse not.

## IPHIGENIA

I yield, if thou delay not.

## ARKAS

I with speed  
 Will bear these tidings to the camp, and soon

Acquaint thee, priestess, with the king's reply.  
 There is a message I would gladly bear him;  
 'Twould quickly banish all perplexity:  
 Thou didst not heed thy faithful friend's advice.

IPHIGENIA

I willingly have done whate'er I could.

ARKAS

E'en now 'tis not too late to change thy mind.

IPHIGENIA

To do so is, alas, beyond our power.

ARKAS

What thou wouldst shun, thou deem'st impossible.

IPHIGENIA

Thy wish doth make thee deem it possible.

ARKAS

Wilt thou so calmly venture everything?

IPHIGENIA

My fate I have committed to the gods.

ARKAS

The gods are wont to save by human means.

IPHIGENIA

By their appointment everything is done.

ARKAS

Believe me, all doth now depend on thee.  
 The irritated temper of the king  
 Alone condemns these men to bitter death.  
 The soldiers from the cruel sacrifice  
 And bloody service long have been disused;  
 Nay, many, whom their adverse fortunes cast  
 In foreign regions, there themselves have felt

How godlike to the exil'd wanderer  
 The friendly countenance of man appears.  
 Do not deprive us of thy gentle aid!  
 With ease thou canst thy sacred task fulfil:  
 For nowhere doth benignity, which comes  
 In human form from heaven, so quickly gain  
 An empire o'er the heart, as where a race,  
 Gloomy and savage, full of life and power,  
 Without external guidance, and oppress'd  
 With vague forebodings, bear life's heavy load.

## IPHIGENIA

Shake not my spirit, which thou canst not bend  
 According to thy will.

## ARKAS

While there is time,  
 Nor labour nor persuasion shall be spar'd.

## IPHIGENIA

Thy labour but occasions pain to me;  
 Both are in vain; therefore, I pray, depart.

## ARKAS

I summon pain to aid me, 'tis a friend  
 Who counsels wisely.

## IPHIGENIA

Though it shakes my soul,  
 It doth not banish thence my strong repugnance.

## ARKAS

Can then a gentle soul repugnance feel  
 For benefits bestow'd by one so noble?

## IPHIGENIA

Yes, when the donor, for those benefits,  
 Instead of gratitude, demands myself.

## ARKAS

Who no affection feels doth never want.

Excuses. To the king I'll now relate  
 All that has happen'd. Oh, that in thy soul  
 Thou wouldst revolve his noble conduct, priestess,  
 Since thy arrival to the present day!

### SCENE III

IPHIGENIA, *alone*

These words at an unseasonable hour  
 Produce a strong revulsion in my breast;  
 I am alarm'd! — For as the rushing tide  
 In rapid currents eddies o'er the rocks  
 Which lie among the sand upon the shore;  
 E'en so a stream of joy o'erwhelm'd my soul.  
 I grasp'd what had appear'd impossible.  
 It was as though another gentle cloud  
 Around me lay, to raise me from the earth,  
 And rock my spirit in the same sweet sleep  
 Which the kind goddess shed around my brow,  
 What time her circling arm from danger snatch'd me.  
 My brother forcibly engross'd my heart;  
 I listen'd only to his friend's advice;  
 My soul rush'd eagerly to rescue them,  
 And as the mariner with joy surveys  
 The less'ning breakers of a desert isle,  
 So Tauris lay behind me. But the voice  
 Of faithful Arkas wakes me from my dream,  
 Reminding me that those whom I forsake  
 Are also men. Deceit doth now become  
 Doubly detested. O my soul, be still!  
 Beginn'st thou now to tremble and to doubt?  
 Thy lonely shelter on the firm-set earth  
 Must thou abandon? and, embark'd once more,  
 At random drift upon tumultuous waves,  
 A stranger to thyself and to the world?

### SCENE IV

IPHIGENIA.      PYLADES

PYLADES

Where is she? that my words with speed may tell

The joyful tidings of our near escape!

IPHIGENIA

Oppress'd with gloomy care, I much require  
The certain comfort thou dost promise me.

PYLADES

Thy brother is restor'd! The rocky paths  
Of this unconsecrated shore we trod  
In friendly converse, while behind us lay,  
Unmark'd by us, the consecrated grove;  
And ever with increasing glory shone  
The fire of youth around his noble brow.  
Courage and hope his glowing eye inspir'd;  
And his free heart exulted with the joy  
Of saving thee, his sister, and his friend.

IPHIGENIA

The gods shower blessings on thee, Pylades!  
And from those lips which breathe such welcome news,  
Be the sad note of anguish never heard!

PYLADES

I bring yet more, — for Fortune, like a prince,  
Comes not alone, but well accompanied.  
Our friends and comrades we have also found.  
Within a bay they had conceal'd the ship,  
And mournful sat expectant. They beheld  
Thy brother, and a joyous shout uprais'd,  
Imploring him to haste the parting hour.  
Each hand impatient long'd to grasp the oar,  
While from the shore a gently murmuring breeze,  
Perceiv'd by all, unfurl'd its wing auspicious.  
Let us then hasten; guide me to the fane,  
That I may tread the sanctuary, and seize  
With sacred awe the object of our hopes.  
I can unaided on my shoulder bear  
Diana's image: how I long to feel  
The precious burden!

*[While speaking the last words, he approaches the Temple, without perceiving that he is not followed by Iphigenia: at length he turns round]*

Why thus ling'ring stand?  
 Why art thou silent? wherefore thus confus'd?  
 Doth some new obstacle oppose our bliss?  
 Inform me, hast thou to the king announc'd  
 The prudent message we agreed upon?

#### IPHIGENIA

I have, dear Pylades; yet wilt thou chide.  
 Thy very aspect is a mute reproach.  
 The royal messenger arriv'd, and I,  
 According to thy counsel, fram'd my speech.  
 He seem'd surpris'd, and urgently besought,  
 That to the monarch I should first announce  
 The rite unusual, and attend his will.  
 I now await the messenger's return.

#### PYLADES

Danger again doth hover o'er our heads!  
 O priestess, why neglect to shroud thyself  
 Within the veil of sacerdotal rites?

#### IPHIGENIA

I never have employ'd them as a veil.

#### PYLADES

Pure soul! thy scruples will destroy alike  
 Thyself and us. Why did I not foresee  
 Such an emergency, and tutor thee  
 This counsel also wisely to elude?

#### IPHIGENIA

Chide only me, for mine alone the blame  
 Yet other answer could I not return  
 To him, who strongly and with reason urg'd  
 What my own heart acknowledg'd to be right.

## PYLADES

The danger thickens; but let us be firm,  
 Nor with incautious haste betray ourselves;  
 Calmly await the messenger's return,  
 And then stand fast, whatever his reply:  
 For the appointment of such sacred rites  
 Doth to the priestess, not the king belong.  
 Should he demand the stranger to behold,  
 Who is by madness heavily oppress'd,  
 Evasively pretend, that in the fane,  
 Securely guarded, thou retain'st us both.  
 Thus you secure us time to fly with speed,  
 Bearing the sacred treasure from this race,  
 Unworthy its possession. Phœbus sends  
 Auspicious omens, and fulfils his word,  
 Ere we the first conditions have perform'd.  
 Free is Orestes, from the curse absolv'd!  
 Oh, with the freed one, to the rocky isle  
 Where dwells the god, waft us, propitious gales!  
 Thence to Mycene, that she may revive;  
 That from the ashes of the extinguish'd hearth,  
 The household gods may joyously arise,  
 And beauteous fire illumine their abode!  
 Thy hand from golden censers first shall strew  
 The fragrant incense. O'er that threshold thou  
 Shalt life and blessing once again dispense,  
 The curse atone, and all thy kindred grace  
 With the fresh bloom of renovated life.

## IPHIGENIA

As doth the flower revolve to meet the sun,  
 Once more my spirit to sweet comfort turns,  
 Struck by thy words' invigorating ray.  
 How dear the counsel of a present friend,  
 Lacking whose godlike power, the lonely one  
 In silence droops! for, lock'd within his breast,  
 Slowly are ripen'd purpose and resolve,  
 Which friendship's genial warmth had soon matur'd.



## PYLADES

Farewell! I haste to re-assure our friends,  
 Who anxiously await us: then with speed  
 I will return, and, hid within the brake,  
 Attend thy signal. — Wherefore, all at once,  
 Doth anxious thought o'ercloud thy brow serene?

## IPHIGENIA

Forgive me! As light clouds athwart the sun,  
 So cares and fears float darkling o'er my soul.

## PYLADES

Oh, banish fear! With danger it hath form'd  
 A close alliance, — they are constant friends.

## IPHIGENIA

It is an honest scruple, which forbids  
 That I should cunningly deceive the king,  
 And plunder him who was my second sire.

## PYLADES

Him thou dost fly, who would have slain thy brother.

## IPHIGENIA

To me, at least, he hath been ever kind.

## PYLADES

What Fate commands is not ingratitude.

## IPHIGENIA

Alas! it still remains ingratitude;  
 Necessity alone can justify it.

## PYLADES

Thee, before gods and men it justifies.

## IPHIGENIA

But my own heart is still unsatisfied.

## PYLADES

Scruples too rigid are a cloak for pride.

## IPHIGENIA

I cannot argue, I can only feel.

## PYLADES

Conscious of right, thou shouldst respect thyself.

## IPHIGENIA

Then only doth the heart know perfect ease,  
When not a stain pollutes it.

## PYLADES

In this fane

Pure hast thou kept thy heart. Life teaches us  
To be less strict with others and ourselves;  
Thou'lt learn the lesson too. So wonderful  
Is human nature, and its varied ties  
Are so involv'd and complicate, that none  
May hope to keep his inmost spirit pure,  
And walk without perplexity through life.  
Nor are we call'd upon to judge ourselves;  
With circumspection to pursue his path,  
Is the immediate duty of a man.  
For seldom can he rightly estimate,  
Or his past conduct or his present deeds.

## IPHIGENIA

Almost thou dost persuade me to consent.

## PYLADES

Needs there persuasion when no choice is granted?  
To save thyself, thy brother, and a friend,  
One path presents itself and canst thou ask  
If we shall follow it?

## IPHIGENIA

Still let me pause,  
For such injustice thou couldst not thyself

Calmly return for benefits receiv'd.

PYLADES

If we should perish, bitter self-reproach,  
Forerunner of despair, will be thy portion.  
It seems thou art not used to suffer much,  
When, to escape so great calamity,  
Thou canst refuse to utter one false word.

IPHIGENIA

Oh, that I bore within a manly heart!  
Which, when it hath conceiv'd a bold resolve,  
'Gainst every other voice doth close itself.

PYLADES

In vain thou dost refuse; with iron hand  
Necessity commands; her stern decree  
Is law supreme, to which the gods themselves  
Must yield submission. In dread silence rules  
The uncounsell'd sister of eternal fate.  
What she appoints thee to endure, — endure;  
What to perform, — perform. The rest thou know'st.  
Ere long I will return, and then receive  
The seal of safety from thy sacred hand.

SCENE V

IPHIGENIA, *alone*

I must obey him, for I see my friends  
Beset with peril. Yet my own sad fate  
Doth with increasing anguish move my heart.  
May I no longer feed the silent hope  
Which in my solitude I fondly cherish'd?  
Shall the dire curse eternally endure?  
And shall our fated race ne'er rise again  
With blessings crown'd? — All mortal things decay!  
The noblest powers, the purest joys of life  
At length subside: then wherefore not the curse?  
And have I vainly hop'd that, guarded here,  
Secluded from the fortunes of my race,  
I, with pure heart and hands, some future day

Might cleanse the deep defilement of our house?  
 Scarce was my brother in my circling arms  
 From raging madness suddenly restor'd,  
 Scarce had the ship, long pray'd for, near'd the strand,  
 Once more to waft me to my native shores,  
 When unrelenting fate, with iron hand,  
 A double crime enjoins; commanding me  
 To steal the image, sacred and rever'd,  
 Confided to my care, and him deceive  
 To whom I owe my life and destiny.  
 Let not abhorrence spring within my heart!  
 Nor the old Titan's hate, toward you, ye gods,  
 Infix its vulture talons in my breast!  
 Save me, and save your image in my soul!  
 An ancient song comes back upon mine ear —  
 I had forgotten it, and willingly —  
 The Parcæ's song, which horribly they sang,  
 What time, hurl'd headlong from his golden seat,  
 Fell Tantalus. They with their noble friend  
 Keen anguish suffer'd; savage was their breast  
 And horrible their song. In days gone by,  
 When we were children, oft our ancient nurse  
 Would sing it to us, and I mark'd it well.  
 Oh, fear the immortals,  
 Ye children of men!  
 Eternal dominion  
 They hold in their hands,  
 And o'er their wide empire  
 Wield absolute sway.  
 Whom they have exalted  
 Let him fear them most!  
 Around golden tables,  
 On cliffs and clouds resting  
 The seats are prepar'd.  
 If contest ariseth;  
 The guests are hurl'd headlong,  
 Disgrac'd and dishonour'd,  
 And fetter'd in darkness,  
 Await with vain longing,  
 A juster decree.  
 But in feasts everlasting,

Around the gold tables  
Still dwell the immortals.  
From mountain to mountain  
They stride; while ascending  
From fathomless chasms,  
The breath of the Titans,  
Half stif'd with anguish,  
Like volumes of incense  
Fumes up to the skies.  
From races ill-fated,  
Their aspect joy-bringing,  
Oft turn the celestials,  
And shun in the children  
To gaze on the features  
Once lov'd and still speaking  
Of their mighty sire.

Thus sternly the Fates sang;  
Immur'd in his dungeon,  
The banish'd one listens,  
The song of the Parcæ,  
His children's doom ponders,  
And boweth his head.

# ACT THE FIFTH

## SCENE I

THOAS. ARKAS

ARKAS

I own I am perplex'd, and scarcely know  
 'Gainst whom to point the shaft of my suspicion,  
 Whether the priestess aids the captives' flight,  
 Or they themselves clandestinely contrive it.  
 'Tis rumour'd that the ship which brought them here  
 Is lurking somewhere in a bay conceal'd.  
 This stranger's madness, these new lustral rites,  
 The specious pretext for delay, excite  
 Mistrust, and call aloud for vigilance.

THOAS

Summon the priestess to attend me here!  
 Then go with speed, and strictly search the shore,  
 From yon projecting land to Dian's grove:  
 Forbear to violate its sacred depths;  
 A watchful ambush set, attack and seize,  
 According to your wont, whome'er ye find.

[*Arkas retires*]

## SCENE II

THOAS, *alone*

Fierce anger rages in my riven breast,  
 First against her, whom I esteem'd so pure;  
 Then 'gainst myself, whose foolish lenity  
 Hath fashion'd her for treason. Man is soon  
 Inur'd to slavery, and quickly learns  
 Submission, when of freedom quite depriv'd.  
 If she had fallen in the savage hands  
 Of my rude sires, and had their holy rage  
 Forborne to slay her, grateful for her life;

She would have recogniz'd her destiny,  
 Have shed before the shrine the stranger's blood,  
 And duty nam'd what was necessity.  
 Now my forbearance in her breast allures  
 Audacious wishes. Vainly I had hop'd  
 To bind her to me; rather she contrives  
 To shape an independent destiny.  
 She won my heart through flattery; and now  
 That I oppose her, seeks to gain her ends  
 By fraud and cunning, and my kindness deems  
 A worthless and prescriptive property.

## SCENE III

IPHIGENIA.

THOAS

IPHIGENIA

Me hast thou summon'd? wherefore art thou here?

THOAS

Wherefore delay the sacrifice? inform me.

IPHIGENIA

I have acquainted Arkas with the reasons.

THOAS

From thee I wish to hear them more at large.

IPHIGENIA

The goddess for reflection grants thee time.

THOAS

To thee this time seems also opportune.

IPHIGENIA

If to this cruel deed thy heart is steel'd,  
 Thou shouldst not come! A king who meditates  
 A deed inhuman, may find slaves enow,  
 Willing for hire to bear one half the curse,  
 And leave the monarch's presence undefil'd.  
 Enwrapt in gloomy clouds he forges death,

Whose flaming arrow on his victim's head  
His hirelings hurl; while he above the storm  
Remains untroubl'd, an impassive god.

THOAS

A wild song, priestess, issued from thy lips.

IPHIGENIA

No priestess, king! but Agamemnon's daughter;  
While yet unknown, thou didst respect my words:  
A princess now, — and think'st thou to command me?  
From youth I have been tutor'd to obey,  
My parents first, and then the deity;  
And thus obeying, ever hath my soul  
Known sweetest freedom. But nor then nor now  
Have I been taught compliance with the voice  
And savage mandates of a man.

THOAS

Not I,

An ancient law doth claim obedience from thee.

IPHIGENIA

Our passions eagerly catch hold of laws  
Which they can wield as weapons. But to me  
Another law, one far more ancient, speaks,  
And doth command me to withstand thee, king!  
That law declaring sacred every stranger.

THOAS

These men, methinks, lie very near thy heart,  
When sympathy with them can lead thee thus  
To violate discretion's primal law,  
That those in power should never be provok'd.

IPHIGENIA

Speaking or silent, thou canst always know  
What is, and ever must be, in my heart.  
Doth not remembrance of a common doom,  
To soft compassion melt the hardest heart?  
How much more mine! in them I see myself.



I trembling kneel'd before the altar once,  
 And solemnly the shade of early death  
 Environ'd me. Aloft the knife was rais'd  
 To pierce my bosom, throbbing with warm life;  
 A dizzy horror overwhelm'd my soul;  
 My eyes grew dim; — I found myself in safety.  
 Are we not bound to render the distress'd  
 The gracious kindness from the gods received?  
 Thou know'st we are, and yet wilt thou compel me?

THOAS

Obeys thine office, priestess, not the king.

IPHIGENIA

Cease! nor thus seek to cloak the savage force  
 Which triumphs o'er a woman's feebleness.  
 Though woman, I am born as free as man.  
 Did Agamemnon's son before thee stand,  
 And thou requiredst what became him not,  
 His arm and trusty weapon would defend  
 His bosom's freedom. I have only words;  
 But it becomes a noble-minded man  
 To treat with due respect the words of woman.

THOAS

I more respect them than a brother's sword.

IPHIGENIA

Uncertain ever is the chance of arms,  
 No prudent warrior doth despise his foe;  
 Nor yet defenceless 'gainst severity  
 Hath nature left the weak; she gives him craft  
 And wily cunning; artful he delays,  
 Evades, eludes, and finally escapes.  
 Such arms are justified by violence.

THOAS

But circumspection countervails deceit.

IPHIGENIA

Which a pure spirit doth abhor to use.

## THOAS

Do not incautiously condemn thyself.

## IPHIGENIA

Oh, couldst thou see the struggle of my soul,  
 Courageously to ward the first attack  
 Of an unhappy doom, which threatens me!  
 Do I then stand before thee weaponless?  
 Prayer, lovely prayer, fair branch in woman's hand,  
 More potent far than instruments of war,  
 Thou dost thrust back. What now remains for me  
 Wherewith my inborn freedom to defend?  
 Must I implore a miracle from heaven?  
 Is there no power within my spirit's depths?

## THOAS

Extravagant thy interest in the fate  
 Of these two strangers. Tell me who they are,  
 For whom thy heart is thus so deeply mov'd.

## IPHIGENIA

They are — they seem at least — I think them Greeks.

## THOAS

Thy countrymen; no doubt they have renew'd  
 The pleasing picture of return.

IPHIGENIA, *after a pause*

Doth man

Lay undisputed claim to noble deeds?  
 Doth he alone to his heroic breast  
 Clasp the impossible? What call we great?  
 What deeds, though oft narrated, still uplift  
 With shudd'ring horror the narrator's soul,  
 But those which, with improbable success,  
 The valiant have attempted? Shall the man  
 Who all alone steals on his foes by night,  
 And raging like an unexpected fire,  
 Destroys the slumbering host, and press'd at length  
 By rous'd opponents or his foemen's steeds,

Retreats with booty — be alone extoll'd?  
 Or he who, scorning safety, boldly roams  
 Through woods and dreary wilds, to scour the land  
 Of thieves and robbers? Is nought left for us?  
 Must gentle woman quite forego her nature,  
 Force against force employ, — like Amazons,  
 Usurp the sword from man, and bloodily  
 Revenge oppression? In my heart I feel  
 The stirrings of a noble enterprise;  
 But if I fail — severe reproach, alas!  
 And bitter misery will be my doom.  
 Thus on my knees I supplicate the gods.  
 Oh, are ye truthful, as men say ye are,  
 Now prove it by your countenance and aid;  
 Honour the truth in me! Attend, O king!  
 A secret plot is laid; 'tis vain to ask  
 Touching the captives; they are gone, and seek  
 Their comrades who await them on the shore.  
 The eldest, — he whom madness lately seiz'd,  
 And who is now recover'd, — is Orestes,  
 My brother, and the other Pylades,  
 His early friend and faithful confidant.  
 From Delphi, Phœbus sent them to this shore  
 With a divine command to steal away  
 The image of Diana, and to him  
 Bear back the sister, promising for this  
 Redemption to the blood-stain'd matricide.  
 I have deliver'd now into thy hands  
 The remnants of the house of Tantalus.  
 Destroy us — if thou canst.

#### THOAS

And dost thou think  
 The savage Scythian will attend the voice  
 Of truth and of humanity, unheard  
 By the Greek Atreus?

#### IPHIGENIA

'Tis heard by all,  
 Whate'er may be their clime, within whose breast  
 Flows pure and free the gushing stream of life. —

What silent purpose broods within thy soul?  
 Is it destruction? Let me perish first!  
 For now, deliv'rance hopeless, I perceive  
 The dreadful peril into which I have  
 With rash precipitancy plung'd my friends.  
 Alas! I soon shall see them bound before me!  
 How to my brother shall I say farewell?  
 I, the unhappy author of his death.  
 Ne'er can I gaze again in his dear eyes!

#### THOAS

The traitors have contriv'd a cunning web,  
 And cast it round thee, who, secluded long,  
 Giv'st willing credence to thine own desires.

#### IPHIGENIA

No, no! I'd pledge my life these men are true.  
 And shouldst thou find them otherwise, O king,  
 Then let them perish both, and cast me forth,  
 That on some rock-girt island's dreary shore  
 I may atone my folly. Are they true,  
 And is this man indeed my dear Orestes,  
 My brother, long implor'd, — release us both,  
 And o'er us stretch the kind protecting arm,  
 Which long hath shelter'd me. My noble sire  
 Fell through his consort's guilt, — she by her son;  
 On him alone the hope of Atreus' race  
 Doth now repose. Oh, with pure heart and hands  
 Let me depart to expiate our house.  
 Yes, thou wilt keep thy promise; thou didst swear,  
 That were a safe return provided me,  
 I should be free to go. The hour is come.  
 A king doth never grant like common men,  
 Merely to gain a respite from petition;  
 Nor promise what he hopes will ne'er be claim'd.  
 Then first he feels his dignity complete  
 When he can make the long-expecting happy.

#### THOAS

As fire opposes water, and doth seek  
 With hissing rage to overcome its foe,  
 So doth my anger strive against thy words.

## IPHIGENIA

Let mercy, like the consecrated flame  
Of silent sacrifice, encircl'd round  
With songs of gratitude, and joy, and praise,  
Above the tumult gently rise to heaven.

## THOAS

How often hath this voice assuag'd my soul!

## IPHIGENIA

Extend thy hand to me in sign of peace.

## THOAS

Large thy demand within so short a time.

## IPHIGENIA

Beneficence doth no reflection need.

## THOAS

'Tis needed oft, for evil springs from good.

## IPHIGENIA

'Tis doubt which good doth oft to evil turn.  
Consider not: act as thy feelings prompt thee.

## SCENE IV

ORESTES (*armed*). IPHIGENIA. THOAS

ORESTES, *addressing his followers*

Redouble your exertions! hold them back!  
Few moments will suffice; retain your ground,  
And keep a passage open to the ship  
For me and for my sister.

*To IPHIGENIA, without perceiving* THOAS

Come with speed!

We are betray'd, — brief time remains for flight.

## THOAS

None in my presence with impunity  
His naked weapon wears.

## IPHIGENIA

Do not profane  
Diana's sanctuary with rage and blood.  
Command your people to forbear awhile,  
And listen to the priestess, to the sister.

## ORESTES

Say, who is he that threatens us?

## IPHIGENIA

In him  
Revere the king, who was my second father.  
Forgive me, brother, that my childlike heart  
Hath plac'd our fate thus wholly in his hands.  
I have betray'd your meditated flight,  
And thus from treachery redeem'd my soul.

## ORESTES

Will he permit our peaceable return?

## IPHIGENIA

Thy gleaming sword forbids me to reply.

ORESTES, *sheathing his sword*

Then speak! thou seest I listen to thy words.

## SCENE V

ORESTES.      IPHIGENIA.      THOAS

*Enter PYLADES, soon after him ARKAS, both with drawn swords*

## PYLADES

Do not delay! our friends are putting forth  
Their final strength, and yielding step by step,  
Are slowly driven backward to the sea. —  
A conference of princes find I here?  
Is this the sacred person of the king?

## ARKAS

Calmly, as doth become thee, thou dost stand,  
O king, surrounded by thine enemies.

Soon their temerity shall be chastis'd;  
 Their yielding followers fly, — their ship is ours.  
 Speak but the word, and it is wrapt in flames.

THOAS

Go, and command my people to forbear!  
 Let none annoy the foe while we confer *(Arkas retires)*

ORESTES

I willingly consent. Go, Pylades!  
 Collect the remnant of our friends, and wait  
 The appointed issue of our enterprise.  
*(Pylades retires)*

SCENE VI

IPHIGENIA.    THOAS.    ORESTES

IPHIGENIA

Relieve my cares ere ye begin to speak.  
 I fear contention, if thou wilt not hear  
 The voice of equity, O king, — if thou  
 Wilt not, my brother, curb thy headstrong youth.

THOAS

I, as becomes the elder, check my rage.  
 Now answer me: how dost thou prove thyself  
 The priestess' brother, Agamemnon's son?

ORESTES

Behold the sword with which the hero slew  
 The valiant Trojans. From his murderer  
 I took the weapon, and implor'd the Gods  
 To grant me Agamemnon's mighty arm,  
 Success, and valour, with a death more noble.  
 Select one of the leaders of thy host,  
 And place the best as my opponent here.  
 Where'er on earth the sons of heroes dwell,  
 This boon is to the stranger ne'er refus'd.

## THOAS

This privilege hath ancient custom here  
To strangers ne'er accorded.

## ORESTES

Then from us  
Commence the novel custom! A whole race  
In imitation soon will consecrate  
Its monarch's noble action into law.  
Nor let me only for our liberty, —  
Let me, a stranger, for all strangers fight.  
If I should fall, my doom be also theirs;  
But if kind fortune crown me with success,  
Let none e'er tread this shore, and fail to meet  
The beaming eye of sympathy and love,  
Or unconsol'd depart!

## THOAS

Thou dost not seem  
Unworthy of thy boasted ancestry.  
Great is the number of the valiant men  
Who wait upon me; but I will myself,  
Although advanc'd in years, oppose the foe,  
And am prepar'd to try the chance of arms.

## IPHIGENIA

No, no! such bloody proofs are not requir'd.  
Unhand thy weapon, king! my lot consider;  
Rash combat oft immortalizes man;  
If he should fall, he is renown'd in song;  
But after ages reckon not the tears  
Which ceaseless the forsaken woman sheds;  
And poets tell not of the thousand nights  
Consum'd in weeping, and the dreary days,  
Wherein her anguish'd soul, a prey to grief,  
Doth vainly yearn to call her lov'd one back.  
Fear warn'd me to beware lest robber's wiles  
Might lure me from this sanctuary, and then  
Betray me into bondage. Anxiously  
I question'd them, each circumstance explor'd,



Demanded signs, and now my heart's assur'd.  
 See here, the mark as of three stars impress'd  
 On his right hand, which on his natal day  
 Were by the priest declar'd to indicate  
 Some dreadful deed by him to be perform'd.  
 And then this scar, which doth his eyebrow cleave,  
 Redoubles my conviction. When a child,  
 Electra, rash and inconsiderate,  
 Such was her nature, loos'd him from her arms.  
 He fell against a tripos. Oh, 'tis he! —  
 Shall I adduce the likeness to his sire,  
 Or the deep rapture of my inmost heart,  
 In further token of assurance, king?

#### THOAS

E'en though thy words had banish'd every doubt,  
 And I had curb'd the anger in my breast,  
 Still must our arms decide. I see no peace.  
 Their purpose, as thou didst thyself confess,  
 Was to deprive me of Diana's image.  
 And think ye that I'll look contented on?  
 The Greeks are wont to cast a longing eye  
 Upon the treasures of barbarians,  
 A golden fleece, good steeds, or daughters fair;  
 But force and guile not always have avail'd  
 To lead them, with their booty, safely home.

#### ORESTES

The image shall not be a cause of strife!  
 We now perceive the error which the God,  
 Our journey here commanding, like a veil,  
 Threw o'er our minds. His counsel I implor'd,  
 To free me from the Furies' grisly band.  
 He answer'd, "Back to Greece the sister bring,  
 Who in the sanctuary on Tauris' shore  
 Unwillingly abides; so ends the curse!"  
 To Phœbus' sister we applied the words,  
 And he referr'd to thee! The bonds severe,  
 Which held thee from us, holy one, are rent,  
 And thou art ours once more. At thy blest touch,  
 I felt myself restor'd. Within thine arms,

Madness once more around me coil'd its folds,  
 Crushing the marrow in my frame, and then  
 For ever, like a serpent, fled to hell. ‘ ‘  
 Through thee, the daylight gladdens me anew.  
 The counsel of the Goddess now shines forth  
 In all its beauty and beneficence.  
 Like to a sacred image, unto which  
 An oracle immutably hath bound  
 A city's welfare, thee Diana took,  
 Protectress of our house, and guarded here  
 Within this holy stillness, to become  
 A blessing to thy brother and thy race.  
 Now when each passage to escape seems clos'd,  
 And safety hopeless, thou dost give us all.  
 O king, incline thine heart to thoughts of peace!  
 Let her fulfil her mission, and complete  
 The consecration of our father's house,  
 Me to their purified abode restore,  
 And place upon my brow the ancient crown!  
 Requite the blessing which her presence brought thee,  
 And let me now my nearer right enjoy!  
 Cunning and force, the proudest boast of man,  
 Fade in the lustre of her perfect truth;  
 Nor unrequited will a noble mind  
 Leave confidence, so childlike and so pure.

#### IPHIGENIA

Think on thy promise; let thy heart be mov'd  
 By what a true and honest tongue hath spoken!  
 Look on us, king! an opportunity  
 For such a noble deed not oft occurs.  
 Refuse thou canst not, — give thy quick consent.

#### THOAS

Then go!

#### IPHIGENIA

Not so, my king! I cannot part  
 Without thy blessing, or in anger from thee.  
 Banish us not! the sacred right of guests  
 Still let us claim: so not eternally  
 Shall we be sever'd. Honour'd and belov'd

As mine own father was, art thou by me:  
 And this impression in my soul remains.  
 Should e'en the meanest peasant of thy land  
 Bring to my ear the tones I heard from thee  
 Or should I on the humblest see thy garb,  
 I will with joy receive him as a god,  
 Prepare his couch myself, beside our hearth  
 Invite him to a seat, and only ask  
 Touching thy fate and thee. Oh, may the gods  
 To thee the merited reward impart  
 Of all thy kindness and benignity!  
 Farewell! Oh, do not turn away, but give  
 One kindly word of parting in return!  
 So shall the wind more gently swell our sails,  
 And from our eyes with soften'd anguish flow  
 The tears of separation. Fare thee well!  
 And graciously extend to me thy hand,  
 In pledge of ancient friendship.

THOAS, *extending his hand*

Fare thee well!

# TORQUATO TASSO

## PERSONS OF THE DRAMA

ALPHONSO II., *Duke of Ferrara*

LEONORA D'ESTE, *Sister to the Duke*

LEONORA SANVITALE, *Countess of Scandiano*

TORQUATO TASSO

ANTONIO MONTECATINO, *Secretary of State*

## ACT THE FIRST

### SCENE I

*A Garden adorned with busts of the Epic Poets. To the right, a bust of Virgil; to the left, one of Ariosto*

PRINCESS *and* LEONORA, *habited as shepherdesses*

#### PRINCESS

Smiling thou dost survey me, Leonora,  
Then with a smile thou dost survey thyself.  
What is it? Let a friend partake thy thought!  
Thou seemest pensive, yet thou seemest pleased.

#### LEONORA

Yes, princess, I am pleas'd to see us both  
In rural garb thus tastefully attir'd.  
Two happy shepherd maidens we appear,  
And our employment speaks our happiness;  
Garlands we wreath. This one, so gay with flowers,  
Beneath my hand in varied beauty grows;  
Whilst thou, with loftier taste and larger heart,  
Hast of the pliant laurel made thy choice.

#### PRINCESS

The laurel wreath, which aimlessly I twin'd,  
Hath found at once a not unworthy head;

I place it gratefully on Virgil's brow.

*(She crowns the bust of Virgil)*

### LEONORA

With my full joyous wreath I crown the brow  
Of Ludovico, of the tuneful lyre —

*(She crowns the bust of Ariosto)*

Let him whose sportive sallies never fade,  
Receive his tribute from the early spring.

### PRINCESS

My brother is most kind, to bring us here  
In this sweet season to our rural haunts;  
Here, by the hour, in freedom unrestrain'd,  
We may dream back the poet's golden age.  
I love this Belriguardo; in my youth  
Full many a joyous day I linger'd here,  
And this bright sunshine, and this verdant green,  
Bring back the feeling of that by-gone time.

### LEONORA

Yes, a new world surrounds us! Grateful now  
The cooling shelter of these evergreens.  
The tuneful murmur of this gurgling spring  
Once more revives us. In the morning wind  
The tender branches waver to and fro.  
The flowers look upwards from their lowly beds,  
And smile upon us with their childlike eyes.  
The gard'ner, fearless grown, removes the roof  
That screened his citron and his orange-trees;  
The azure dome of heaven above us rests;  
And, in the far horizon, from the hills  
The snow in balmy vapour melts away.

### PRINCESS

Most dearly welcome were the spring to me,  
Did it not rob me of my much lov'd friend.

### LEONORA

My princess, in these sweet and tranquil hours,

Remind me not how soon I must depart.

PRINCESS

Yon mighty city will restore to thee,  
In double measure, what thou leavest here.

LEONORA

Duty and love both call me to my lord,  
Forsaken long. I bring to him his son,  
Whose mind and form have rapidly matur'd  
Since last they met, — I share his father's joy.  
Florence is great and noble, but the worth  
Of all her treasur'd riches doth not reach  
The prouder jewels that Ferrara boasts.  
That city to her people owes her power;  
Ferrara grew to greatness through her princes.

PRINCESS

More through the noble men whom chance led here,  
And who, in sweet communion, here remain'd.

LEONORA

Chance doth again disperse what chance collects;  
A noble nature can alone attract  
The noble, and retain them, as ye do.  
Around thy brother, and around thyself,  
Assemble spirits worthy of you both,  
And ye are worthy of your noble sires.  
Here the fair light of science and free thought  
Was kindled first, while o'er the darken'd world  
Still hung barbarian gloom. E'en when a child  
The names resounded loudly in mine ear,  
Of Hercules and Hypolite of Este.  
My father oft with Florence and with Rome  
Extoll'd Ferrara! Oft in youthful dream  
Hither I fondly turn'd, and now am here.  
Here was Petrarca kindly entertain'd,  
And Ariosto found his models here.  
Italia boasts no great, no mighty name,  
This princely mansion hath not call'd its guest.  
In fost'ring genius we enrich ourselves;

Dost thou present her with a friendly gift,  
 One far more beautiful she leaves with thee.  
 The ground is hallow'd where the good man treads;  
 When centuries have roll'd, his sons shall hear  
 The deathless echo of his words and deeds.

PRINCESS

Yes, if those sons have feelings quick as thine.  
 This happiness full oft I envy thee.

LEONORA

Which purely and serenely thou, my friend.  
 As few beside thee, dost thyself enjoy.  
 When my full heart impels me to express  
 Promptly and freely what I keenly feel,  
 Thou feel'st the while more deeply, and — art silent.  
 Delusive splendour doth not dazzle thee,  
 Nor wit beguile; and flatt'ry strives in vain  
 With fawning artifice to win thine ear;  
 Firm is thy temper, and correct thy taste,  
 Thy judgment just, and, truly great thyself,  
 With greatness thou dost ever sympathize.

PRINCESS

Thou shouldst not to this high wrought flatt'ry lend  
 Confiding friendship's consecrated garb.

LEONORA

Friendship is just; she only estimates  
 The full extent and measure of thy worth.  
 And though we give to fortune and to chance  
 Their portion in thy culture, — still 'tis thine,  
 And all extol thy sister and thyself  
 Before the noblest women of the age.

PRINCESS

That can but little move me, Leonora,  
 When I reflect how poor at best we are,  
 To others more indebted than ourselves.  
 My knowledge of the ancient languages,  
 And of the treasures by the past bequeath'd,

I owe my mother, who, in varied lore  
 And mental power, her daughters far excell'd.  
 Might either claim comparison with her,  
 'Tis undeniably Lucretia's right.  
 Besides, what nature and what chance bestow'd  
 As property or rank I ne'er esteem'd.  
 'Tis pleasure to me when the wise converse,  
 That I their scope and meaning comprehend;  
 Whether they judge a man of by-gone times  
 And weigh his actions, or of science treat,  
 Which, when extended and applied to life,  
 At once exalts and benefits mankind.  
 Where'er the converse of such men may lead,  
 I follow gladly, for with ease I follow.  
 Well pleas'd the strife of argument I hear,  
 When, round the powers that sway the human breast,  
 Waking alternately delight and fear,  
 With grace the lip of eloquence doth play;  
 And listen gladly when the princely thirst  
 Of fame, of wide dominion, forms the theme,  
 When of an able man, the thought profound,  
 Develop'd skilfully with subtle tact,  
 Doth not perplex and dazzle, but instruct.

#### LEONORA

And then, this grave and serious converse o'er,  
 Our ear and inner mind with tranquil joy  
 Upon the poet's tuneful verse repose,  
 Who through the medium of harmonious sounds  
 Infuses sweet emotions in the soul.  
 Thy lofty spirit grasps a wide domain;  
 Content am I to linger in the isle  
 Of poesy, her laurel groves among.

#### PRINCESS

In this fair land, I'm told, the myrtle blooms  
 In richer beauty than all other trees;  
 Here, too, the muses wander, yet we seek  
 A friend and playmate 'mong their tuneful choir  
 Less often than we seek to meet the bard,  
 Who seems to shun us, nay, appears to flee,



In quest of something that we know not of,  
 And which perchance is to himself unknown.  
 How charming were it, if in happy hour  
 Encountering us, he should with ecstasy  
 In our fair selves the treasure recognize,  
 Which in the world he long had sought in vain!

#### LEONORA

To your light raillery I must submit,  
 So light its touch it passeth harmless by.  
 I honour all men after their desert,  
 And am in truth toward Tasso only just.  
 His eye scarce lingers on this earthly scene,  
 To nature's harmony his ear is tuned.  
 What hist'ry offers, and what life presents,  
 His bosom promptly and with joy receives.  
 The widely scatter'd is by him combined,  
 And his quick feeling animates the dead.  
 Oft he ennobles what we count for nought;  
 What others treasure is by him despis'd.  
 Thus moving in his own enchanted sphere,  
 The wondrous man doth still allure us on  
 To wander with him and partake his joy;  
 Though seeming to approach us, he remains  
 Remote as ever, and perchance his eye,  
 Resting on us, sees spirits in our place.

#### PRINCESS

Thou hast with taste and truth portray'd the bard,  
 Who hovers in the shadowy realm of dreams.  
 And yet reality, it seems to me,  
 Hath also power to lure him and enchain.  
 In the sweet sonnets, scatter'd here and there,  
 With which we sometimes find our trees adorn'd,  
 Creating like the golden fruit of old  
 A new Hesperia, perceiv'st thou not  
 The gentle tokens of a genuine love?

#### LEONORA

In these fair leaves I also take delight.  
 With all his rich diversity of thought

He glorifies one form in all his strains.  
 Now he exalts her to the starry heavens  
 In radiant glory, and before that form  
 Bows down, like angels in the realms above.  
 Then stealing after her through silent fields,  
 He garlands in his wreath each beauteous flower;  
 And should the form he worships disappear,  
 Hallows the path her gentle foot hath trod.  
 Thus like the nightingale, conceal'd in shade,  
 From his love-laden breast he fills the air  
 And neighbouring thickets with melodious plaint:  
 His blissful sadness and his tuneful grief  
 Charm every ear, enrapture every heart.

#### PRINCESS

And Leonora is the favour'd name  
 Selected for the object of his strains.

#### LEONORA

Thy name it is, my princess, as 'tis mine.  
 It would displease me were it otherwise.  
 Now I rejoice that under this disguise  
 He can conceal his sentiments for thee,  
 And am no less content that to his thought  
 This sweet harmonious name should picture me.  
 Here is no question of an ardent love,  
 Seeking possession, and with jealous care  
 Screening its object from another's gaze.  
 While he enraptur'd contemplates thy worth  
 He in my lighter nature may rejoice.  
 He loves not us, — forgive me what I say, —  
 His lov'd ideal from the spheres he brings,  
 And doth invest it with the name we bear;  
 His feeling we participate; we seem  
 To love the man, yet only love in him  
 The highest object that can claim our love.

#### PRINCESS

In this deep science thou art deeply vers'd,  
 My Leonora, and thy words in truth  
 Play on my ear, yet scarcely reach my soul.

## LEONORA

Thou, Plato's pupil! and not comprehend  
 What a mere novice dares to prattle to thee?  
 It must be then that I have widely err'd;  
 Yet well I know I do not wholly err.  
 For love doth in this graceful school appear  
 No longer as the spoilt and wayward child;  
 He is the youth whom Psyche hath espous'd;  
 Who sits in council with the assembl'd Gods.  
 He hath relinquish'd passion's fickle sway,  
 He clings no longer with delusion sweet  
 To outward form and beauty, to atone  
 For brief excitement by disgust and hate.

## PRINCESS

Here comes my brother! let us not betray  
 Whither our converse hath conducted us;  
 Else we shall have his raillery to bear  
 As in our dress he found a theme for jest.

## SCENE II

PRINCESS. LEONORA ALPHONSO

## ALPHONSO

Tasso I seek, but nowhere can I find him;  
 And even here, with you, I meet him not.  
 Can you inform me where he hides himself?

## PRINCESS

I have scarce seen him for the last two days.

## ALPHONSO

'Tis his habitual failing that he seeks  
 Seclusion rather than society.  
 I can forgive him when the motley crowd  
 He shuns thus studiously, and loves to hold  
 Free converse with himself in solitude;  
 But I cannot approve, that thus he flies  
 The circle of his more immediate friends.

## LEONORA

If I mistake not, thou wilt soon, O Prince,  
 Convert this censure into joyful praise.  
 To-day I saw him from afar; he held  
 A book and scroll, in which at times he wrote,  
 And then resum'd his walk, then wrote again.  
 A passing word, which yesterday he spoke,  
 Seem'd to announce to me his work complete;  
 His sole anxiety is now to add  
 A finish'd beauty to minuter parts,  
 That to your grace, to whom he owes so much,  
 A not unworthy offering he may bring.

## ALPHONSO

A welcome, when he brings it, shall be his,  
 And long immunity from all restraint.  
 Great, in proportion to the lively joy  
 And interest which his noble work inspires,  
 Is my impatience at its long delay.  
 After each slow advance he leaves his task;  
 He ever changeth, and can ne'er conclude,  
 Till baffled hope is weary; for we see  
 Reluctantly postpon'd to times remote  
 A pleasure we had fondly deem'd so near.

## PRINCESS

I rather praise the modesty, the care  
 With which thus, step by step, he nears the goal.  
 His aim is not to string amusing tales,  
 Or weave harmonious numbers, which at length,  
 Like words delusive, die upon the ear.  
 His numerous rhymes he labours to combine  
 Into one beautiful, poetic, whole;  
 And he whose soul this lofty aim inspires,  
 Must pay devoted homage to the muse.  
 Disturb him not, my brother, time alone  
 Is not the measure of a noble work;  
 And, is the coming age to share our joy,  
 We of the present must forget ourselves.

## ALPHONSO

Let us, dear sister, work together here,  
 As for our mutual good we oft have done.  
 Am I too eager — thou must then restrain;  
 Art thou too gentle — I will urge him on.  
 Then we perchance shall see him at the goal,  
 Where to behold him we have wish'd in vain.  
 His father-land, the world, shall then admire  
 And view with wonder his completed work.  
 I shall receive my portion of the fame,  
 And Tasso will be usher'd into life.  
 In a contracted sphere, a noble man  
 Cannot develope all his mental powers.  
 On him his country and the world must work.  
 He must endure both censure and applause,  
 Must be compell'd to estimate aright  
 Himself and others. Solitude no more  
 Lulls him delusively with flatt'ring dreams.  
 Opponents will not, friendship dare not, spare.  
 Then in the strife the youth puts forth his powers,  
 Knows what he is, and feels himself a man.

## LEONORA

Thus, Prince, will he owe everything to thee,  
 Who hast already done so much for him.  
 Talents are nurtured best in solitude, —  
 But character on life's tempestuous sea.  
 Oh that according to thy rules he would  
 Model his temper as he forms his taste,  
 Cease to avoid mankind, nor in his breast  
 Nurture suspicion into fear and hate!

## ALPHONSO

He only fears mankind who knows them not,  
 And he will soon misjudge them who avoids.  
 This is the case with him, till gradually,  
 His noble mind is trammell'd and perplex'd.  
 Thus to secure my favour he betrays,  
 At times, unseemly ardour; against some  
 Who, I am well assur'd, are not his foes,

He cherishes suspicion; if by chance  
 A letter go astray, a hireling leave  
 His service, or a paper be mislaid,  
 He sees deception, treachery, and fraud  
 Working insidiously to sap his peace.

### PRINCESS

Let us, beloved brother, not forget  
 That his own nature none can lay aside.  
 But should a lov'd companion wound his foot,  
 We would relax our speed, and lend our hand  
 Gently to aid the sufferer on his way.

### ALPHONSO

Better it were to remedy his pain,  
 With the physician's aid attempt a cure,  
 Then with our heal'd and renovated friend  
 A new career of life with joy pursue.  
 And yet, dear friends, I hope that I may ne'er  
 Incur the censure of the cruel leech.  
 I do my utmost to impress his mind  
 With feelings of security and trust.  
 Oft purposely in presence of the crowd,  
 With marks of favour I distinguish him.  
 Should he complain of aught, I sift it well,  
 As lately when his chamber he suppos'd  
 Had been invaded; then, should nought appear,  
 I calmly show him how I view the affair.  
 And, as we ought to practise every grace —  
 With Tasso, seeing he deserves it well,  
 I practise patience; you I'm sure will aid.  
 I now have brought you to your rural haunts,  
 And must myself at eve return to town.  
 For a few moments you will see Antonio;  
 He calls here for me on his way from Rome.  
 We have important business to discuss,  
 Resolves to frame, and letters to indite,  
 All which compels me to return to town.

### PRINCESS

Wilt thou permit that we return with thee?

## ALPHONSO

Nay, rather linger here in Belriguardo,  
Or go together to Consandoli;  
Enjoy these lovely days as fancy prompts.

## PRINCESS

Thou canst not stay with us? Not here arrange  
All these affairs as well as in the town?

## LEONORA

So soon, thou takest hence Antonio, too,  
Who has so much to tell us about Rome.

## ALPHONSO

It must be so, but we will soon return;  
Then he shall tell you all you wish to hear,  
And you shall aid me to reward the man  
Who, in my cause, hath labour'd with such zeal.  
And having talk'd our fill, the crowd may come,  
That mirth and joy may revel in our groves,  
And that some beauteous form, as is but meet,  
May, should I thither turn, frequent the shade.

## LEONORA

And we meanwhile will kindly shut our eyes.

## ALPHONSO

Such kindness you know well I too can show.

PRINCESS, (*turned towards the scene*)

I long have notic'd Tasso from afar.  
This way he slowly doth direct his steps;  
At times he pauses suddenly; anon,  
As if irresolute, retires in haste,  
And then again stands still.

## ALPHONSO

Disturb him not,  
Nor when the poet dreams and versifies  
Intrude upon his musings, — let him roam.

## LEONORA

No, he has seen us, and he comes this way.

## SCENE III

PRINCESS. LEONORA. ALPHONSO

TASSO, *with a volume bound in parchment*

## TASSO

Slowly I come to bring my work to thee,  
And yet I linger ere presenting it.  
Although apparently it seem complete,  
Too well I know it is unfinish'd still.  
But, if I cherish'd once an anxious fear  
Lest I should bring thee an imperfect work,  
A new solicitude constrains me now.  
I would not seem ungrateful, nor appear  
Unduly anxious; and, as to his friends,  
A man can say but simply, "Here I am,"  
That they, with kind forbearance, may rejoice;  
So I can only say, — Receive my work!

*[He presents the volume]*

## ALPHONSO

Thou hast surpris'd me, Tasso, with thy gift,  
And made this lovely day a festival.  
I hold it then at length within my hands,  
And in a certain sense can call it mine.  
Long have I wish'd that thou couldst thus resolve,  
And say at length " 'Tis finish'd! here it is."

## TASSO

Are you contented? then it is complete;  
For it belongs to you in every sense.  
Were I to contemplate the pains bestow'd,  
Or dwell upon the written character,  
I might, perchance, exclaim, — This work is mine.  
But when I mark what 'tis that to my song,  
Its inner worth and dignity imparts,



I humbly feel I owe it all to you.  
 If nature from her liberal stores on me  
 The genial gift of poesy bestow'd,  
 Capricious fortune, with malignant power  
 Had thrust me from her; though this beauteous world  
 With all its varied splendour lur'd the boy,  
 Too early was his youthful eye bedimm'd  
 By his lov'd parents' undeserved distress.  
 Forth from my lips when I essay'd to sing,  
 There ever flow'd a melancholy song,  
 And I accompanied, with plaintive tones,  
 My father's sorrow and my mother's grief.  
 'Twas thou alone, who from this narrow sphere  
 Rais'd me to glorious liberty, reliev'd  
 From each depressing care my youthful mind,  
 And gave me freedom, in whose genial air  
 My spirit could unfold in harmony.  
 Then whatsoe'er the merit of the work,  
 Thine be the praise, for it belongs to thee.

#### ALPHONSO

A second time thou dost deserve applause,  
 And honour'st modestly thyself and us.

#### TASSO

Fain would I say how sensibly I feel  
 That what I bring is all derived from thee!  
 The inexperienc'd youth — could he produce  
 The poem from his own unfurnish'd mind?  
 Could he invent the conduct of the war?  
 The gallant bearing and the martial skill  
 Which every hero on the field display'd,  
 The leader's prudence, and his followers' zeal,  
 How vigilance the arts of cunning foil'd, —  
 Hast thou not, valiant Prince, infus'd it all,  
 As if my guardian genius thou hadst been,  
 Through a mere mortal, deigning to reveal  
 His nature high and inaccessible?

#### PRINCESS

Enjoy the work in which we all rejoice!

## ALPHONSO

Enjoy the approbation of the good! "

## LEONORA

Rejoice too in thy universal fame!

## TASSO

This single moment is enough for me.  
 Of you alone I thought while I compos'd:  
 Your pleasure was my first, my dearest wish,  
 And your approval was my highest aim.  
 Who does not in his friends behold the world,  
 Deserves not that the world should hear of him,  
 Here is my fatherland, and here the sphere  
 In which my spirit fondly loves to dwell:  
 Here I attend and value every hint;  
 Here speak experience, knowledge, and true taste;  
 Here stand the present and the future age.  
 With shy reserve the poet shuns the crowd, —  
 Its judgment but perplexes. Those alone  
 With minds like yours can understand and feel,  
 And such alone should censure and reward.

## ALPHONSO

If thus the present and the future age  
 We represent, it is not meet that we  
 Receive the poet's song unrecompens'd.  
 The laurel-wreath, fit chaplet for the bard,  
 Which e'en the hero, who requires his verse,  
 Sees without envy round his temples twin'd,  
 Adorns, thou seest, thy predecessor's brow.

*[Pointing to the bust of Virgil]*

Hath chance, hath some kind genius twin'd the wreath,  
 And brought it hither? Not in vain it thus  
 Presents itself: Virgil I hear exclaim,  
 "Wherefore confer this honour on the dead?  
 They in their lifetime had reward and joy;  
 Do ye indeed revere the bards of old?  
 Then to the living bard accord his due."

My marble statue has been amply crown'd,  
And the green laurel branch belongs to life."

*[Alphonso makes a sign to his sister; she takes the crown from  
the bust of Virgil, and approaches Tasso: he steps back*

LEONORA

Thou dost refuse? Seest thou what hand the wreath,  
The fair, the never-fading wreath, presents!

TASSO

Oh let me pause; I scarce can comprehend  
How I can live after an hour like this.

ALPHONSO

Live in enjoyment of the high reward,  
From which thy inexperience shrinks with fear.

PRINCESS, *raising the crown*

Thou dost afford me, Tasso, the rare joy  
Of giving silent utterance to my thought.

TASSO

The beauteous burden from thy honour'd hands,  
On my weak head, thus kneeling, I receive.

*[He kneels down; the Princess places the crown  
upon his head*

LEONORA, *applauding*

Long live the poet, for the first time crown'd!  
How well the crown adorns the modest man!

*[Tasso rises*

ALPHONSO

It is an emblem only of that crown  
Which shall adorn thee on the Capitol.

PRINCESS

There louder voices will salute thine ear;  
Friendship with lower tones rewards thee here.

## TASSO

Take it, oh take it quickly, from my brow!  
 Pray thee remove it! It doth scorch my locks;  
 And like a sunbeam, that with fervid heat  
 Falls on my forehead, burns up in my brain  
 The power of thought; while fever's fiery glow  
 Impels my blood. Forgive! it is too much.

## LEONORA

This garland rather doth protect the head  
 Of him who treads the burning realm of fame,  
 And with its grateful shelter cools his brow.

## TASSO

I am not worthy to receive its shade,  
 Which only round the hero's brow should wave.  
 Ye gods, exalt it high among the clouds,  
 To float in glory inaccessible,  
 That, through eternity, my life may be  
 An endless striving to attain this goal!

## ALPHONSO

He who in youth acquires life's noblest gifts,  
 Learns early to esteem their priceless worth;  
 He who in youth enjoys, resigneth not  
 Without reluctance what he once possess'd;  
 And he who would possess, must still be arm'd.

## TASSO

And he who would be always arm'd, must feel  
 Within his breast a power that ne'er forsakes.  
 Ah, it forsakes me now! In happiness  
 The inborn pow'r subsides, which prompted me  
 To meet injustice with becoming pride,  
 And steadfastly to face adversity.  
 Hath the delight, the rapture of this hour,  
 Dissolv'd the strength and marrow of my limbs?  
 My knees sink feebly, and, a second time,  
 Thou seest me, Princess, here before thee bow'd;  
 Grant my petition, and remove the crown,

That, as awaken'd from a blissful dream,  
A new and fresh existence I may feel.

### PRINCESS

If thou with quiet modesty canst wear  
The glorious talent from the gods receiv'd,  
Learn also now the laurel wreath to wear,  
The fairest gift that friendship can bestow;  
The brow it once hath worthily adorn'd,  
It shall encircle through eternity.

### TASSO

Oh let me then asham'd from hence retire!  
Let me in deepest shades my joy conceal,  
As there my sorrow I was wont to shroud.  
There will I range alone; no eye will there  
Remind me of a bliss, so undeserv'd;  
And if perchance I should behold a youth  
In the clear mirror of a crystal spring,  
Who, in the imag'd heaven, 'midst rocks and trees,  
Absorb'd in thought appears, his brow adorn'd  
With glory's garland, it shall seem to me  
As 'twere Elysium mirror'd in the flood.  
I pause and calmly ask, Who may this be?  
What youth of by-gone times, so fairly crown'd?  
Whence can I learn his name, and his desert?  
I linger long, and musing fondly think:  
Oh might there come another, and yet more  
To join with him in friendly intercourse!  
Oh could I see assembl'd round this spring  
The heroes and the bards of ancient times!  
Could I behold them still united here  
As they in life were ever firmly bound!  
As with mysterious power the magnet binds  
Iron with iron, so do kindred aims  
Unite the souls of heroes and of bards.  
Himself forgetting, Homer spent his life  
In contemplation of two mighty men;  
And Alexander in the Elysian fields  
Doth Homer and Achilles haste to seek.  
Oh would that I were present to behold  
Those mighty spirits in communion met!

## LEONORA

Awake, awake! let us not feel that thou  
Dost quite forget the present in the past.

## TASSO

The present 'tis that elevates my mind;  
I only seem oblivious, I'm entranc'd.

## PRINCESS

When thou dost speak with spirits, I rejoice  
The voice is human, and I gladly hear.

*[A Page steps to the Prince]*

## ALPHONSO

He is arriv'd! and in a happy hour;  
Antonio! Bring him hither; — here he comes!

## SCENE IV

PRINCESS. LEONORA. ALPHONSO. TASSO. ANTONIO.

## ALPHONSO

Thou'rt doubly welcomel thou who bring'st at once  
Thyself and welcome tidings.

## PRINCESS

Welcome here!

## ANTONIO

Scarce dare I venture to express the joy  
Which in your presence quickens me anew.  
In your society I find restor'd  
What I have miss'd so long. You seem content  
With what I've done, with what I have accomplish'd,  
And thus I'm recompens'd for every care,  
For many days impatiently endur'd,  
And many others wasted purposely.  
At length our wish is gain'd, — the strife is o'er.

## LEONORA

I also greet thee, though I'm half displeased;  
Thou dost arrive when I must hence depart.

## ANTONIO

As if to mar my perfect happiness,  
Thou tak'st away one lovely part of it.

## TASSO

My greetings too! I also shall rejoice  
In converse with the much-experienc'd man.

## ANTONIO

Thou'lt find me true, whenever thou wilt deign  
To glance awhile from thy world into mine.

## ALPHONSO

Though thou by letter hast announc'd to me  
The progress and the issue of our cause,  
Full many questions I have yet to ask  
Touching the course thou hast pursued therein.  
In that strange region a well-measur'd step  
Alone conducts us to our destin'd goal.  
Who doth his sovereign's interest purely seek,  
In Rome a hard position must maintain;  
For Rome gives nothing, while she grasps at all.  
Let him who thither goes some boon to claim,  
Go well provided, and esteem himself  
Most happy if e'en then he gaineth aught.

## ANTONIO

'Tis neither my demeanour nor my art  
By which thy will has been accomplish'd, Prince.  
For where the skill which at the Vatican  
Would not be over-master'd? Much conspir'd  
Which I could use in furth'rance of our cause.  
Pope Gregory salutes and blesses thee.  
That aged man, that sovereign most august,  
Who on his brow the load of empire bears,  
Recalls the time when he embrac'd thee last

With pleasure. He who can distinguish men  
Knows and extols thee highly. For thy sake  
He hath done much.

ALPHONSO

So far as 'tis sincere,  
His good opinion cannot but rejoice me.  
But well thou know'st, that from the Vatican  
The pope sees empires dwindle at his feet;  
Princes and men must needs seem small indeed.  
Own what it was that most assisted thee.

ANTONIO

It was, in truth, the Pope's exalted mind.  
To him the small seems small, the great seems great.  
That he may wield the empire of the world,  
He wisely yieldeth to surrounding powers.  
The value of the land which he resigns,  
As of your friendship, Prince, he knows full well.  
The peace of Italy must be secur'd,  
And friends alone encircle his domain,  
That all the might of Christendom, which he  
With hand so powerful directs and guides,  
May smite at once the Heretic and Turk.

PRINCESS

And is it known what men he most esteems,  
And who approach him confidentially?

ANTONIO

The experienc'd man alone can win his ear,  
The active man his favour and esteem.  
He, who from early youth has serv'd the state,  
Commands it now, ruling those very courts  
Which, in his office of ambassador,  
He had observ'd and guided years before.  
The world lies spread before his searching gaze,  
Clear as the interests of his own domain.  
In action we must yield him our applause,  
And mark with joy, when time unfolds the plans  
Which his deep forethought fashion'd long before.



There is no fairer prospect in the world  
 Than to behold a prince who wisely rules,  
 A realm where every one obeys with pride,  
 And each imagines that he serves himself,  
 Because 'tis justice only that commands.

LEONORA

How ardently I long to view that realm!

ALPHONSO

Doubtless that thou may'st play thy part therein;  
 For Leonora never could remain  
 A mere spectator: meet it were, fair friend,  
 If now and then we let your gentle hands  
 Join in the lofty game. Say, is't not so?

LEONORA *to* ALPHONSO

Thou wouldst provoke me, — thou shalt not succeed.

ALPHONSO

I am already deeply in thy debt.

LEONORA

Good; then to-day I will remain in thine!  
 Forgive, and do not interrupt me now.

[*To* ANTONIO

Say, has he done much for his relatives?

ANTONIO

Nor more nor less than equity allows.  
 The potentate, who doth neglect his friends,  
 Is even by the people justly blam'd.  
 With wise discretion Gregory employs  
 His friends as trusty servants of the state,  
 And thus fulfils at once two kindred claims.

TASSO

Do science and the liberal arts enjoy  
 His fost'ring care, and does he emulate  
 The glorious princes of the olden time?

## ANTONIO

He honours science when it is of use, —  
 Teaching to govern states and know mankind;  
 He prizes art when it embellishes, —  
 When it exalts and beautifies his Rome,  
 Erecting palaces and temples there,  
 Which rank among the prodigies of earth.  
 Within his sphere of influence he admits  
 Nought inefficient, and alone esteems  
 The active cause and instrument of good.

## ALPHONSO

Thou thinkest, then, that we may soon conclude  
 The whole affair? that no impediments  
 Will finally be scatter'd in our way?

## ANTONIO

Unless I greatly err, 'twill but require  
 A few brief letters and thy signature  
 To bring this contest to a final close.

## ALPHONSO

This day with justice then I may proclaim  
 A season of prosperity and joy.  
 My frontiers are enlarg'd and made secure;  
 Thou hast accomplish'd all without the sword,  
 And hence deservest well a civic crown.  
 Our ladies on some beauteous morn shall twine  
 A wreath of oak to bind around thy brow.  
 Meanwhile our poet hath enrich'd us too;  
 He, by his conquest of Jerusalem,  
 Hath put our modern Christendom to shame.  
 With joyous spirit and unwearied zeal,  
 A high and distant goal he hath attain'd;  
 For his achievement thou behold'st him crown'd.

## ANTONIO

Thou solv'st a riddle. On arriving here  
 These two crown'd heads excited my surprise.

## TASSO

Oh, would that, while thou dost behold my joy,  
 Thou with the self-same glance couldst view my heart,  
 And witness there my deep humility!

## ANTONIO

How lavishly Alphonso can reward  
 I long have known; thou only provest now  
 What all enjoy who come within his sphere.

## PRINCESS

When thou shalt see the work he hath perform'd,  
 Thou wilt esteem us moderate and just.  
 We're but the first, the silent, witnesses  
 Of praises, which the world and future years  
 In tenfold measure will accord to him.

## ANTONIO

Through you his fame is certain. Who so bold  
 To entertain a doubt when you commend?  
 But tell me, who on Ariosto's brow  
 Hath placed this wreath?

## LEONORA

This hand.

## ANTONIO

It hath done well!

It more becomes him than a laurel crown.  
 As o'er her fruitful bosom Nature throws  
 Her variegated robe of beauteous green,  
 So he enshrouds in Fable's flow'ry garb,  
 Whatever can conspire to render man  
 Worthy of love and honour. Power and taste,  
 Experience, understanding, and content,  
 And a pure feeling for the good and true,  
 Pervade the spirit of his every song,  
 And there appear in person, to repose  
 'Neath blossoming trees, besprinkled by the snow  
 Of lightly-falling flowers, their heads entwin'd

With rosy garlands, while the sportive Loves  
 With frolic humour weave their spells around.  
 A copious fountain, gurgling near, displays  
 Strange variegated fish, and all the air  
 Is vocal with the song of wondrous birds;  
 Strange cattle pasture in the bowers and glades;  
 Half hid in verdure, Folly slily lurks;  
 At times, resounding from a golden cloud,  
 The voice of Wisdom utters lofty truth,  
 While Madness, from a wild harmonious lute,  
 Scatters forth bursts of fitful harmony,  
 Yet all the while the justest measure holds.  
 He who aspires to emulate this man,  
 E'en for his boldness well deserves a crown.  
 Forgive me if I feel myself inspir'd,  
 Like one entranc'd forget both time and place,  
 And fail to weigh my words; for all these crowns,  
 These poets, and the festival attire  
 Of these fair ladies, have transported me  
 Out of myself into a foreign land.

#### PRINCESS

Who thus can prize one species of desert,  
 Will not misjudge another; thou to us  
 Some future day, shalt show in Tasso's song  
 What we can feel, and thou canst comprehend.

#### ALPHONSO

Come now, Antonio! many things remain  
 Whereof I am desirous to inquire.  
 Then till the setting of the sun thou shalt  
 Attend the ladies. Follow me, — Farewell!

*[Antonio follows the Prince, Tasso the Ladies]*



# ACT THE SECOND

## SCENE I

### *A Room*

PRINCESS.                      TASSO

TASSO

My doubtful footsteps follow thee, O Princess;  
 Tumultuous feelings vex my troubl'd soul,  
 And solitude appears to beckon me  
 And courteously to whisper, "Hither come,  
 I will allay the tumult in thy breast."  
 Yet if I only catch a glimpse of thee,  
 If from thy lip a word salute mine ear,  
 At once the fetters vanish from my soul,  
 And all around me shines a brighter day.  
 To thee I freely will confess, the man  
 Who unexpectedly appear'd among us  
 Hath rudely wak'd me from a golden dream;  
 So strangely have his nature and his words  
 Affected me, that more than ever now  
 A want of inward harmony I feel,  
 And a distracting conflict with myself.

PRINCESS

'Tis not to be expected that a friend  
 Who long hath sojourn'd in a foreign land,  
 Should in the moment of his first return,  
 The tone of former times at once resume;  
 He in his inner mind is still unchang'd,  
 And a few days of intercourse will tune  
 The jarring strings, until they blend once more  
 In perfect harmony. When he shall know  
 The greatness of the work thou hast achiev'd,  
 Believe me, he will place thee by the bard  
 Whom as a giant now he sets before thee.

## TASSO

My Princess, Ariosto's praise from him  
 Has more delighted than offended me.  
 Consoling 'tis, to know the man renown'd,  
 Whom as our model we have plac'd before us;  
 An inward voice then whispers to the heart;  
 "Canst thou obtain a portion of his worth,  
 A portion of his fame is also thine."  
 No, that which hath most deeply mov'd my heart,  
 Which even now completely fills my soul,  
 Was the majestic picture of that world,  
 Which, with its living, restless, mighty, forms  
 Around one great and prudent man revolves,  
 And runs with measur'd steps the destin'd course  
 Prescrib'd beforehand by the demigod.  
 I listen'd eagerly, and heard with joy  
 The wise discourse of the experienc'd man;  
 But ah! the more I heard, the more I felt  
 Mine own unworthiness, and fear'd that I  
 Like empty sound, might dissipate in air,  
 Or vanish like an echo or a dream.

## PRINCESS

And yet erewhile thou didst so truly feel  
 How bards and heroes for each other live,  
 How bards and heroes to each other tend,  
 And toward each other know no envious thought.  
 Noble in truth are deeds deserving fame,  
 But it is also noble to transmit  
 The lofty grandeur of heroic deeds,  
 Through worthy song, to our posterity.  
 Be satisfied to contemplate in peace,  
 From a small, shelt'ring state, as from the shore,  
 The wild and stormy current of the world.

## TASSO

Was it not here, amaz'd, I first beheld  
 The high reward on valiant deeds bestow'd?  
 An in experienc'd youth I here arriv'd,  
 When festival on festival conspir'd

To render this the centre of renown.  
 Oh what a scene Ferrara then display'd!  
 The wide arena, where in all its pomp  
 Accomplish'd valour should its skill display,  
 Was bounded by a circle, whose high worth  
 The sun might seek to parallel in vain.  
 The fairest women sat assembled there,  
 And men the most distinguish'd of the age.  
 Amaz'd the eye ran o'er the noble throng;  
 Proudly I cried, "And 'tis our Fatherland,  
 That small, sea-girded land, hath sent them here.  
 They constitute the noblest court that e'er  
 On honour, worth, or virtue, judgment pass'd.  
 Survey them singly, and thou'lt not find one  
 Of whom his neighbour needs to feel ashamed!" —  
 And then the lists were open'd, chargers pranc'd,  
 Esquires press'd forward, helmets brightly gleam'd,  
 The trumpet sounded, shiv'ring lances split,  
 The din of clanging helm and shield was heard,  
 And for a moment eddying dust conceal'd  
 The victor's honour and the vanquish'd's shame.  
 Oh let me draw a curtain o'er the scene,  
 The all too brilliant festival conceal,  
 That in this tranquil hour I may not feel  
 Too painfully mine own unworthiness!

#### PRINCESS

If that bright circle and those noble deeds  
 Arous'd thee then to enterprise and toil,  
 I could the while, young friend, have tutor'd thee  
 In the still lesson of calm sufferance.  
 The brilliant festival thou dost extol,  
 Which then and since a hundred voices prais'd,  
 I did not witness. In a lonely spot,  
 So tranquil that unbroken on the ear  
 Joy's lightest echo faintly died away,  
 A prey to pain and melancholy thoughts,  
 I was compell'd to pass the tedious hours.  
 Before me hover'd, on extended wing,  
 Death's awful form, concealing from my view  
 The prospect of this ever-changing world;



Slowly it disappear'd, and I beheld,  
 As through a veil, the varied hues of life,  
 Pleasing but indistinct; while living forms  
 Began once more to flicker through the gloom.  
 Still feeble, and supported by my women,  
 For the first time my silent room I left,  
 When hither, full of happiness and life,  
 Thee leading by the hand, Lucretia came.  
 A stranger then, thou, Tasso, wast the first  
 To welcome me on my return to life;  
 Much then I hop'd for both of us, and hope  
 Hath not, methinks, deceiv'd us hitherto.

## TASSO

Stunn'd by the tumult, dazzl'd by the glare,  
 Impetuous passions stirring in my breast,  
 I by thy sister's side pursued my way  
 In silence through the stately corridors,  
 Then in the chamber enter'd, where ere long  
 Thou didst appear supported by thy women.  
 Oh, what a moment! Princess, pardon me!  
 As in the presence of a deity  
 The victim of enchantment feels with joy  
 His frenzied spirit from delusion freed;  
 So was my soul from every phantasy,  
 From every passion, every false desire  
 Restor'd at once by one calm glance of thine;  
 And if, before, my inexperience'd mind  
 Had lost itself in infinite desires,  
 I then, with shame, first turn'd my gaze within,  
 And recogniz'd the truly valuable.  
 Thus on the wide sea-shore we seek in vain  
 The pearl, reposing in its silent shell.

## PRINCESS

'Twas the commencement of a happy time,  
 And had Urbino's Duke not ta'en away  
 My sister from us, years would then have pass'd  
 In calm unclouded happiness. But now,  
 We miss too much her buoyancy and life,  
 And the rich wit of the accomplish'd woman.

## TASSO

Too well I know since she departed hence,  
 None hath been able to supply to thee  
 The pure enjoyment which her presence gave.  
 Alas, how often hath it grieved my soul!  
 How often have I in the silent grove  
 Pour'd forth my lamentation! How! I cried,  
 Is it her sister's sole prerogative  
 To be a treasure to the dear one's heart?  
 Does then no other soul respond to hers,  
 No other heart her confidence deserve?  
 Are soul and wit extinguish'd? and should one,  
 How great soe'er her worth, engross her love?  
 Forgive me, Princess! Often I have wish'd  
 I could be something to thee, — little, perhaps,  
 But something; not with words alone, with deeds  
 I wish'd to be so, and in life to prove  
 How I had worshipp'd thee in solitude.  
 But I could ne'er succeed, and but too oft  
 In error wounded thee, offending one  
 By thee protected, or perplexing more  
 What thou didst wish to solve, and thus, alas!  
 E'en in the moment when I fondly strove  
 To draw more near thee, felt more distant still.

## PRINCESS

Thy wish I never have misconstrued, Tasso;  
 How thou dost prejudice thyself I know;  
 Unlike my sister, who possess'd the art  
 Of living happily with every one,  
 After so many years, thou scarce canst find  
 A single friend.

## TASSO

Blame me! but show me, princess,  
 The man or woman to whom, as to thee,  
 I can unbosom freely ev'ry thought.

## PRINCESS

My brother well deserves thy confidence.

## TASSO

He is my Prince! — Yet do not hence suppose  
 That freedom's lawless impulse swells my breast.  
 Man is not born for freedom, and to serve  
 A prince deserving honour and esteem  
 Is a pure pleasure to a noble mind.  
 Still he's my sovereign, and of that great word  
 I deeply feel the full significance.  
 I must be silent when he speaks, and learn  
 To do what he commands me, though perchance  
 My heart and understanding both rebel.

## PRINCESS

That never with my brother can occur.  
 And in Antonio, who is now return'd,  
 Thou wilt possess another prudent friend.

## TASSO

I hop'd it once, now almost I despair.  
 His converse how instructive, and his words  
 How useful in a thousand instances!  
 For he possesses, I may truly say,  
 All that in me is wanting. But, alas!  
 When round his cradle all the Gods assembled  
 To bring their gifts, the Graces were not there,  
 And he who lacks what these fair Powers impart,  
 May much possess, and much communicate,  
 But on his bosom we can ne'er repose.

## PRINCESS

But we can trust in him, and that is much.  
 Thou shouldst not, Tasso, in one man expect  
 All qualities combined; Antonio  
 Will keep his promises. If he have once  
 Declared himself thy friend, he'll care for thee  
 When thou neglect'st thyself. You must be friends!  
 Ere long I hope I shall obtain my wish,  
 Only oppose me not, as is thy wont.  
 Then, Leonora long hath sojourn'd here,  
 Who is at once refined and elegant;

Her easy manners banish all restraint,  
Yet thou hast ne'er approach'd her as she wish'd.

TASSO

To thee I hearken'd, or believe me, Princess,  
I should have rather shunn'd her than approach'd.  
Though she appear so kind, I know not why,  
But I can rarely feel at ease with her;  
E'en when she seeks to benefit her friends  
They feel the purpose, and are thence constrain'd.

PRINCESS

Treading this path we ne'er shall meet with friends;  
It only leads through solitary groves  
And lonely valleys, where the friendless soul  
Fondly endeavours to restore within  
The golden age, which in the outward world  
Exists no longer, — the attempt how vain!

TASSO

Oh what a word, my Princess, hast thou spoken!  
The golden age, ah whither is it flown,  
For which in secret every heart repines?  
When o'er the yet unsubjugged earth,  
Men roam'd, like herds, in joyous liberty;  
When on the flow'ry lawn an ancient tree  
Lent to the shepherd and the shepherdess  
Its grateful shadow, and the leafy grove  
Its tender branches lovingly entwin'd  
Around confiding love; when still and clear,  
O'er sands for ever pure, the pearly stream  
The nymph's fair form encircled; when the snake  
Glided innoxious through the verdant grass,  
And the bold youth pursued the daring faun;  
When every bird winging the limpid air,  
And every living thing o'er hill and dale  
Proclaim'd to man, — What pleases, that is right.

PRINCESS

My friend, the golden age hath pass'd away;  
Only the good have power to bring it back.

Shall I confess to thee my secret thought?  
 The golden age, wherewith the bard is wont  
 Our spirits to beguile, that lovely prime,  
 Existed in the past no more than now;  
 And did it e'er exist, believe me, Tasso,  
 As then it was, it now may be restored.  
 Still meet congenial spirits, and enhance  
 Each other's pleasure in this beauteous world;  
 But in the motto change one single word,  
 And say, my friend, — What's fitting, that is right.

## TASSO

Would that of good and noble men were form'd  
 A great tribunal, to decide for all  
 What is befitting! then no more would each  
 Esteem that right which benefits himself.  
 The man of power acts ever as he lists,  
 And whatsoe'er he does is fitting deem'd.

## PRINCESS

Wouldst thou define exactly what is fitting,  
 Thou shouldst apply, methinks, to noble women;  
 For them it most behoveth that in life  
 Nought should be done unseemly or unfit;  
 Propriety encircles with a wall  
 The tender, weak, and vulnerable sex.  
 Where moral order reigneth, women reign,  
 They only are despis'd where rudeness triumphs;  
 And wouldst thou touching either sex inquire,  
 'Tis order woman seeketh, freedom man.

## TASSO

Thou thinkest us unfeeling, wild, and rude?

## PRINCESS

Not so! but ye with violence pursue  
 A multitude of objects far remote.  
 Ye venture for eternity to act,  
 While we, with views more narrow, on this earth  
 Seek only one possession, well content  
 If that with constancy remain our own.

For we, alas! are of no heart secure,  
 Whate'er the ardour of its first devotion.  
 Beauty is transient, which alone ye seem  
 To hold in honour; what beside remains  
 No longer charms, — what doth not charm is dead.  
 If among men there were who knew to prize  
 The heart of woman, who could recognize  
 What treasures of fidelity and love  
 Are garner'd safely in a woman's breast;  
 If the remembrance of bright single hours  
 Could vividly abide within your souls;  
 If your so searching glance could pierce the veil  
 Which age and wasting sickness o'er us fling;  
 If the possession which should satisfy  
 Waken'd no restless cravings in your hearts;  
 Then were our happy days indeed arriv'd,  
 We then should celebrate our golden age.

TASSO

Thy words, my Princess, in my breast awake  
 An old anxiety half lull'd to sleep.

PRINCESS

What mean'st thou, Tasso? Freely speak with me.

TASSO

I oft before have heard, and recently  
 Again it hath been rumour'd, — had I not  
 Been told, I might have known it, — princes strive  
 To win thy hand. What we must needs expect  
 We view with dread, nay, almost with despair.  
 Thou wilt forsake us, — it is natural:  
 How we shall bear thy loss, I do not know.

PRINCESS

Be for the present moment unconcern'd!  
 Almost, I might say, unconcern'd for ever.  
 I am contented still to tarry here,  
 Nor know I any tie to lure me hence.  
 And if thou wouldst indeed detain me, Tasso,  
 Live peaceably with all, so shalt thou lead

A happy life thyself, and I through thee.

# TASSO

Teach me to do whate'er is possible!  
 My life itself is consecrate to thee.  
 When to extol thee and to give thee thanks  
 My heart unfolded, I experienc'd first  
 The purest happiness that man can feel.  
 My soul's ideal I first found in thee.  
 As destiny supreme is rais'd above  
 The will and counsel of the wisest men,  
 So tower the gods of earth o'er common mortals.  
 The rolling surge which we behold with dread,  
 Doth all unheeded murmur at their feet  
 Like gentle billows: they hear not the storm  
 Which blusters round us, scarcely heed our prayers,  
 And treat us as we helpless children treat,  
 Letting us fill the air with sighs and plaints.  
 Thou hast, divine one! often borne with me,  
 And like the radiant sun, thy pitying glance  
 Hath from mine eyelid dried the dew of sorrow.

# PRINCESS

'Tis only just that women cordially  
 Should meet the poet, whose heroic song  
 In strains so varied glorifies the sex.  
 Tender or valiant, thou hast ever known  
 To represent them amiable and noble;  
 And if Armida is deserving hate,  
 Her love and beauty reconcile us to her.

# TASSO

Whatever in my song doth reach the heart  
 And find an echo there, I owe to one,  
 And one alone! No image undefin'd  
 Hover'd before my soul, approaching now  
 In radiant glory, to retire again.  
 I have myself, with mine own eyes, beheld  
 The type of every virtue, every grace;  
 What I have copied thence will aye endure;  
 The heroic love of Tancred to Clorinda,

Erminia's silent and unnotic'd truth,  
 Sophronia's greatness and Olinda's woe;  
 These are not shadows by illusion bred;  
 I know they are eternal, for they are.  
 And what is more deserving to survive,  
 And silently to work for centuries,  
 Than the confession of a noble love  
 Confided modestly to gentle song?

#### PRINCESS

And shall I name to thee another charm  
 Which, all unconsciously, this song may claim?  
 It doth allure us still to listen to it:  
 We listen, and we think we understand;  
 We understand, and yet we censure not,  
 So with thy song, thou winnest us at last.

#### TASSO

Oh what a heaven thou dost open to me,  
 My Princess! if this radiance blinds me not,  
 I see unhop'd-for and eternal bliss  
 Descending gloriously on golden beams.

#### PRINCESS

No further, Tasso! many things there are  
 That we may hope to win with violence;  
 While others only can become our own  
 Through moderation and wise self-restraint.  
 Such, it is said, is virtue, such is love,  
 Which is allied to her. Think well of this.

### SCENE II

#### TASSO

And art thou then allow'd to raise thine eyes?  
 Around thee dar'st thou gaze? Thou art alone!  
 O'erheard these pillars what the princess spake?  
 And hast thou even these mute witnesses  
 Of thine exalted happiness to fear?  
 The sun arises of a new life-day,  
 Whose splendour dims the light of former days.



The goddess, downward stooping, swiftly bears  
 Aloft the mortal. What a wide expanse  
 Is to mine eye discover'd, what a realm!  
 How richly recompens'd my burning wish!  
 In dreams the highest happiness seem'd near,  
 This happiness surpasses all my dreams.  
 The man born blind conceiveth as he may  
 Of light and colour; when upon his eye  
 The daylight pours, he hails a new-born sense.  
 Full of vague hope and courage, drunk with joy,  
 Reeling I tread this path. Thou giv'st me much;  
 Thou givest lavishly, as earth and heaven,  
 With bounteous hand, dispense their costly gifts,  
 Demanding in return what such a boon  
 Alone empowers thee to demand from me.  
 I must be moderate, I must forbear,  
 And thus deserve thy cherish'd confidence.  
 What have I ever done that she should choose me?  
 What can I do to merit her regard?  
 Her very confidence doth prove thy worth.  
 Yes, princess, to thine ev'ry word and look,  
 Be my whole soul for ever consecrate!  
 Ask what thou wilt, for I am wholly thine!  
 To distant regions let her send me forth  
 In quest of toil, and danger, and renown;  
 Or in the grove, present the golden lyre,  
 Devoting me to quiet and her praise.  
 I'm her's; possessing, she shall fashion me!  
 For her my heart hath garner'd ev'ry treasure.  
 Oh! had some heavenly power bestow'd on me  
 An organ thousandfold, I scarcely then  
 Could utter forth my speechless reverence.  
 The painter's pencil, and the poet's lip,  
 The sweetest that e'er sipp'd the vernal honey,  
 I covet now. No! Tasso shall henceforth  
 Wander no more forlorn, 'mong trees and men,  
 Lonely and weak, oppress'd with gloomy care!  
 He is no more alone, he is with thee.  
 Oh would that visibly the noblest deed  
 Were present here before me, circled round  
 With grisly danger! Onward I would rush,

And with a joyous spirit risk the life  
 Now from her hand receiv'd. The choicest men  
 As comrades I would hail, a noble band,  
 To execute her will and high behest,  
 And consummate what seem'd impossible.  
 Rash mortal! wherefore did thy lips not hide  
 What thou didst feel, till thou couldst lay thyself  
 Worthy, and ever worthier, at her feet?  
 Such was thy purpose, such thy prudent wish!  
 Yet be it so! 'Tis sweeter to receive,  
 Free, and unmerited, so fair a boon,  
 Than, with self-flatt'ry, dream one might perchance  
 Successfully have claim'd it. Gaze with joy!  
 So vast, so boundless, all before thee lies!  
 And youth, with hope inspir'd, allures thee on  
 Towards the future's unknown, sunny realms!  
 My bosom, heaven! propitious seasons smile  
 Once more with genial influence on this plant!  
 It springeth heavenward, and shooteth out  
 A thousand branches that unfold in bloom;  
 Oh may it bring forth fruit, — ambrosial fruit!  
 And may a hand belov'd the golden spoil  
 Cull, from its verdant and luxuriant boughs!

### SCENE III

TASSO.            ANTONIO

TASSO

A cordial welcome, Sir! It seems indeed  
 As though I saw thee for the first time now!  
 Nor was arrival e'er more gladly hail'd!  
 I know thee now, and all thy varied worth,  
 Promptly I offer thee my heart and hand,  
 And trust that thou wilt not despise my love.

ANTONIO

Freely thou offerest a precious gift;  
 Its worth I duly estimate, and hence  
 Would pause awhile before accepting it.  
 I know not yet if I can render thee \*

A full equivalent. Not willingly  
 Would I o'erhasty or unthankful seem;  
 Let then my sober caution serve for both.

## TASSO

What man would censure caution? Every step  
 Of life doth prove that 'tis most requisite;  
 Yet nobler is it, when the soul reveals,  
 Where we, with prudent foresight, may dispense.

## ANTONIO

The heart of each be here his oracle,  
 Since each his error must himself atone.

## TASSO

So let it be! My duty I've perform'd,  
 It is the princess' wish we should be friends,  
 Her words I honour'd and thy friendship sought.  
 I wish'd not to hold back, Antonio,  
 But I will never be importunate.  
 Time and more near acquaintance may induce thee,  
 To give a warmer welcome to the gift,  
 Which now thou dost reject, almost with scorn.

## ANTONIO

Oft is the mod'rate man nam'd cold by those  
 Who think themselves more warm than other men,  
 Because a transient glow comes over them.

## TASSO

Thou blamest what I blame, — what I avoid.  
 Young as I am I ever must prefer  
 Unshaken constancy to vehemence.

## ANTONIO

Most wisely said! Keep ever in this mind.

## TASSO

Thou'rt authoriz'd to counsel and to warn,  
 For, like a faithful, time-approved, friend,

Experience holds her station at thy side.  
 But trust me, Sir, the meditative heart  
 Attends the warning of each day and hour,  
 And practises in secret ev'ry virtue,  
 Which in thy rigour thou wouldst teach anew.

ANTONIO

'Twere well to be thus occupied with self,  
 If it were only profitable too.  
 His inmost nature no man learns to know  
 By introspection; still he rates himself,  
 Sometimes too low, but oft, alas! too high.  
 Self-knowledge comes from knowing other men;  
 'Tis life reveals to each his genuine worth.

TASSO

I listen with assent and reverence.

ANTONIO

Yet to my words I know thou dost attach  
 A meaning wholly foreign to my thought.

TASSO

Proceeding thus, we ne'er shall draw more near.  
 It is not prudent, 'tis not well, to meet  
 With purpos'd misconception any man,  
 Let him be who he may! The Princess' word  
 I scarcely needed; — I have read thy soul.  
 Good thou dost purpose and accomplish too.  
 Thine own immediate fate concerns thee not;  
 Thou think'st of others, others thou dost aid,  
 And on life's sea, vexed by each passing gale,  
 Thou hold'st a heart unmov'd. I view thee thus;  
 What then were I, did I not draw tow'rds thee?  
 Did I not even keenly seek a share  
 Of the lock'd treasure which thy bosom guards?  
 Open thine heart to me, thou'lt not repent;  
 Know me, and I am sure thou'lt be my friend;  
 Of such a friend I long have felt the need.  
 My inexperience, my ungovern'd youth  
 Cause me no shame; for still around my brow

The future's golden clouds in brightness rest.  
 Oh! to thy bosom take me, noble man;  
 Into the wise, the temperate use of life  
 Initiate my rash and unfledg'd youth.

ANTONIO

Thou in a single moment would'st demand  
 What time and circumspection only yield.

TASSO

In one brief moment love has power to give  
 What anxious toil wins not in lengthen'd years.  
 I do not ask it from thee, I demand.  
 I summon thee in Virtue's sacred name,  
 For she is zealous to unite the good;  
 And shall I name to thee another name?  
 The Princess, she doth wish it. — Leonora,  
 Me she would lead to thee, and thee to me.  
 Oh, let us meet her wish with kindred hearts!  
 United let us to the goddess haste,  
 To offer her our service, our whole souls  
 Leagued to achieve for her the noblest aims.  
 Yet once again! — Here is my hand! Give thine!  
 I do entreat, hold thyself back no longer!  
 And grudge me not the good man's fairest joy  
 Freely to yield himself to nobler men!

ANTONIO

Thou goest on full sail! It would appear  
 Thou'rt wont to conquer, everywhere to find  
 The pathways spacious and the portals wide.  
 I grudge thee not or merit or success, —  
 But we yet stand I see too far apart.

TASSO

It may be so in years and time-tried worth; —  
 In courage and goodwill I yield to none.

ANTONIO

Goodwill doth oft prove deedless; courage still  
 Pictures the goal less distant than it is.

His brow alone is crown'd who reaches it,  
 And oft the worthiest must forego the crown.  
 Yet wreaths there are of very different fashion;  
 Light, worthless wreaths, which, idly strolling on,  
 The loiterer oft without the toil obtains.

## TASSO

Yet what a God doth freely grant to one,  
 And from another sternly doth withhold,  
 Is not obtain'd by each man as he lists.

## ANTONIO

If to a God, — ascribe it then to Fortune.  
 I'll hear thee gladly, for her choice is blind.

## TASSO

Impartial Justice also wears a band  
 And shuts her eyes to ev'ry bright illusion.

## ANTONIO

Fortune 'tis for the fortunate to praise!  
 Let him ascribe to her a hundred eyes  
 To scan desert, — stern judgment, and wise choice.  
 Call her Minerva, call her what he will,  
 He holds as just reward her golden gifts,  
 Chance ornament as symbol of desert.

## TASSO

Thou need'st not speak more plainly. 'Tis enough!  
 Deeply I see into thine inmost heart,  
 And know thee now for life. Oh would that so  
 My princess knew thee also! Lavish not  
 The arrows of thine eyes and of thy tongue!  
 In vain thou aimest at the fadeless wreath  
 Entwin'd around my brow. First be so great  
 As not to envy me the wreath of fame,  
 And then perchance thou may'st dispute the prize.  
 I deem it sacred, yea, the highest good;  
 Yet only show me him who hath attain'd  
 That after which I strive; show me the hero,  
 Of whom on hist'ry's ample page I read;

The poet place before me, who himself  
 With Homer or with Virgil may compare;  
 Ay, what is more, let me behold the man  
 Who hath deserv'd threefold this recompense,  
 And yet can wear the laurel round his brow,  
 With modesty thrice greater than my own, —  
 Then at the feet of the divinity  
 Who thus endow'd me, thou should'st see me kneel,  
 Nor would I stand erect, till from my brow,  
 She had transferr'd the ornament to his.

ANTONIO

Till then thou'rt doubtless worthy of the crown.

TASSO

Let me be justly weigh'd; I shun it not;  
 But your contempt I never have deserv'd.  
 The wreath consider'd by my prince my due,  
 Which for my brow my princess' hand entwin'd,  
 None shall dispute with me, and none asperse!

ANTONIO

This haughty tone, methinks, becomes thee not,  
 Nor this rash glow, unseemly in this place.

TASSO

The tone thou here assum'st beseems me too.  
 Say, from these precincts is the truth exil'd?  
 Within the palace is free thought imprison'd?  
 Here must the noble spirit be oppress'd?  
 This is nobility's appropriate seat,  
 The soul's nobility! and may she not  
 In presence of earth's mighty ones, rejoice?  
 She may and shall. Nobles draw near the prince  
 In virtue of the rank their sires bequeath'd;  
 Why should not genius then, which partial nature  
 Grants, like a glorious ancestry, to few?  
 Here littleness alone should feel confus'd,  
 And envy shun to manifest its shame,  
 As no insidious spider should attach  
 Its noisome fabric to these marble walls.

## ANTONIO

Thyself dost show that my contempt is just!  
 The impetuous youth, forsooth, would seize by force  
 The confidence and friendship of the man!  
 Rude as thou art, dost think thyself of worth?

## TASSO

I'd rather be what thou esteemest rude,  
 Than what I must myself esteem ignoble.

## ANTONIO

Thou'rt still so young that wholesome chastisement  
 May tutor thee to hold a better course.

## TASSO

Not young enough to bow to idols down,  
 Yet old enough to conquer scorn with scorn.

## ANTONIO

From contests of the lips and of the lyre  
 A conquering hero, thou may'st issue forth.

## TASSO

It were presumptuous to extol my arm;  
 As yet 'tis deedless; still I'll trust to it.

## ANTONIO

Thou trustest to forbearance, which too long  
 Hath spoil'd thee in thine insolent career.

## TASSO

That I am grown to manhood, now I feel:  
 It would have been the farthest from my wish  
 To try with thee the doubtful game of arms.  
 But thou dost stir the inward fire; my blood,  
 My inmost marrow boils; the fierce desire  
 Of vengeance seeths and foams within my breast.  
 Art thou the man thou boast'st thyself, — then stand.



## ANTONIO

Thou know'st as little who, as where thou art.

## TASSO

No fane so sacred as to shield contempt.  
 Thou dost blaspheme, thou dost profane this spot,  
 Not I, who fairest offerings, — confidence,  
 Respect, and love, for thine acceptance brought.  
 Thy spirit desecrates this paradise;  
 And thy injurious words this sacred hall;  
 Not the indignant heaving of my breast,  
 Which boils to wipe away the slightest stain.

## ANTONIO

What a great spirit in a narrow breast!

## TASSO

Here there is space to vent the bosom's rage.

## ANTONIO

The rabble also vent their rage in words.

## TASSO

Art thou of noble blood as I am, draw.

## ANTONIO

I am, but I remember where I stand.

## TASSO

Come then below, where weapons may avail.

## ANTONIO

Thou should'st not challenge, therefore I'll not follow.

## TASSO

To cowards welcome such impediments.

## ANTONIO

The coward only threats where he's secure.

TASSO

With joy would I relinquish this defence.

ANTONIO

Demean thyself; degrade the place thou can'st not.

TASSO

The place forgive me that I suffer'd it!

*[He draws his sword]*

Or draw or follow, if, as now I hate,  
I'm not to scorn thee to eternity!

SCENE IV

TASSO. ANTONIO. ALPHONSO

ALPHONSO

In what unlook'd for strife I find you both?

ANTONIO

Calm and unmov'd, oh Prince, thou finds't me here,  
Before a man whom passion's rage hath seized.

TASSO

As a divinity I worship thee  
That thus thou tam'st me with one warning look.

ALPHONSO

Relate, Antonio, Tasso, tell me straight; —  
Say, why doth discord thus invade my house?  
How hath it seized you both, and hurried you  
Confus'd and reeling, from the beaten track  
Of decency and law? I stand amazed.

TASSO

I feel it, thou dost know nor him, nor me.  
This man, reputed temperate and wise,  
Hath tow'rds me, like a rude, ill-manner'd churl,  
Behav'd himself with spiteful insolence.  
I sought him trustfully, he thrust me back;

With constancy I press'd myself on him,  
 And still, with growing bitterness imbued,  
 He rested not till he had turn'd to gall  
 My blood's pure current. Pardon! Thou, my Prince,  
 Hast found me here, possess'd with furious rage.  
 If guilty, to this man the guilt is due;  
 With violence he fann'd the fiery glow  
 Which, seizing me, hath injur'd both of us.

ANTONIO

Poetic phrenzy hurried him away!  
 Thou hast, oh Prince, address'd thyself to me,  
 Me thou hast question'd: may I be allow'd  
 After this rapid orator to speak?

TASSO

Oh, yes, repeat again each several word!  
 And if thou can'st recall before this judge  
 Each syllable, each look, — then dare to do so!  
 Disgrace thyself a second time, and bear  
 Witness against thyself! I'll not disown  
 A single pulse-throb, nor a single breath.

ANTONIO

If thou hast somewhat more to say, proceed;  
 If not, forbear, and interrupt me not.  
 Whether at first this fiery youth or I  
 Began this quarrel, whether he or I  
 Must bear the blame, is a wide question, Prince,  
 Which stands apart, and need not be discuss'd.

TASSO

How so? The primal question seems to me,  
 Which of the two is right and which is wrong.

ANTONIO

Not so precisely, as th' ungovern'd mind  
 Might first suppose.

ALPHONSO

Antonio!

## ANTONIO

Gracious Prince!

Thy hint I honour; but let him forbear:  
 When I have spoken, he may then proceed;  
 Thy voice must then decide. I've but to say,  
 I can no longer with this man contend;  
 Can nor accuse him, nor defend myself,  
 Nor give the satisfaction he desires;  
 For as he stands, he is no longer free.  
 There hangeth over him a heavy law,  
 Which, at the most, thy favour can relax.  
 Here he hath dar'd to threaten me, to challenge,  
 Scarce in thy presence sheath'd his naked sword;  
 And if between us, Prince, thou had'st not stepped,  
 Obnoxious to reproof I now had stood,  
 Before thy sight, the partner of his fault.

ALPHONSO *to* TASSO

Thou hast not acted well.

## TASSO

Mine own heart, Prince,  
 And surely thine, doth speak me wholly free.  
 Yes, true it is, I threaten'd, challeng'd, drew; —  
 But how maliciously his guileful tongue,  
 With words well chosen, pierc'd me to the quick;  
 How sharply and how quick his biting tooth  
 The subtle venom in my blood infus'd;  
 How more and more the fever he inflam'd,  
 Thou thinkest not! cold and unmov'd himself,  
 He to the highest pitch excited me.  
 Thou know'st him not, and thou wilt never know him!  
 Warmly I tender'd him the truest love;  
 Down at my feet he flung the proffer'd gift;  
 And had my spirit not with anger glow'd,  
 Of thy fair service and thy princely grace  
 I were for aye unworthy. If the law  
 I have forgotten, and this place, — forgive!  
 The spot exists not where I dare be base,  
 Nor yet where I debasement dare endure.

But if this heart in any place be false,  
Or to itself or thee, — condemn, reject, —  
And let me ne'er again behold thy face.

#### ANTONIO

How easily the youth bears heavy loads,  
And shaketh misdemeanours off like dust!  
It were indeed a marvel, knew I not  
Of magic poesy the wondrous power,  
Which loveth still with the impossible  
In frolic mood to sport. I almost doubt  
Whether to thee, and to thy ministers,  
This deed will seem so insignificant.  
For royalty extends its shield o'er all  
Who seek the shelter of its sacred fane,  
And bow before it as a deity.  
As at the altar's consecrated foot,  
So on the regal threshold rage subsides;  
No sword there gleams, no threat'ning word resounds,  
E'en injur'd innocence seeks no revenge.  
The common earth affords an ample scope  
For bitter hate, and rage implacable.  
There will no coward threat, no true man flee;  
Thy ancestors, on sure foundations bas'd  
These walls, fit shelter for their dignity;  
And, with wise forecast, hedg'd the palace round  
With fearful penalties. Of all transgressors,  
Exile, confinement, death, the certain doom.  
Respect of persons was not, nor did mercy  
The arm of justice venture to restrain.  
The boldest culprit felt himself o'erawed.  
And now, after a lengthen'd reign of peace,  
We must behold unlicens'd rage invade  
The realm of sacred order. Judge, oh Prince,  
And punish! for unguarded by the law,  
Unshielded by his Sov'reign, who will dare  
To keep the narrow path that duty bounds.

#### ALPHONSO

More than your words, or aught that ye could say,  
My own impartial feelings let me heed.

If that your duty ye had both fulfill'd,  
 I should not have this judgment to pronounce;  
 For here the right and wrong are near allied.  
 If that Antonio has offended thee  
 Due satisfaction he must doubtless give,  
 In such a sort as thou shalt choose to ask.  
 I gladly would be chosen arbiter.

[*To* TASSO

Meanwhile thy misdemeanour subjects thee  
 To brief confinement, Tasso. I forgive thee,  
 And therefore, for thy sake, relax the law.  
 Now leave us, and within thy chamber bide,  
 Thyself thy sole companion, thy sole guard.

TASSO

Is this, then, thy judicial sentence, Prince?

ANTONIO

Discern'st thou not a father's lenity?

TASSO *to* ANTONIO

With thee, henceforth, I have no more to say.

[*To* ALPHONSO

Thine earnest word, oh Prince, delivers me,  
 A freeman, to captivity. So be it!  
 Thou deem'st it right. Thy sacred word I hear  
 And counsel silence to mine inmost heart.  
 It seems so strange, so strange, — myself and thee,  
 This sacred spot, I scarce can recognize.  
 Yet him I know full well. — Oh, there is much  
 I might and ought to say, yet I submit.  
 My lips are mute. Was it indeed a crime?  
 At least, they treat me as a criminal.  
 Howe'er my heart rebel, I'm captive now.

ALPHONSO

Thou tak'st it, Tasso, more to heart than I.

TASSO

To me it still is inconceivable;

And yet not so, I am no child.    Methinks  
 I should be able to unravel it.  
 A sudden light breaks in upon my soul; —  
 As suddenly it leaves me in the dark; —  
 I only hear my sentence and submit.  
 These are, indeed, superfluous, idle words.  
 Henceforth inure thy spirit to obey.  
 Weak mortal! To forget where thou didst stand!  
 Thou didst forget how high the abode of gods,  
 And now art stagger'd by the sudden fall.  
 Promptly obey, for it becomes a man  
 Each painful duty to perform with joy.  
 Take back the sword which I receiv'd from thee,  
 When in the card'nal's suit I went to France;  
 Though not with glory, not with shame I wore it, —  
 No, not to-day. The bright auspicious gift,  
 With heart sore troubled, I relinquish now.

#### ALPHONSO

Thou know'st not, Tasso, how I feel tow'rds thee.

#### TASSO

My lot is to obey, and not to think!  
 And destiny alas! demands from me  
 Renunciation of this precious gift.  
 Ill doth a crown become a captive's brow.  
 I from my head myself remove the wreath  
 Which seem'd accorded for eternity.  
 Too early was the dearest bliss bestow'd,  
 And is, alas, as if I had been boastful,  
 Too early ta'en away.  
 Thou takest back what none beside could take,  
 And what no God a second time accords.  
 We mortals are most wonderfully tried;  
 We could not bear it, were we not endow'd,  
 By Nature, with a kindly levity.  
 Capricious fortune teaches us to play  
 With priceless gifts, with lavish unconcern.  
 Our hands we open of our own free will,  
 And the good flies that we can ne'er recall.

A tear doth mingle with this parting kiss,  
 Devoting thee to mutability!  
 This tender sign of weakness may be pardon'd!  
 Who would not weep when what was deem'd immortal  
 Yields to destruction's power! Now to this sword  
 (Alas, it won thee not,) ally thyself,  
 And round it twin'd, as on a hero's bier,  
 Reposing, mark the grave where buried lie  
 My short-liv'd happiness, my wither'd hopes.  
 Here at thy feet, oh Prince, I lay them down;  
 For who is justly arm'd if thou art wrath?  
 Who justly crown'd, on whom thy brow is bent?  
 I go a captive, and await my doom.

*(Exit)*

*[On a sign from the Prince, a Page raises the sword and wreath  
 and bears them away]*

## SCENE V

ALPHONSO.      ANTONIO

ANTONIO

Whither doth phrenzied fancy lead the boy?  
 And in what colours doth he picture forth  
 His high desert and glorious destiny?  
 Rash, inexperience'd, youth esteems itself  
 A chosen instrument, and arrogates  
 Unbounded license. He has been chastis'd,  
 And chastisement is profit to the boy,  
 For which the man will render cordial thanks.

ALPHONSO

He is indeed chastis'd, too much I fear.

ANTONIO

Art thou dispos'd to practice lenity,  
 Restore again his liberty, my Prince,  
 And then the sword may arbitrate our strife.



## ALPHONSO

So be it, if the public voice demands.  
But tell me, how didst thou provoke his ire?

## ANTONIO

In sooth, I scarce can say how it befel.  
As man, I may perchance have wounded him,  
As nobleman, I gave him no offence.  
And in the very tempest of his rage,  
No word unseemly hath escap'd this lip.

## ALPHONSO

Of such a sort your quarrel seem'd to me;  
And your own word confirms me in my thought.  
When men dispute we justly may esteem  
The wiser the offender. Thou with Tasso  
Should'st not contend, but rather guide his steps.  
It would become thee more. 'Tis not too late.  
The sword's decision is not call'd for here.  
So long as I am bless'd with peace abroad,  
So long would I enjoy it in my house.  
Restore tranquillity, thou can'st with ease.  
Leonora Sanvitale may at first  
Attempt to sooth him with her honied lip.  
Then go thou to him; in my name restore  
His liberty; with true and noble words  
Endeavour to obtain his confidence.  
Accomplish this with all the speed thou can'st.  
As a kind friend and father speak with him.  
Peace I would know restor'd ere I depart;  
All if thou wilt — is possible to thee.  
We gladly will remain another hour,  
Then leave it to the ladies' gentle tact  
To consummate the work commenc'd by thee.  
So when we come again, the last faint trace  
Of this rash quarrel will be quite effac'd.  
It seems thy talents will not rust, Antonio!  
Scarcely hast thou concluded one affair,  
And on thy first return thou seek'st another.  
In this new mission may success be thine!

## ANTONIO

I am asham'd; my error in thy words  
As in the clearest mirror, I discern.  
How easy to obey a noble prince  
Who doth convince us while he doth command.



# ACT THE THIRD

## SCENE I

PRINCESS, (*alone*)

Where tarries Leonora? Anxious fear,  
 Augmenting every moment, agitates  
 My inmost heart. Scarce know I what took place;  
 Which party is to blame I scarcely know.  
 Oh, that she would return! I would not yet  
 Speak with my brother or Antonio  
 Till I am more compos'd, till I have heard  
 How matters stand, and what may be the issue.

## SCENE II

PRINCESS.            LEONORA

PRINCESS

What tidings, Leonora? Tell me all:  
 How stands it with our friends? Say, what occur'd?

LEONORA

More than I knew before I have not learn'd.  
 Contention rose between them; Tasso drew;  
 Thy brother parted them: yet it would seem  
 That it was Tasso who began the fray.  
 Antonio is at large, and with his Prince  
 Converses freely. Tasso, in his chamber,  
 Abides meanwhile, a captive and alone.

PRINCESS

Doubtless Antonio irritated him,  
 And met with cold disdain the high-ton'd youth.

LEONORA

I do believe it, when he join'd us first  
 A cloud already brooded o'er his brow:

## PRINCESS

Alas, that we're so prone to disregard  
 The still and holy warnings of the heart!  
 A God doth whisper softly in our breast,  
 Softly yet audibly, doth counsel us,  
 Both what we ought to seek and what to shun.  
 This morn Antonio hath appear'd to me  
 E'en more abrupt than ever, — more reserv'd.  
 When at his side I saw our youthful bard,  
 My spirit warn'd me. Only mark of each  
 The outward aspect; — countenance and tone  
 Look, gesture, bearing! Everything oppos'd;  
 Affection they can never interchange.  
 And yet I listen'd to delusive Hope;  
 They both are sensible, she fondly urg'd,  
 Both noble, gently nurtur'd, and thy friends.  
 What bond more sure than that which links the good?  
 I urg'd the youth; with what devoted zeal,  
 How ardently he gave himself to me!  
 Would I had spoken to Antonio then!  
 But I delay'd: So recent his return,  
 That I felt shy, at once and urgently,  
 To recommend the youth to his regard;  
 On custom I relied and courtesy,  
 And on the common usage of the world,  
 Which e'en twixt foes so smoothly intervenes.  
 I dreaded not from the experienc'd man,  
 The rash impetuosity of youth.  
 The ill seem'd distant, now, alas, 'tis here.  
 Oh give me counsel! What is to be done?

## LEONORA

Thy words, my Princess, show that thou dost feel  
 How hard it is to counsel. 'Tis not here  
 A misconception twixt congenial minds;  
 This words, if needful the appeal to arms,  
 Might easily set right. Two men they are,  
 I've felt it long, who therefore are oppos'd,  
 Because their minds are cast in different moulds,  
 And were they to consult their common weal,

They'd form a league of closest amity;  
 Then as one man they'd act, and onward move  
 With power, and joy, and happiness through life.  
 I hop'd it once, I now perceive in vain.  
 To-day's contention, whatsoe'er the cause,  
 Might be appeas'd, but this assures us not,  
 Or for the morrow, or for future time.  
 Methinks 'twere best, that Tasso for awhile  
 Should journey hence; he might repair to Rome,  
 Or visit Florence, I should meet him there  
 And as a friend could work upon his mind.  
 While thou, meanwhile, could'st bring Antonio,  
 Who has become almost a stranger to us,  
 Once more within the circle of thy friends.  
 And thus benignant time, that grants so much,  
 Might grant, perchance, what seems impossible.

PRINCESS

A happiness will thus, my friend, be thine,  
 Which I must needs forego; say, is that right?

LEONORA

Thou only would'st forego what thou thyself  
 As things at present stand, could'st not enjoy.

PRINCESS

So calmly shall I banish hence a friend?

LEONORA

Rather retain, whom thou dost seem to banish.

PRINCESS

The duke will ne'er consent to part with him.

LEONORA

When he shall see as we do, he will yield.

PRINCESS

'Tis painful in one's friend to doom oneself.

LEONORA

Yet with thy friend, thou'lt also save thyself.

PRINCESS

I cannot give my voice that this shall be.

LEONORA

An evil still more grievous then expect.

PRINCESS

Thou giv'st me pain, — uncertain thy success.

LEONORA

Ere long we shall discover which is right.

PRINCESS

Well, if it needs must be so, say no more.

LEONORA

He conquers grief, who firmly can resolve.

PRINCESS

Resolv'd I'm not; but even let it be,  
If he does not absent himself too long.  
And let us, Leonora, care for him,  
That he may never be oppress'd by want,  
But that the duke, e'en in a distant land,  
May graciously assign him maintenance.  
Speak to Antonio; with my brother he  
Can much accomplish, and will not remember  
The recent strife against our friend or us.

LEONORA

Princess, a word from thee would have more power.

PRINCESS

I cannot, well thou knowest, Leonora,  
Solicit favours for myself and friends,  
As my dear sister of Urbino can.  
A calm, secluded life I'm fain to lead,

And from my brother gratefully accept,  
 Whate'er his princely bounty freely grants.  
 For this reluctance once I blam'd myself;  
 I've conquer'd now, and blame myself no more.  
 My friends too would oft censure me and say,  
 Unselfishness is doubtless beautiful,  
 But thou art so disinterested, that even  
 Thy friends' necessities thou can'st not feel.  
 I let it pass, and suffer'd the reproach.  
 I am the more rejoic'd that I can now  
 Be of substantial service to our friend;  
 My mother's heritage descends to me,  
 And to his need I'll gladly minister.

LEONORA

Princess, I too can show myself his friend  
 In truth he is no thrifty manager;  
 My skilful aid shall help him where he fails.

PRINCESS

Well take him then, — if I must part with him  
 'Fore all, I would resign him unto thee:  
 I now perceive, it will be better so.  
 This sorrow also must my spirit hail  
 As good and wholesome? Such my doom from youth;  
 I am inur'd to it. But half we feel  
 Renunciation of a precious joy,  
 When we have deem'd its tenure insecure.

LEONORA

Happy according to thy high desert  
 I hope to see thee.

PRINCESS

Leonora! Happy?

Who then is happy? — So indeed I might  
 Esteem my brother, for his constant mind  
 Still with unswerving temper meets his fate;  
 Yet even he ne'er reap'd as he deserv'd.  
 My sister of Urbino, is she happy?  
 With beauty gifted and a noble heart!



Childless she's doom'd to live; her younger lord  
 Values her highly and upbraids her not;  
 But happiness is stranger to their home.  
 Of what avail our mother's prudent skill,  
 Her varied knowledge and her ample mind?  
 Could they protect from foreign heresy?  
 We were ta'en from her: now she is no more  
 And dying, left us not the soothing thought,  
 That reconcil'd with God, her spirit pass'd.

#### LEONORA

Oh mark not only that which fails to each;  
 Consider rather what to each remains!  
 And Princess, what doth not remain to thee?

#### PRINCESS

What doth remain to me, Leonora? Patience!  
 Which I have learn'd to practise from my youth.  
 When friends and kindred, knit in social love,  
 In joyous pastime wil'd the hours away,  
 Sickness held me a captive in my chamber;  
 And in the sad companionship of pain,  
 I early learn'd the lesson; — to endure!  
 One pleasure cheer'd me in my solitude,  
 The joy of song. I commun'd with myself,  
 And lull'd with soothing tones, the sense of pain,  
 The restless longing, the unquiet wish; —  
 Till sorrow oft would grow to ravishment,  
 And sadness self to harmony divine.  
 Not long, alas! this comfort was allow'd,  
 The leech's stern monition silenc'd me;  
 I was condemned to live and to endure  
 E'en of this sole remaining joy bereft.

#### LEONORA

Yet many friends attach'd themselves to thee,  
 And now thou art in health, and joyous too.

#### PRINCESS

I am in health, that is, I am not sick;  
 And many friends I have, whose constancy  
 Doth cheer my heart; and ah, I had a friend —

## LEONORA

Thou hast him still.

## PRINCESS

But soon must part with him.  
That moment was of deep significance  
When first I saw him. Scarce was I restor'd  
From many sorrows; sickness and dull pain  
Were scarce subdued, with shy and timid glance  
I gaz'd once more on life, once more rejoic'd  
In the glad sunshine, and my kindred's love,  
And hope's delicious balm inhal'd anew;  
Forwards I ventur'd into life to gaze,  
And friendly forms saluted me from far:  
Then was it, Leonora, that my sister  
First introduc'd to me the youthful bard,  
She led him hither, and, shall I confess? —  
My heart embrac'd him, and will hold for aye.

## LEONORA

My Princess! Let it not repent thee now!  
To apprehend the noble is a gain  
Of which the soul can never be bereft.

## PRINCESS

E'en what is excellent we needs must fear;  
'Tis like a flame, which nobly serveth us  
So long as on our household hearth it burns,  
Or sheds its lustre from the friendly torch.  
How lovely then! Who can dispense with it?  
But if unwatch'd, it spreads destruction round,  
What anguish it occasions! Leave me now  
I babble, and 'twere better to conceal  
Even from thee, how weak I am and sick.

## LEONORA

The sickness of the heart doth soonest yield  
To tender complaints, and soothing confidence.

## PRINCESS

If in confiding love a cure be found,  
 I'm whole, so strong my confidence in thee.  
 Alas! my friend, I am indeed resolv'd;  
 Let him depart! But ah! I feel already  
 The long protracted anguish of the day  
 When I must all forego that glads me now.  
 His beauteous form, transfigur'd in my dream,  
 The morning sun will dissipate no more;  
 No more the blissful hope of seeing him,  
 With joyous longing, fill my waking sense;  
 Nor to discover him, my timid glance  
 Search wistfully our garden's dewy shade.  
 How sweetly was the tender hope fulfill'd  
 To spend each eve in intercourse with him!  
 How, while conversing, the desire increas'd,  
 To know each other ever more and more;  
 And still our souls, in sweet communion join'd  
 Were daily tun'd to purer harmonies.  
 What twilight-gloom now falls around my path!  
 The gorgeous sun, the genial light of day,  
 Of this fair world the splendours manifold,  
 Shorn of their lustre, are envelop'd all,  
 In the dark mist, which now environs me.  
 In by-gone times, each day compris'd a life;  
 Hush'd was each care, mute each foreboding voice.  
 And happily embark'd, we drifted on  
 Without a rudder, o'er life's lucid wave.  
 Now, in the darkness of the present hour,  
 Futurity's vague terrors seize my soul.

## LEONORA

The future will restore to thee thy friend;  
 And thou wilt find new happiness, new joy.

## PRINCESS

What I possess, that would I gladly hold;  
 Change may divert the mind, but profits not.  
 With youthful longings I have never join'd  
 The motley throng who strive from fortune's urn

To snatch an object for their craving hearts,  
 I honour'd him, and could not choose but love him,  
 For that with him my life was life indéed,  
 Filled with a joy I never knew before.  
 At first I whisper'd to my heart, beware!  
 Shrinking I shunn'd, yet ever drew more near.  
 So gently lur'd, so cruelly chastis'd!  
 A pure substantial blessing glides away,  
 And for the joy that filled my yearning heart,  
 Some demon substitutes a kindred pain.

### LEONORA

If friendship's soothing words console thee not  
 This beauteous world's, calm power, and healing time,  
 Will imperceptibly restore thy heart.

### PRINCESS

Ay, beauteous is the world, and many a joy  
 Floats through its wide dominion. But, alas,  
 When we would seize the winged good, it flies,  
 And, step by step, along the path of life  
 Allures our yearning spirits to the grave.  
 To mortal man so seldom is it given  
 To find what seem'd his heav'n-appointed bliss;  
 Alas, so seldom he retains the good  
 Which, in auspicious hour, his hand had grasp'd;  
 The treasure to our heart that came unsought  
 Doth tear itself away, and we ourselves  
 Yield that which once with eagerness we seiz'd.  
 There is a bliss, but 'tis to us unknown—  
 'Tis known indeed, but yet we prize it not.

### SCENE III

#### LEONORA, (*alone*)

The good and noble heart my pity moves;  
 How sad a lot attends her lofty rank!  
 Alas she loses, — thinkest thou to win?  
 Is his departure hence so requisite?  
 Or dost thou urge it for thyself alone, —  
 To make the heart and lofty genius thin;

Which now thou sharest, — and unequally?  
 Is't honest so to act? What lack'st thou yet?  
 Art thou not rich enough? Husband and son,  
 Possessions, beauty, rank — all these thou hast,  
 And him would'st have beside? What! Lov'st thou him?  
 How comes it else that thou can'st not endure  
 To live without him? This thou dar'st confess!  
 How charming is it in his mind's clear depths  
 Oneself to mirror. Doth not ev'ry joy  
 Seem doubly great and noble, when his song  
 Wafts us aloft as on the clouds of heav'n?  
 Then first thy lot is worthy to be envied!  
 Not only hast thou what the many crave,  
 But each one knoweth what thou art and hast!  
 Thy fatherland doth proudly speak thy name;  
 This is the pinnacle of earthly bliss.  
 Is Laura's then the only favour'd name  
 That aye from gentle lips shall sweetly flow?  
 Is it Petrarca's privilege alone,  
 To deify an unknown beauty's charms?  
 Who is there that with Tasso can compare?  
 As now the world exalts him, future time  
 With honour due shall magnify his name.  
 What rapture, in the golden prime of life  
 To feel his presence, and with him to near,  
 With airy tread, the future's hidden realm!  
 Thus should old age and time their influence lose,  
 And powerless be the voice of rumour bold,  
 Whose breath controls the billows of applause.  
 All that is transient in his song survives;  
 Still art thou young, still happy, when the round  
 Of changeful time shall long have borne thee on.  
 Him thou shalt have, and yet take nought from her.  
 For her affection to the gifted man  
 Doth take the hue her other passions wear;  
 Pale as the tranquil moon, whose feeble rays  
 Dimly illumine the night-wanderer's path,  
 They gleam, but warm not, and diffuse around  
 No blissful rapture, no keen sense of joy.  
 If she but know him happy, though afar,  
 She will rejoice as when she saw him daily,

And then, tis not my purpose from this court,  
 And her, to banish both myself and friend.  
 I will return, will bring him here again.  
 So let it be! — My rugged friend draws near;  
 We soon shall see if we have power to tame him.

#### SCENE IV

LEONORA.      ANTONIO

LEONORA

War and not peace thou bringest. 'Twould appear  
 As though thou camest from the tented field,  
 Where violence bears sway, and force decides,  
 And not from Rome, where solemn policy  
 Uplifts the hand to bless a prostrate world  
 Which she beholds obedient at her feet.

ANTONIO

I must admit the censure, my fair friend,  
 But my apology lies close at hand;  
 'Tis dangerous to be compell'd so long  
 To wear the show of prudence and restraint.  
 Still at our side an evil genius lurks  
 And with stern voice, demands from time to time  
 A sacrifice, which I alas to day  
 Have offer'd, to the peril of my friends.

LEONORA

So long hast thou with strangers been concern'd,  
 And to their humours hast conform'd thine own,  
 That when with friends thou dost mistake their aims,  
 And dost contend with them as they were strangers?

ANTONIO

Herein, beloved friend, the danger lies!  
 With strangers we are ever on our guard,  
 Still are we aiming with observance due,  
 To win their favour, which may profit us;  
 But with our friends, we throw off all restraint;  
 Reposing in their love, we give the rein

To peevish humour; passion uncontroll'd  
Doth break its bounds; and those we hold most dear  
Are thus amongst the first whom we offend.

LEONORA

In this calm utterance of a thoughtful mind  
I gladly recognize my friend again.

ANTONIO

Yes, it has much annoy'd me, I confess,  
That I so far forgot myself to day.  
But yet admit, that when some man of toil,  
From irksome labour comes, with heated brow,  
Thinking to rest himself for further toil,  
Beneath the long'd-for shade, in the cool evening;  
And finds it, in its length and breadth, possess'd  
Already, by some idler, he may well,  
Feel something human stirring in his breast?

LEONORA

If he is truly human, then, methinks,  
He gladly will partake the shade with one  
Who lightens toil, and cheers the hour of rest,  
With sweet discourse and soothing melodies.  
Ample, my friend, for both, the spreading shade,  
Nor either needs the other dispossess.

ANTONIO

We will not bandy similes, fair friend.  
The world containeth many things that we  
To others freely yield and with them share;  
But there exists one treasure we resign  
With willing hearts to high desert alone;  
Another too, that without secret grudge,  
We share not even with the highest worth.  
And would'st thou touching these two treasures ask,  
They are the laurel, and fair woman's smile.

LEONORA

How! Hath yon chaplet round our stripling's brow  
Giv'n umbrage to the grave, experienc'd, man?

Say, for his toil divine, his lofty verse,  
 Could'st thou thyself a juster meed select?  
 A ministration in itself divine,  
 That floateth in the air in tuneful tones,  
 Evoking airy forms to charm our souls —  
 Such ministration, in expressive form,  
 Or graceful symbol, finds its fit reward.  
 As doth the bard scarce deign to touch the earth,  
 So doth the laurel lightly touch his brow.  
 His worshippers, with barren homage, bring  
 As tribute meet, a fruitless branch, that thus  
 With ease they may acquit them of their debt.  
 Thou dost not grudge the martyr's effigy,  
 The golden radiance round the naked head;  
 And, certes, where it rests, the laurel crown  
 Is more a sign of sorrow than of joy.

#### ANTONIO

How, Leonora! Would thy lovely lips  
 Teach me to scorn the world's poor vanities?

#### LEONORA

There is no need, my friend, to tutor thee  
 To prize each good according to its worth.  
 Yet it would seem, that e'en like common men,  
 The sage philosopher, from time to time,  
 Needs that the treasures he is blest withal,  
 In their true light before him be display'd.  
 Thou, noble man, wilt not assert thy claim  
 To a mere empty phantom of renown.  
 The service that doth bind thy prince to thee,  
 By means of which thou dost attach thy friends,  
 Is true, is living service, hence the meed  
 Which doth reward it, must be living too.  
 Thy laurel is thy sovereign's confidence,  
 Which, like a cherish'd burden, gracefully,  
 Reposes on thy shoulders, — thy renown,  
 Thy crown of glory, is the general trust.

#### ANTONIO

Thou speakest not of woman's smile, that, surely,  
 Thou wilt not tell us is superfluous. ♀



## LEONORA

As people take it. Thou dost lack it not;  
 And were ye both depriv'd of it, methinks,  
 Thou would'st less miss it, than our youthful friend.  
 For, should a woman undertake to task  
 Her skill in thy behalf, to care for thee  
 In her own fashion, think'st thou she'd succeed?  
 With thee security and order dwell;  
 And as for others, for thyself thou carest;  
 Thou dost possess what friendship fain would give;  
 Whilst in our province he requires our aid.  
 A thousand things he needs, which to supply,  
 Is to a woman no unwelcome task.  
 The fine-spun linen, the embroider'd vest,  
 He weareth gladly, and endureth not,  
 Upon his person, aught of texture rude,  
 Such as befits the menial. For with him  
 All must be rich and noble, fair and good;  
 And yet all this to win, he lacks the skill;  
 Nor even when possess'd, can he retain;  
 Improvident, he's still in want of gold;  
 Nor from a journey e'er returneth home,  
 But a third portion of his goods is lost.  
 His valet plunders him, and thus, Antonio,  
 The whole year round one has to care for him.

## ANTONIO

And these same cares endear him more and more.  
 Much favour'd youth, to whom his very faults  
 As virtues count, to whom it is allow'd  
 As man to play the boy, and who forsooth  
 May proudly boast his charming weaknesses!  
 Thou must forgive me, my fair friend, if here  
 Some little touch of bitterness I feel.  
 Thou say'st not all, say'st not how he presumes,  
 And proves himself far shrewder than he seems.  
 He boasts two tender flames! The knots of love,  
 As fancy prompts him, he doth bind and loose,  
 And wins with such devices two such hearts!  
 Is't credible?

## LEONORA

Well! Well! This only proves  
 That 'tis but friendship that inspires our hearts.  
 And e'en if we return'd him love for love,  
 Should we not well reward his noble heart,  
 Who, self-oblivious, dreams his life away  
 In lovely visions to enchant his friends?

## ANTONIO

Go on! Go on! Spoil him yet more and more;  
 Account his selfish vanity for love;  
 Offend all other friends, with honest zeal  
 Devoted to your service; rend apart  
 The golden links of social confidence!

## LEONORA

We are not quite so partial as thou think'st;  
 In many cases we exhort our friend.  
 We wish to mould his mind, that he may know  
 More happiness himself, and be a source  
 Of purer joy to others. What in him  
 Doth merit blame, is not conceal'd from us.

## ANTONIO

Yet much that's blamable in him ye praise.  
 I've known him long, so easy 'tis to know him,  
 For he's too proud to wear the least disguise.  
 We see him now retire into himself,  
 As if the world were rounded in his breast;  
 Lost in the working of that inner world,  
 The outward universe he casts aside,  
 And his rapt spirit, self-included, rests.  
 Anon, as when a spark doth fire a mine,  
 Upon a touch of sorrow or of joy,  
 Anger or whim, he breaks impetuous forth.  
 Now he must compass all things, all retain,  
 All his caprices must be realiz'd;  
 What should have ripen'd slowly through long years,  
 Must, in a moment, reach maturity;  
 And obstacles, which years of patient toil

Could scarce remove, be levell'd in a trice.  
 He from himself th' impossible demands,  
 That he from others may demand it too;  
 Th' extremest limits of existing things  
 His soul would hold in contiguity.  
 This one man in a million scarce achieves,  
 And he is not that man; at length he falls  
 No whit the better, back into himself.

LEONORA

Himself alone he injures, others not.

ANTONIO

Yet others he doth outrage grievously.  
 Can'st thou deny that in his passion's height,  
 Which o'er his spirit oft usurps control,  
 He hurls abuse at random, and doth load  
 The Prince and e'en the Princess, with reviling?  
 True, for a moment only it endures;  
 But then the moment quickly comes again.  
 His tongue, as little as his breast, he rules.

LEONORA

To me, indeed, it seems advisable,  
 That he should leave Ferrara for awhile; —  
 T'would benefit himself and others too.

ANTONIO

Perchance, — perchance too not. But now, my friend,  
 It is not to be thought of. For myself,  
 I will not on my shoulders bear the blame.  
 It might appear as if I drove him hence.  
 I drive him not. As far as I'm concern'd,  
 He at the court may tarry undisturb'd;  
 And if he will be reconcil'd with us,  
 And school himself to follow my advice,  
 We may live peaceably enough together.

LEONORA

Now thou dost hope to work upon a mind  
 Which lately thou didst look upon as lost.

## ANTONIO

We always hope, and still in ev'ry case,  
 Tis better far to hope than to despair;  
 For who can calculate the possible?  
 Our Prince esteems him; he must stay with us;  
 And if we strive to fashion him in vain  
 He's not the only one we must endure.

## LEONORA

So free from passion and from prejudice  
 I had not thought thee; — thy conversion's sudden

## ANTONIO

Age must, my friend, this one advantage claim,  
 That, though from error it be not exempt,  
 Its balance it recovers speedily.  
 Thou didst at first essay to heal the breach  
 Between thy friend and me. I urge it now.  
 Do what thou can'st to bring him to himself,  
 And to restore things to their wonted calm.  
 Myself will visit him, when I shall know,  
 From thee, that he is tranquil, when thou think'st  
 My presence will not aggravate the ill.  
 But what thou dost, that do within the hour;  
 Alphonso will return to town ere night.  
 I must attend him there. Meanwhile, farewell.

## SCENE V

LEONORA, (*alone*)

For once, dear friend, we are not of one mind,  
 Our separate interests go not hand in hand.  
 I'll use the time to compass my design,  
 And will endeavour to win Tasso. Quick!



# ACT THE FOURTH

## SCENE I

### *A Chamber*

TASSO, (*alone*)

Art thou awaken'd from a dream, and is  
 The fair delusion suddenly dissolv'd?  
 In the fruition of the highest joy  
 Has sleep o'ermaster'd thee, and does it yet  
 Torture and bind thy soul with heavy chains?  
 Ay, thou'rt awake and dream'st. Where now the hours  
 That round thy brow with flow'ry garlands play'd?  
 The days when unrestrain'd thy yearning soul  
 Freely explor'd the heaven's o'erarching blue?  
 Thou'rt living still, art sensible to touch,  
 Feelest, yet know'st not if thou livest still.  
 Say, for mine own, or for another's fault,  
 Am I, as criminal, thus captive here?  
 Have I been guilty that I suffer thus?  
 Is not my fancied crime a merit rather?  
 With kindly feeling I encounter'd him,  
 Persuaded, by the heart's delusive hope,  
 He must be man who bears a mortal form;  
 With open arms I sped to his embrace,  
 And felt no human breast, but bolts and bars.  
 Oh, had I but with prudent forecast weigh'd,  
 How I most fitly could receive the man,  
 Who from the first inspir'd me with mistrust!  
 Let me, however, whatsoe'er betide,  
 For ever to this one assurance cling: —  
 'Twas she herself! She stood before my view!  
 She spoke to me! I hearken'd to her voice!  
 Her look, her tone, her words' sweet import, these,  
 These are for ever mine; nor time nor fate,  
 Nor ruthless chance can plunder me of these!  
 And if my spirit hath too swiftly soar'd,  
 If all too promptly in my breast I gave

Vent to the flame which now consumes my heart,  
 So let it be, — I never can repent,  
 E'en though my fortune were for ever wreck'd.  
 To her devoted, I obey'd with joy  
 The hand that beckon'd me to ruin's brink.  
 So let it be! Thus have I prov'd myself  
 Deserving of the precious confidence  
 That cheers my soul, — ay, cheers it in this hour,  
 When cruel fate unlocks the sable gates  
 Of long-protracted woe. — Yes, now tis done!  
 For me the radiant sun of fortune sets,  
 Never to rise again; his glance benign  
 The Prince withdraws, and leaves me standing here,  
 Abandon'd on this narrow, gloomy path.  
 The hateful and ill-boding feather'd throng,  
 Obscene attendants upon ancient night,  
 Swarm forth and whirl round my devoted head.  
 Whither, oh whither, shall I bend my steps,  
 To shun the loathsome brood that round me flit,  
 And 'scape the dread abyss that yawns before?

## SCENE II

LEONORA.      TASSO

LEONORA

Dear Tasso, what hath chanc'd? Hath passion's glow,  
 Hath thy suspicious temper urged thee thus?  
 How has it happen'd? We are all amaz'd.  
 Where now thy gentleness, thy suavity,  
 Thy rapid insight, thy discernment just,  
 Which doth award to every man his due;  
 Thine even mind, which beareth, what to bear  
 The wise are prompt, the vain are slow, to learn;  
 The prudent mast'ry over lip and tongue?  
 I scarcely recognize thee now, dear friend.

TASSO

And what if all were gone, for ever gone!  
 If as a beggar thou should'st meet the friend  
 Whom just before thou had'st deem'd opulent!

Thou speakest truth, I am no more myself,  
 Yet am I now as much so as I was.  
 It seems a riddle, yet it is not one.  
 The tranquil moon, that cheers thee through the night,  
 Whose gentle radiance, with resistless power,  
 Allures thine eye, thy soul, doth float by day  
 An insignificant and pallid cloud.  
 In the bright glare of daylight I am lost,  
 Ye know me not, I scarcely know myself.

LEONORA

Such words, dear friend, as thou hast utter'd them,  
 I cannot comprehend. Explain thyself.  
 Say, hath that rugged man's offensive speech  
 So deeply wounded thee, that now thou dost  
 Misjudge thyself and us? Confide in me.

TASSO

I'm not the one offended. Me thou seest  
 Thus punish'd here because I gave offence.  
 The knot of many words the sword would loose  
 With promptitude and ease, but I'm not free.  
 Thou'rt scarce aware, — nay, start not, gentle friend, —  
 'Tis in a prison thou dost meet me here.  
 Me, as a schoolboy, doth the Prince chastise. —  
 His right I neither can, nor will dispute.

LEONORA

Thou seemest mov'd beyond what reason warrants.

TASSO

Dost deem me then so weak, so much a child,  
 That this occurrence could o'erwhelm me thus?  
 Not what has happen'd wounds me to the quick,  
 'Tis what it doth portend, that troubles me.  
 Now let my foes conspire! The field is clear.

LEONORA

Many thou holdest falsely in suspect;  
 Of this, dear friend, I have convinc'd myself.  
 Even Antonio bears thee no ill-will  
 As thou presum'st. The quarrel of to-day —



## TASSO

Let that be set aside; I only view  
 Antonio as he was and yet remains.  
 Still hath his formal wisdom fretted me,  
 His proud assumption of the master's tone.  
 Careless to learn whether the list'ner's mind  
 Does not itself the better track pursue,  
 He tutors thee in much which thou thyself  
 More truly, deeply feelest; gives no heed  
 To what thou sayest, and perverts thy words.  
 Misconstrued thus by a proud man, forsooth,  
 Who smiles superior from his fancied height  
 I am not yet or old or wise enough  
 To answer meekly with a patient smile.  
 It could not hold, we must at last have broken;  
 The evil greater had it been postpon'd.  
 One lord I recognize, who fosters me,  
 Him I obey, but own no master else.  
 In poesy and thought I will be free,  
 In act the world doth limit us enough.

## LEONORA

Yet often with respect he speaks of thee.

## TASSO

Thou meanest with forbearance, prudent, subtle.  
 'Tis that annoys me; for he knows to use  
 Language so smooth and so conditional,  
 That seeming praise from him is actual blame,  
 And there is nothing so offends my soul,  
 As words of commendation from his lips.

## LEONORA

Thou should'st have heard but lately how he spoke  
 Of thee and of the gift which bounteous nature  
 So largely hath conferr'd on thee. He feels  
 Thy genius, Tasso, and esteems thy worth.

## TASSO

Trust me, no selfish spirit can escape  
 The torment of base envy. Such a man

Pardons in others honour, rank, and wealth;  
 For thus he argues, these thou hast thyself,  
 Or thou can'st have them, if thou persevere,  
 Or if propitious fortune smile on thee.  
 But that which Nature can alone bestow,  
 Which aye remaineth inaccessible  
 To toil and patient effort, which nor gold,  
 Nor yet the sword, nor stern persistency  
 Hath power to wrest, — that he will ne'er forgive.  
 Not envy me? The pedant who aspires  
 To seize by force the favour of the muse?  
 Who, when he strings the thoughts of other bards,  
 Fondly presumes he is a bard himself?  
 The Prince's favour he would rather yield,  
 Though that he would fain limit to himself,  
 Than the rare gift which the celestial powers  
 Have granted to the poor, the orphan youth.

#### LEONORA

Oh, that thy vision were as clear as mine!  
 Thou read'st him wrongly, thou'rt deceiv'd in him.

#### TASSO

And if I err, I err with right good will!  
 I count him for my most inveterate foe,  
 And should be inconsolable, were I  
 Compell'd to think of him more leniently.  
 'Tis foolish in all cases to be just;  
 It is to wrong oneself. Are other men  
 Toward us so equitable? No, oh no!  
 Man's nature, in its narrow scope, demands  
 The twofold sentiment of love and hate.  
 Requires he not the grateful interchange  
 Of day and night, of wakefulness and sleep?  
 No, from henceforward I do hold this man  
 The object of my direst enmity;  
 And nought can snatch from me the cherish'd joy  
 Of thinking ever worse and worse of him.

#### LEONORA

Dear friend, I see not if this feeling last,

How thou can'st longer tarry at the court.  
Thou know'st the just esteem in which he's held.

## TASSO

I'm fully sensible, fair friend, how long  
I have already been superfluous here.

## LEONORA

That thou art not, that thou can'st never be!  
Thou rather knowest how both Prince and Princess  
Rejoice to have thee in their company.  
The sister of Urbino, comes she not,  
As much for thine as for her kindred's sake?  
They all esteem thee, recognize thy worth,  
And each confides in thee without reserve.

## TASSO

Oh, Leonora! Call that confidence!  
Of state affairs has he one single word,  
One earnest word, vouchsaf'd to speak with me?  
In special cases, when he has advis'd  
Both with the Princess, and with others too,  
To me, though present, no appeal was made.  
The cry was ever then, Antonio comes!  
Consult Antonio! To Antonio write!

## LEONORA

Thanks here, methinks, were juster than complaint.  
Thus in unchalleng'd freedom leaving thee,  
He to thy genius fitting homage pays.

## TASSO

He lets me rest, because he deems me useless.

## LEONORA

Thou art not useless, e'en though thou dost rest.  
Care and vexation, like a child beloved,  
Thou still dost cherish, Tasso, in thy breast.  
It oft has struck me, and the more I think  
The more convinc'd I feel; on this fair soil,

Where fate auspicious seem'd to plant thy lot,  
 Thou dost not flourish. — May I speak, my friend?  
 May I advise thee? — Thou should'st hence depart.

TASSO

Spare not thy patient, gentle leech! Extend  
 The draught medicinal, nor think thereon  
 If it is bitter. — This consider well,  
 Kind, prudent friend, if he can yet be cur'd!  
 I see it all myself, 'tis over now!  
 Him I indeed could pardon, he not me;  
 He's needful to them, I, alas! am not.  
 And he has prudence, I, alas! have none.  
 He worketh to my injury, and I  
 Cannot and will not counterwork. My friends  
 Leave things to chance, they see things differently,  
 They scarcely struggle, who should stoutly fight.  
 Thou think'st I should depart, I think so too; —  
 Then farewell, friends! — This, too, I must endure.  
 You're parted from me. — Oh, to me be given  
 The courage and the strength to part from you!

LEONORA

Seen from a distance things show less confus'd,  
 That in the present serve but to perplex.  
 Perchance, when absent, thou wilt recognize  
 The love which here environs thee, wilt learn  
 The worth of friends, and feel how the wide world  
 Cannot replace those dearest to the heart.

TASSO

I shall experience this! Alas, I've known  
 The world from early youth, how, pressing on,  
 She lightly leaves us, helpless and forlorn,  
 Like sun and moon and other deities.

LEONORA

Dear friend, if thou wilt lend an ear to me,  
 This sad experience thou wilt not repeat.  
 If I may counsel thee, thou wilt at first  
 Repair to Florence, — there thou'lt find a friend

Will cherish thee most kindly — 'tis myself!  
 Thither I travel soon to meet my lord,  
 And there is nothing would afford us, Tasso,  
 A richer pleasure than thy company.  
 I need not tell thee, for thyself dost know,  
 How noble is the Prince who ruleth there;  
 What men, what women too, our favour'd town  
 Doth cherish in her bosom. Thou art silent!  
 Consider well my counsel, and resolve!

## TASSO

Full of sweet promise are thy words, dear friend.  
 And in accordance with my secret wish.  
 But 'tis too sudden; let me pause awhile, —  
 Let me consider! I will soon resolve!

## LEONORA

I leave thee now, and with the fairest hopes  
 For thee, for us, and also for this house.  
 Only reflect, and weigh the matter well,  
 Scarcely wilt thou devise a better plan.

## TASSO

Yet one thing more, tell me, beloved friend,  
 How is the Princess minded towards me? Speak!  
 Was she displeas'd with me? Give me her words. —  
 Hath she severely blam'd me? Tell me all!

## LEONORA

She knows thee well, and therefore has excus'd thee.

## TASSO

Say, have I lost her friendship? Flatter not.

## LEONORA

A woman's friendship's not so lightly lost.

## TASSO

And will she let me go without reluctance?

## LEONORA

If 'twill promote thy welfare, certainly.

## TASSO

Shall I not lose the favour of the Prince?

## LEONORA

His nature's noble, thou may'st trust in him.

## TASSO

And shall we leave the Princess all alone?  
Thou leavest her; and though perhaps not much,  
I know full well that I was something to her.

## LEONORA

An absent friend is sweet society,  
When of his happiness we're well assur'd.  
My plan succeeds, I see thee happy now;  
Thou wilt not depart hence unsatisfied.  
The Prince commands; — Antonio seeks thee, Tasso.  
He censures in himself the bitterness  
With which he wounded thee. I do entreat,  
Receive him with forbearance when he comes.

## TASSO

I have no cause to shun the interview.

## LEONORA

And oh! dear friend, that Heaven would grant me this,  
To make it clear to thee ere thou departest,  
That in thy Fatherland there is not one  
Pursues thee, hates, or covertly molests.  
Thou art deceiv'd, and as for others' pleasure  
Thou'rt wont to practise thine inventive art,  
So in this case thou weav'st a cunning web  
To blind thyself, the which to rend asunder  
I'll do mine utmost, that with vision clear  
Thou may'st pursue life's glad career untrammell'd.  
Farewell! I hope for happy words ere long.

## SCENE III

TASSO, (*alone*)

I must believe, forsooth, that no one hates me, —  
 That no one persecutes, that all the guile,  
 The subtle malice that environs me,  
 Is but the coinage of my own sick brain  
 I must acknowledge that myself am wrong!  
 And that tow'ards many who deserve it not  
 I've been unjust! What! This confess e'en now,  
 When clearly in the open face of day,  
 Appear their malice and my rectitude!  
 I ought to feel most deeply how the Prince  
 With gen'rous breast his sov'reign grace imparts,  
 And in rich measure loads me with his gifts,  
 Though at the very time he has the weakness  
 To let his eyes be blinded by my foes,  
 Yea, doubtless, and his arms be fetter'd too!

His own delusion he cannot perceive,  
 That they're deluders I may not reveal;  
 And that he may uncheck'd delude himself,  
 And they delude him whensoever they please,  
 I still must hold my peace, — must yield forsooth!

And who thus counsels me? With prudent zeal,  
 And thoughtful kindness, who doth urge me thus?  
 Leonora's self, Leonora Sanvitale,  
 Considerate friend! Ha, ha, I know thee now!  
 Oh, wherefore did I ever trust her words?  
 She was not honest, when she utter'd forth  
 With honied lip, her grace and tenderness!  
 No, she has always had a crafty heart,  
 With prudent step she turns where fortune smiles.

How often have I willingly deceiv'd  
 Myself in her! And yet it was in truth  
 But mine own vanity deluded me!  
 I knew her, but self-flatter'd, argued thus: —  
 True, she is so towards others, but towards thee  
 Her heart is honest, her intention pure.  
 Mine eyes are open now, — alas, too late!  
 I was in favour — on the favourite

How tenderly she fawn'd! I'm fallen now,  
And she, like fortune, turns her back on me.

Yes, now she comes, the agent of my foe,  
She glides along, the little artful snake,  
Hissing, with slipp'ry tongue, her magic tones.  
How fair, more fair than ever she appear'd!  
How soothingly her honied accents flow'd!  
Yet could the flatt'ry not conceal from me  
The false intention; on her brow appear'd  
Too legibly inscrib'd the opposite  
Of all she utter'd. Quick am I to feel  
Whene'er the entrance to my heart is sought  
With a dishonest purpose. I should hence!  
Should hie to Florence, with convenient speed!

And why to Florence? Ah, I see it all.  
There reigns the rising house of Medici;  
True, with Ferrara not in open feud,  
But secret rivalry, with chilling hand,  
Doth hold asunder e'en the noblest hearts.  
If from those noble princes I should reap  
Distinguish'd marks of favour, as indeed  
I've reason to expect, the courtiers here  
Would soon impugn my gratitude and truth;  
And would, with easy wile, achieve their purpose.

Yes, I will go, but not as ye desire;  
I will away, and farther than ye think.

Why should I linger? Who detains me here?  
Too well I understood each several word  
That I drew forth from Leonora's lips!  
With anxious heed each syllable I caught;  
And now I fully know the Princess' mind —  
That too is certain; let me not despair!  
"Without reluctance she will let me go,  
If 'twill promote my welfare." Would her heart  
Were master'd by a passion that would overwhelm  
Me and my welfare! Oh, more welcome far  
The grasp of death than of the frigid hand  
That passively resigns me! — Yes, I go! —  
Now be upon thy guard, and let no show



Of love or friendship blind thee! None hath power  
Now to deceive thee, if not self-deceiv'd.

#### SCENE IV

ANTONIO.      TASSO

ANTONIO

Tasso, I come to say a word to thee,  
If thou'rt dispos'd to hear me tranquilly.

TASSO

I am denied, thou know'st, the power to act;  
It well becomes me to attend and listen.

ANTONIO

Tranquil I find thee, as I hop'd to find,  
And speak to thee in all sincerity.  
But in the Prince's name I first dissolve  
The slender band that seem'd to fetter thee.

TASSO

Caprice dissolves it, as caprice impos'd;  
I yield, and no judicial sentence claim.

ANTONIO

Next, Tasso, on my own behalf I speak.  
I have, it seems, more deeply wounded thee,  
Than I, — myself by divers passions mov'd, —  
Was conscious of. But no insulting word  
Hath from my lip incautiously escap'd.  
Thy honour, as a noble, is untouch'd,  
And, as a man, thou'lt not refuse thy pardon.

TASSO

Whether contempt or insult galls the most  
I will not now determine. That doth pierce  
The inmost marrow, this but frets the skin.  
The shaft of insult back returns to him.  
Who wing'd the missile, and the practis'd sword  
Soon reconciles the opinion of the world —

A wounded heart is difficult to cure.

ANTONIO

'Tis now my turn to press thee urgently;  
Oh, step not back, yield to mine earnest wish,  
The Prince's wish, who sends me unto thee.

TASSO

I know the claims of duty, and submit.  
Be it, as far as possible, forgiv'n!  
The poets tell us of a magic spear,  
Which could, by friendly contact, heal the wound  
Itself had giv'n. The tongue hath such a power;  
I will not peevishly resist it now.

ANTONIO

I thank thee, and desire that thou at once  
Would'st put my wish to serve thee to the proof.  
Then say if I in aught can pleasure thee; —  
Most gladly will I do so; therefore speak.

TASSO

Thine offer tallies with my secret wish.  
But now thou hast restor'd my liberty,  
Procure for me, I pray, the use of it.

ANTONIO

What meanest thou? more plainly state thy wish.

TASSO

My poem, as thou knowest, I have ended;  
Yet much it wants to render it complete.  
To-day I gave it to the Prince, and hop'd  
At the same time to proffer my request.  
Full many of my friends I now should find  
In Rome assembled; they have written me  
Their judgments touching various passages;  
Many of their suggestions I could use,  
Others require reflection, and some lines  
I should be loath to alter, till at least ,

My judgment has been better satisfied.  
 All this by letter cannot be arrang'd,  
 While intercourse would soon untie the knots.  
 I thought myself to ask the Prince to-day,  
 But miss'd th' occasion; now, I dare not venture,  
 And must for this permission trust to thee.

ANTONIO

It seems imprudent to absent thyself  
 Just now, when thy completed work commends thee  
 Both to the Prince and Princess. When the sun  
 Of fortune smiles, 'tis like a harvest-day; —  
 We should be busy when the corn is ripe.  
 Nought wilt thou win if thou departest hence,  
 Perchance thou'lt lose what thou hast won already.  
 Presence is still a powerful deity, —  
 Learn to respect her influence, — tarry here.

TASSO

I've nought to fear; Alphonso's soul is noble,  
 Such hath he always prov'd himself tow'rds me; —  
 To his heart only will I owe the boon  
 Which now I crave. By no mean, servile arts  
 Will I obtain his favour. Nought will I receive  
 Which it can e'er repent him to have given.

ANTONIO

Then do not now solicit leave to go;  
 He will not willingly accord thy suit,  
 And much I fear he will reject it, Tasso.

TASSO

Duly entreated, he will grant my prayer;  
 Thou hast the power to move him if thou wilt.

ANTONIO

But what sufficient reason shall I urge?

TASSO

Let every stanza of my poem speak!  
 The scope was lofty that I aim'd to reach,

Though to my genius inaccessible.  
 Labour and strenuous effort have not fail'd;  
 The cheerful stroll of many a lovely day,  
 The silent watch of many a solemn night,  
 Have to this pious lay been consecrate.  
 With modest daring I aspir'd to near  
 The mighty masters of the olden time;  
 With lofty courage plann'd to rouse the age  
 From lengthen'd sleep, to deeds of high emprise;  
 Then with a christian host I hop'd to share  
 The toil and glory of a holy war.  
 And that my song may rouse the noblest men  
 It must be worthy of its lofty aim.  
 What worth it hath is to Alphonso due;  
 For its completion I would owe him thanks.

#### ANTONIO

The Prince himself is here, with other men  
 Able as those of Rome to be thy guides;  
 Here is thy station, here complete thy work;  
 Then haste to Rome to carry out thy plan.

#### TASSO

Alphonso first inspir'd my muse, and he  
 Will be the last to counsel me. Thy judgment,  
 The judgment also of the learned men  
 Assembled at our court, I highly value;  
 Ye shall determine when my friends at Rome  
 Fail to produce conviction in my mind.  
 But them I must consult. Gonzaga there  
 Has summon'd a tribunal before which  
 I must present myself. I scarce can wait.  
 Flaminio dé Nobili, Angelio  
 Da Barga, Antoniano, and Speron Speroni!  
 They're surely known to thee. — What names they are!  
 They in my soul, which bows in reverence,  
 Inspire at once both confidence and fear.

#### ANTONIO

Self-occupied, thou think'st not of the Prince.  
 I tell thee that he will not let thee go;

And if he does 'twill be against his wish.  
 Thou wilt not urge what he is loath to grant;  
 And shall I mediate when I can't approve?

TASSO

Dost thou refuse me then my first request  
 When I would put thy friendship to the proof?

ANTONIO

Timely denial is the surest test  
 Of genuine friendship; love doth oft confer  
 A baneful good, when it consults the wish,  
 And not the happiness of him who sues.  
 Thou in this moment dost appear to me  
 To overprize the object of thy wish,  
 Which, on the instant, thou would'st have fulfil'd.  
 The erring man would oft by vehemence  
 Compensate what he lacks in truth and power;  
 Duty enjoins me now, with all my might,  
 To check the rashness that would lead thee wrong.

TASSO

I long have known this tyranny of friendship,  
 Which of all tyrannies appears to me  
 The least endurable. Because forsooth  
 Our judgments differ, thine must needs be right;  
 I gladly own that thou dost wish my welfare,  
 Require me not to seek it in thy way.

ANTONIO

And would'st thou have me, Tasso, in cold blood,  
 With full and clear conviction injure thee?

TASSO

I will at once absolve thee from this care!  
 Thou hast no power to hold me with thy words.  
 Thou hast declar'd me free; these doors which lead  
 Straight to the Prince, stand open to me now.  
 The choice I leave to thee. Or thou or I!  
 The Prince goes forth, no time is to be lost;  
 Determine promptly! Dost thou still refuse,  
 I go myself, let come of it what will.

## ANTONIO

A little respite grant me; — not to-day;  
Wait I beseech thee till the Prince returns!

## TASSO

If it were possible, this very hour!  
My soles are scorch'd upon this marble floor,  
Nor can my spirit rest until the dust  
Of the free highway shrouds the fugitive.  
I do entreat thee! How unfit I am  
Now to appear before the Prince thou seest,  
And thou must see, how can I hide from thee,  
That I'm no longer master of myself?  
No power on earth can sway my energies,  
Fetters alone can hold me in control.  
No tyrant is the Prince, he spoke me free.  
Once to his words how gladly I gave ear!  
To-day to hearken is impossible.  
O let me have my freedom but to-day,  
That my vex'd spirit may regain its peace.  
Back to my duty I will soon return.

## ANTONIO

Thou mak'st me dubious. How shall I resolve?  
That error is contagious, I perceive.

## TASSO

If thy professions I'm to count sincere,  
Perform what I desire, as well thou can'st.  
Then will the Prince release me; and I lose  
Neither his favour nor his gracious aid.  
For that I'll thank thee, ay, with cordial thanks.  
But if thy bosom bear an ancient grudge,  
Would'st thou for ever banish me this court,  
For ever would'st thou mar my destiny,  
And drive me friendless forth into the world,  
Then hold thy purpose and resist my prayer!

## ANTONIO

Oh, Tasso, — for I'm doom'd to injure thee,  
I choose the way which thou thyself dost-choose;

The issue will determine which is wrong!  
 Thou wilt away; I warn thee ere thou goest;  
 Scarce shalt thou turn thy back upon this house,  
 Ere thou shalt yearn in spirit to return,  
 While wilful humour still shall urge thee on.  
 Sorrow, distraction, and desponding gloom  
 In Rome await thee. There as well as here  
 Thou'lt miss thy aim. But this I do not say  
 To counsel thee; alas! I but predict  
 What soon will happen, and invite thee, Tasso,  
 In the worst exigence to trust to me.  
 I now will seek the Prince at thy desire.

## SCENE V

TASSO, (*alone*)

Ay, go, and in the fond assurance go,  
 That thou hast power to bend me to thy will,  
 I learn dissimulation, for thou art  
 An able master, and I prompt to learn.  
 Thus life compels us to appear, yea, — be,  
 Like those whom in our hearts we proudly scorn.  
 How obvious now the web of court intrigue!  
 Antonio desires to drive me hence,  
 Yet would not seem to drive me. He doth play  
 The kind, considerate friend, that I may seem  
 Incapable and weak; installs himself  
 My guardian too, degrading to a child,  
 Him whom he could not bend to be a slave.  
 With clouds of error thus he darkens truth,  
 And blinds alike the Princess and the Prince.

They should indeed retain me, so he counsels,  
 For with fair talents Nature has endow'd me;  
 Although, alas, she has accompanied  
 Her lofty gifts with many weaknesses,  
 With a foreboding spirit, boundless pride,  
 And sensibility too exquisite.  
 It cannot now be otherwise, since Fate,  
 In her caprice, has fashion'd such a man,  
 We must consent to take him as he is,

Be patient, bear with him, and then, perchance,  
 On days auspicious, as an unsought good,  
 Find pleasure in his joy-diffusing gift,  
 While for the rest, why e'en as he was born,  
 He must have license both to live and die.

Where now Alphonso's firm and constant mind?  
 In him who treats me thus can I discover  
 The man who braves his foe, who shields his friend?  
 Now I discern the measure of my woe!  
 This is my destiny, — towards me alone  
 All change their nature, — ay, the very men,  
 Who are with others stedfast, firm, and true,  
 In one brief moment, for an idle breath,  
 Swerve lightly from their constant quality.

Has not this man's arrival here, alone,  
 And in a single hour, my fortune marr'd?  
 Has he not, even to its very base,  
 Laid low the structure of my happiness?  
 This, too, must I endure, — even to-day!  
 Yea, as before all press'd around me, now  
 I am by all abandon'd; as before  
 Each strove to seize, to win me for himself,  
 All thrust me from them, and avoid me now.  
 And wherefore? My desert and all the love,  
 Wherewith I was so bounteously endow'd,  
 Does he alone in equal balance weigh?

Yes! all forsake me now. Thou too! Thou too!  
 Beloved Princess, thou too leavest me!  
 Hath she, to cheer me in this dismal hour,  
 A single token of her favour sent?  
 Have I deserved this from her? — Thou, poor heart,  
 Whose very nature 'twas to honour her!  
 How, when her gentle accents touch'd mine ear,  
 Feelings unutterable thrill'd my breast!  
 When she appeared, a more ethereal light  
 Outshone the light of day. Her eyes, her lips  
 Drew me resistlessly. My very knees  
 Trembled beneath me, and my spirits' strength  
 Was all requir'd to hold myself erect,



And curb the strong desire to throw myself  
 Prostrate before her. Scarcely could I quell  
 The giddy rapture. — Be thou firm, my heart!  
 No cloud obscure thee, thou clear mind! She, too!  
 Dare I pronounce what yet I scarce believe?  
 I must believe, yet dread to utter it.  
 She too! She too! Think not the slightest blame,  
 Only conceal it not. She too! She too!  
 Alas! This word, whose truth I ought to doubt,  
 Long as a breath of faith surviv'd in me;  
 This word, like fate's decree, doth now at last,  
 Engrave itself upon the brazen rim  
 That rounds the full-scroll'd tablet of my woe.  
 Now first, mine enemies are strong indeed;  
 For ever now I am bereft of strength.  
 How shall I combat when she stands opposed  
 Amidst the hostile army? How endure  
 If she no more reach forth her hand to me,  
 If her kind glance the suppliant meet no more?  
 Ay, thou hast dar'd to think, to utter it,  
 And ere thou could'st have fear'd, — behold 'tis true!  
 And now, ere yet despair, with brazen talons,  
 Doth rend asunder thy bewilder'd brain,  
 Lament thy bitter doom, and utter forth  
 The unavailing cry — She too! She too!

# ACT THE FIFTH

## SCENE I

### *A Garden*

ALPHONSO.                      ANTONIO

ANTONIO

Obedient to thy wish, I went to Tasso  
A second time, I come from him but now.  
I sought to move him, yea, I strongly urged;  
But from his fix'd resolve he swerveth not;  
He earnestly entreats that for a time  
Thou would'st permit him to repair to Rome.

ALPHONSO

His purpose much annoys me, I confess; —  
I rather tell thee my vexation now,  
Than let it strengthen, smother'd in my breast.  
He fain would travel, good! I hold him not.  
He will depart, he will to Rome; so be it!  
I would not that the crafty Medici  
Detain him though, nor Scipio Gonzaga!  
'Tis this hath made our Italy so great,  
That rival neighbours zealously contend  
To foster and employ the ablest men.  
Like chief without an army, shows a prince  
Who round him gathers not superior minds;  
And who the voice of poesy disdains  
Is a barbarian, be he who he may.  
Tasso I found, I chose him for myself,  
I number him with pride among my train,  
And having done so much for him already,  
I should be loath to lose him without cause.

ANTONIO

I feel embarrass'd, Prince, for in thy sight  
I bear the blame of what occur'd to-day;  
That I was in the wrong, I frankly own;

And look for pardon to thy clemency.  
 But I were inconsolable could'st thou,  
 E'en for a moment, doubt the honest zeal  
 With which I've sought t'appease him. Speak to me  
 With gracious look, that so I may regain  
 My self-reliance and my wonted calm.

## ALPHONSO

Feel no disquietude, Antonio; —  
 In no wise do I count the blame as thine;  
 Too well I know the temper of the man,  
 What I have done for him, how much I've spar'd him,  
 How often overlook'd my rightful claims.  
 O'er many things we gain the mastery,  
 But stern necessity and lengthen'd time  
 Scarce give a man dominion o'er himself.

## ANTONIO

When other men toil in behalf of one;  
 'Tis fit this one with diligence inquire  
 How he may profit others in return.  
 He who hath fashion'd his own mind so well,  
 Who hath aspir'd to make each several science,  
 And the whole range of human lore, his own,  
 Is surely doubly bound to rule himself; —  
 Yet doth he ever give it e'en a thought?

## ALPHONSO

Continued rest is not ordain'd for man!  
 Still, when we purpose to enjoy ourselves,  
 To try our valour fortune sends a foe,  
 To try our equanimity a friend.

## ANTONIO

Does Tasso e'en fulfil man's primal duty,  
 To regulate his appetite, in which  
 He is not, like the brute, restrain'd by nature?  
 Does he not rather, like a child, indulge  
 In all that charms and gratifies his taste?  
 When has he mingled water with his wine?  
 Comfits and condiments, and potent drinks,

One with another still he swallows down,  
 And then complains of his bewilder'd brain,  
 His hasty temper, and his fever'd blood,  
 Railing at nature and at destiny.  
 How oft I've heard him in a bitter style  
 With childish folly argue with his leech.  
 'Twould raise a laugh, if aught were laughable  
 Which teases others and torments oneself.  
 "Oh, this is torture!" anxiously he cries,  
 Then in splenetic mood, "Why boast your art?  
 Prescribe a cure!" "Good!" then exclaims the leech,  
 "Abstain from this or that." "That can I not."  
 "Then take this potion." "No, it nauseates me,  
 The taste is horrid, nature doth rebel."  
 "Well then, drink water." "Water! never more!  
 Like hydrophobia is my dread of it."  
 "Then your disease is hopeless." "Why, I pray?"  
 "One evil symptom will succeed another,  
 And though your malady should not prove fatal,  
 'Twill daily more torment you." "Fine, indeed,  
 Then wherefore play the leech? You know my case,  
 You should devise a remedy, and one  
 That's palatable too, that I may not  
 First suffer pain before reliev'd from it."  
 I see thee smile, my Prince, 'tis but the truth;  
 Doubtless thyself hast heard it from his lips.

#### ALPHONSO

Often I've heard, as often I've excus'd.

#### ANTONIO

It is most certain, an intemperate life,  
 As it engenders wild, distemper'd dreams,  
 At length doth make us dream in open day.  
 What's his suspicion but a troubled dream?  
 He thinks himself environ'd still by foes.  
 None can discern his gift who envy not,  
 And all who envy, hate and persecute.  
 Oft with complaints he has molested thee:  
 Notes intercepted, violated locks,  
 Poison, the dagger! All before him float!

Thou dost investigate his grievance, — well,  
 Doth aught appear? Why, scarcely a pretext.  
 No sovereign's shelter gives him confidence,  
 The bosom of no friend can comfort him.  
 Would'st promise happiness to such a man,  
 Or look to him for joy unto thyself?

#### ALPHONSO

Thou would'st be right, Antonio, if from him  
 I sought my own immediate benefit.  
 But I have learn'd no longer to expect  
 Service direct and unconditional.  
 All do not serve us in the selfsame way;  
 Who needeth much and would be ably serv'd,  
 Must employ each according to his gift;  
 This lesson from the Medici we've learn'd,  
 'Tis practis'd even by the Popes themselves.  
 With what forbearance, magnanimity,  
 And princely patience, have they not endur'd  
 Full many a genius, who requir'd their aid,  
 Though it appear'd not that they needed it!

#### ANTONIO

Who knows not this, my Prince? The toil of life  
 Alone can tutor us life's gifts to prize.  
 The smiles of fortune have too soon been his,  
 For him to relish aught in quietness.  
 Oh, that he were compell'd to earn the blessings  
 Which now with liberal hand are thrust upon him!  
 Then would he brace his nerves with manly courage,  
 And at each onward step feel new content.  
 The needy noble has attain'd the height  
 Of his ambition, if his gracious prince  
 Raise him, with hand benign, from poverty,  
 And choose him as an inmate of the court.  
 And should he honour him with confidence,  
 Consulting him in war, or state affairs,  
 Why then, methinks, the modest man may bless,  
 With silent gratitude, his lucky fate.  
 And with all this, Tasso enjoys besides  
 Youth's purest happiness: — his fatherland

Esteems him highly, looks to him with hope,  
 Trust me for this, — his peevish discontent  
 On the broad pillow of his fortune rests.  
 He comes, dismiss him kindly, give him time  
 In Rome, in Naples, wheresoe'er he will,  
 To search in vain for what he misses here,  
 Yet here alone can ever hope to find.

ALPHONSO

Back to Ferrara will he first return?

ANTONIO

He rather would remain in Belriguardo.  
 And, for his journey, what he may require,  
 He will request a friend to forward to him.

ALPHONSO

I am content. My sister, with her friend,  
 Return immediately to town, and I,  
 Riding with speed, hope to reach home before them.  
 Thou'lt follow straight when thou hast car'd for him;  
 Give orders to the castellan, that here  
 Tasso may stay as long as he desires;  
 Till he receives his luggage, till the letters,  
 Which we shall give him to our friends at Rome,  
 Have been transmitted. Here he comes. Farewell!

SCENE II

ALPHONSO.      TASSO

TASSO, (*with embarrassment*)

The favour thou so oft hast shown me, Prince,  
 Is manifest, in clearest light, to-day.  
 The deed which, in the precincts of thy palace,  
 I lawlessly committed, thou hast pardon'd.  
 Thou hast appeas'd and reconcil'd my foe,  
 Thou dost permit me for a time to leave  
 The shelter of thy side, and rich in bounty,  
 Wilt not withdraw from me thy gen'rous aid.  
 Inspir'd with confidence, I now depart,

And trust that this brief absence will dispel  
 The heavy gloom that now oppresses me.  
 My renovated soul shall plume her wing,  
 And pressing forward on the bright career,  
 Which, glad and bold, encourag'd by thy glance,  
 I enter'd first, deserve thy grace anew.

## ALPHONSO

Prosperity attend thee on thy way!  
 With joyous spirit, and to health restor'd,  
 Return again amongst us. Thus thou shalt  
 A rich requital bring for every hour  
 Thou now depriv'st us of. — I'll give thee letters  
 Both to my friends at Rome and to my kinsmen;  
 To them attach thyself; — for this remember,  
 Though absent, I shall still regard thee mine.

## TASSO

Thou dost o'erwhelm with favours one, oh Prince,  
 Who feels himself unworthy, who e'en wants  
 Ability to render fitting thanks.  
 Instead of thanks I proffer a request!  
 My poem now lies nearest to my heart.  
 My labours have been strenuous, yet I feel  
 That I am far from having reach'd my aim.  
 Fain would I there resort, where hovers yet  
 The inspiring genius of the mighty dead,  
 Still raining influence; there would I become  
 Once more a learner, then my song indeed  
 More worthily might merit thine applause.  
 Oh, give me back the manuscript, which now  
 I feel asham'd to think is in thy hand.

## ALPHONSO

Thou wilt not surely take from me to-day  
 What but to-day thou hast consign'd to me.  
 Between thy poem, Tasso, and thyself  
 Let me now stand as arbiter. Beware —  
 Nor, through assiduous diligence, impair  
 The genial nature that pervades thy rhymes;  
 And give not ear to every critic's word!

With nicest tact the poet reconciles  
 The judgments thousandfold of different men,  
 In thoughts and life at variance with each other;  
 And fears not even numbers to displease,  
 That he may charm the more still greater members;  
 And yet I say not but that here and there  
 Thou may'st, with modest care, employ the file.  
 I promise thee at once, that in brief space,  
 Thou shalt receive a copy of thy poem.  
 Meanwhile I will retain it in my hands,  
 That I may first enjoy it with my sisters.  
 Then, if thou bring'st it back more perfect still,  
 Our joy will be enhanc'd, and here and there,  
 We'll hint corrections, only as thy friends.

## TASSO

I can but modestly repeat my prayer;  
 Let me receive the copy with all speed.  
 My spirit resteth solely on this work,  
 Its full completion it must now attain.

## ALPHONSO

I praise the ardour that inspires thee, Tasso!  
 Yet, were it possible, thou for awhile  
 Should'st rest thy mind, seek pleasure in the world,  
 And find some means to cool thy heated blood.  
 Then would thy mental powers restor'd to health,  
 Through their sweet harmony, spontaneous yield,  
 What now, with anxious toil, thou seek'st in vain.

## TASSO

So it would seem, my Prince, but I'm in health  
 When I can yield myself to strenuous toil,  
 And this my toil again restores my health;  
 Long hast thou known me, thou must long have seen,  
 I thrive not in luxurious indolence;  
 Rest brings no rest to me. Alas, I feel it;  
 My mind, by nature, never was ordain'd,  
 Borne on the yielding billows of the hour,  
 To float in pleasure o'er time's ample sea.



## ALPHONSO

Thine aims, thy dreams, all overwhelm thee in thyself.  
 Around us there doth yawn full many a gulph,  
 Scoop'd by the hand of destiny; but here,  
 In our own bosoms, lies the deepest; — ay!  
 And tempting 'tis to hurl oneself therein!  
 I charge thee, Tasso, snatch thee from thyself!  
 The man will profit, though the bard may lose.

## TASSO

To quell the impulse I should vainly strive,  
 Which ceaseless in my bosom, day and night  
 Alternates ever. Life were life no more  
 Were I to cease to poetize, to dream.  
 Would'st thou forbid the cunning worm to spin,  
 For that he spins himself still nearer death?  
 From his own being, he unfoldeth still  
 The costly texture, nor suspends his toil,  
 Till in his shroud he hath immur'd himself.  
 Oh, to us mortals may some gracious power  
 Accord the insect's enviable doom,  
 In some new sunny vale, with sudden joy,  
 To spread our eager pinions!

## ALPHONSO

List to me!

Thou givest still to others to enjoy  
 Life with a twofold relish. Learn thyself  
 To know the worth of life, whose richest boon  
 In tenfold measure is bestow'd on thee.  
 Now fare thee well! The sooner thou return'st  
 All the more cordial will thy welcome be.

## SCENE III

TASSO, (*alone*)

Hold fast, my heart, thy work has been well done!  
 The task was arduous, for ne'er before,  
 Did'st thou or wish or venture to dissemble.  
 Ay, thou did'st hear it, that was not his mind,

Nor his the words; to me it still appeared,  
 As if I heard again Antonio's voice.  
 Only give heed! Henceforth on ev'ry side  
 Thou'lt hear that voice. Be firm, my heart, be firm  
 'Tis only for a moment. He who learns  
 The trick of simulation late in life,  
 Doth outwardly the natural semblance wear  
 Of honest faith; practise, and thou'lt succeed.

*[After a pause]*

Too soon thou triumphest, for lo! she comes!  
 The gentle Princess! How the feeling thrills!  
 She enters now, suspicion in my breast,  
 And angry sullenness dissolve in grief.

#### SCENE IV

PRINCESS.      TASSO

*(Towards the end of the Scene the others)*

PRINCESS

Thou think'st to leave us then, or rather, Tasso,  
 To tarry for awhile in Belriguardo,  
 And then withdraw thyself from us? I trust  
 Thine absence will not be for long. Thou think'st  
 To visit Rome?

TASSO

Thither I hasten first,  
 And if, as I have reason to expect,  
 I receive there kind welcome from my friends,  
 With care and patient toil I may, at length,  
 Impart its highest finish to my poem.  
 There are assembled men who well may claim  
 In ev'ry sev'ral art the name of master.  
 Ay, and in that first city of the world,  
 Hath not each site, yea, every stone a tongue?  
 How many thousand silent monitors,  
 With earnest mien, majestic, beckon us!  
 There if I fail to make my work complete,  
 I never shall complete it. Oh, I feel it —  
 Success doth wait on no attempt of mine!

For ever altr'ing, I shall ne'er succeed!  
 I feel, yea, deeply feel, the noble art  
 That quickens others, and does strength infuse  
 Into the healthy soul, will drive me forth,  
 And bring me to destruction. Now I go,  
 And first to Naples.

# PRINCESS

Dar'st thou venture there?  
 The rigid sentence is not yet repeal'd  
 Which banish'd thee, together with thy father.

# TASSO

I know the danger, and have ponder'd it.  
 I go disguis'd, in tatter'd garb, perchance  
 Of shepherd, or of pilgrim, meanly clad.  
 Unseen I wander through the city, where  
 The movements of the many shroud the one.  
 Then to the shore I hasten, find a bark,  
 With people of Sorrento, peasant folk,  
 Returning home from market, for I too  
 Must hasten to Sorrento, where resides  
 My sister, ever to my parent's heart,  
 Together with myself, a mournful joy.  
 I speak not in the bark, silent I step  
 Ashore, then climb the upward path,  
 And for Cornelia at the gate inquire:  
 Where may she dwell, Cornelia Sersale?  
 With friendly mien, a woman at her wheel  
 Shows me the street, the house; I hasten on;  
 The children run beside me, and survey  
 The gloomy stranger, with the shaggy locks.  
 Thus I approach the threshold. Open stands  
 The cottage door; I step into the house —

# PRINCESS

Oh, Tasso! if 'tis possible, look up,  
 And see the danger that environs thee!  
 I spare thy feelings, else I well might ask,  
 Is't noble, so to speak, as now thou speakest?  
 Is't noble of thyself alone to think,

As if thou did'st not wound the heart of friends?  
 My brother's sentiments, are they conceal'd?  
 And how we sisters prize and honour thee?  
 Hast thou not known and felt it? Can it be,  
 That a few moments should have alter'd all?  
 Oh, Tasso, if thou wilt indeed depart,  
 Yet do not leave behind thee grief and care.

*[Tasso turns away]*

How soothing to the sorrowing heart to give,  
 To the dear friend who leaves us for a season,  
 Some trifling present, though 'twere nothing more  
 Than a bright weapon, or a mantle new!  
 There's nought, alas, that we can offer thee,  
 For thou ungraciously dost fling aside  
 E'en what thou hast. Thou choosest for thyself  
 The pilgrim's scallop shell, his sombre weeds,  
 His staff to lean on, and departing thus,  
 In willing poverty, depriv'st us of  
 The only pleasure we could share with thee.

### TASSO

Then thou wilt not reject me utterly?  
 Oh precious words! O comfort dear and sweet!  
 Do thou defend me! Shield me with thy care! —  
 Oh send me to Consandoli, or here,  
 Keep me in Belriguardo, where thou wilt!  
 The Prince is lord of many a pleasant seat,  
 Many a trim garden, which the whole year round  
 Is duly kept, whose flow'ry paths ye tread not  
 E'en for a day or hour, the live-long year.  
 Then, choose among them all the most remote  
 Which through long years ye've left unvisited,  
 And which perchance e'en now untended lies.  
 Oh send me thither! There let me be yours!  
 And I will tend thy trees, construct the shed  
 That shields thy citrons from autumnal blasts,  
 Fencing them round with interwoven reeds!  
 Flowers of the fairest hues shall strike their roots,  
 And ev'ry path be trimm'd with nicest care!  
 And of the palace should'st thou give me charge,  
 The windows at convenient times I'll open,

That no injurious vapours mar the works  
Of ancient art. — The walls, choice stucco-work,  
With the light brush, I'll duly free from dust;  
There shall the polish'd pavement brightly shine,  
No stone, no tile, miss its right place, and there  
No truant weed peep from the crevices.

#### PRINCESS

I find no counsel in my troubled mind,  
No comfort in my breast for thee or us.  
I look around to see if some kind god  
Will haply grant us succour, and reveal  
Some healing plant, or potion, to restore  
Peace to thy wilder'd senses, peace to us?  
The truest word that floweth from the lip,  
The surest remedy hath lost its power;  
Leave thee I must, — yet doth my heart refuse  
To part from thee.

#### TASSO

Ye gods! And is it she?  
She who thus pities, thus communes with thee?  
And could'st thou e'er mistake that noble heart?  
And was it possible despondency  
Could, in her presence, overmaster thee?  
'Tis thou! 'Tis thou! I am myself again!  
Yet speak once more! Sweet comfort let me hear  
Again from thy dear lips! Speak, nor withdraw  
Thy counsel from me. — Say, what must I do,  
That I may win the pardon of the Prince,  
That thou thyself may'st freely pardon me,  
That ye may both with pleasure take me back  
Into your princely service? Speak to me.

#### PRINCESS

It is but little we require from thee,  
And yet that little seemeth all too much.  
Freely should'st thou resign thyself to us.  
We wish not from thee aught but what thou art,  
If only with thyself thou wert at peace.  
When thou art happy, Tasso, we are happy,

When thou dost seem to shun thy bliss, we grieve;  
 And if sometimes we are impatient with thee,  
 'Tis only that we fain would succour thee,  
 And feel, alas, our succour all in vain,  
 If thou wilt still refuse the proffer'd hand,  
 Which fails to reach thee, though stretch'd longingly.

TASSO

'Tis thou thyself, a holy angel still,  
 As when at first thou didst appear to me!  
 The mortal's darken'd vision, oh, forgive,  
 If while he gazed, he for a moment err'd;  
 Now he again discerns thee, and his soul  
 Aspires to honour thee eternally.  
 A flood of tenderness o'erwhelms my heart —  
 She stands before me! She! What feeling this?  
 Is it distraction draws me unto thee?  
 Or is it madness? or a sense sublime  
 Which apprehends the purest, loftiest truth?  
 Yes, 'tis the only feeling that on earth  
 Hath power to make and keep me truly blest,  
 Or that could overwhelm me with despair,  
 What time I wrestled with it, and resolved  
 To banish it for ever from my heart.  
 This fiery passion I had thought to quell,  
 Still with mine inmost being strove and strove,  
 And in the strife my very self destroyed,  
 Which is to thee indissolubly bound.

PRINCESS

If thou would'st have me, Tasso, listen to thee,  
 Restrain this fervid glow, which frightens me.

TASSO

Restrains the goblet's rim the bubbling wine  
 That sparkling foams, and overflows its bounds?  
 Thine ev'ry word doth elevate my bliss,  
 With ev'ry word more brightly gleams thine eye,  
 Over my spirit's depths there comes a change;  
 Reliev'd from dark perplexity, I feel,  
 Free as a god, and all I owe to thee!

A charm unspeakable, which masters me,  
 Flows from thy lips. Thou makest me all thine.  
 Of mine own being nought belongs to me.  
 Mine eye grows dim in the excess of light,  
 My senses fail me; I can scarcely stand.  
 Thou draw'st me to thee with resistless might,  
 And my heart rushes self-impell'd to thee.  
 Thou'st won me now for all eternity,  
 Then take my whole of being to thyself.

*[He throws himself into her arms, and clasps her to his bosom]*

PRINCESS

*(Throwing him from her and retiring in haste)*

Away!

LEONORA

*(Who has for some time appeared in the back ground,  
 hastening forward)*

What then has happen'd? Tasso! Tasso!

*[She follows the Princess]*

TASSO, *(about to follow her)*

Oh God!

ALPHONSO

*(Who has for some time been approaching with Antonio)*

He is distracted, hold him fast.

*(Exit)*

SCENE V

TASSO.      ANTONIO

ANTONIO

If that a foeman, — as thou deem'st thyself  
 Environ'd by a multitude of foes —  
 Beside thee stood, how would he triumph now?  
 Unhappy man! I am not yet myself!  
 When something quite unparallel'd occurs,  
 When something monstrous first arrests our sight,  
 The stagger'd spirit stands a moment still,  
 For we know nothing to compare it with.

TASSO, (*after a long pause*)

Fulfil thine office, I perceive 'tis thou!  
 Ay, thou deserv'st the Prince's confidence.  
 Fulfil thine office, since my doom is seal'd,  
 With ling'ring tortures, torture me to death!  
 Draw! draw the shaft, that I may feel the barb,  
 That lacerates, with cruel pangs, my heart!  
 The tyrant's precious instrument art thou;  
 Ay, be his gaoler, — executioner, —  
 For these are offices become thee well!

[*Towards the scene*

Yes, tyrant, go! Thou could'st not to the last  
 Thy wonted mask retain; in triumph go!  
 Thy slave thou hast well pinion'd, and reserv'd  
 For predetermin'd and protracted pangs.  
 Yes, go! I hate thee. In my heart I feel  
 The horror which despotic power excites,  
 When it is grasping, cruel, and unjust.

[*After a pause*

Thus, then, at last I see myself exil'd,  
 Turn'd off, and thrust forth, like a mendicant!  
 Thus they with garlands wreath'd me, but to lead  
 The victim to the shrine of sacrifice!  
 Thus, at the very last, with cunning words,  
 They drew from me my only property,  
 My poem, — ay, and they'll retain it too!  
 Now is my one possession in their hands,  
 My bright credential wheresoe'er I went;  
 My sole resource 'gainst biting poverty!  
 Ay, now I see why I must take mine ease.  
 'Tis a conspiracy, and thou the head.  
 Thus that my song may not be perfected,  
 That my renown may ne'er be spread abroad,  
 That envy still may find a thousand faults,  
 And my unhonour'd name forgotten die,  
 I must consent forsooth to idleness,  
 Husband my faculties and spare myself.  
 Oh precious friendship! Kind solicitude!  
 Odious appear'd the dark conspiracy  
 Which ceaseless round me wove its viewless web,  
 But still more odious does it now appear!



And, thou too, Siren! who so tenderly  
 Did'st lead me on with thy celestial mien,  
 Thee now I know! Wherefore, oh God, so late!

But we so willingly deceive ourselves,  
 Still hon'ring reprobates that honour us.  
 True men are never to each other known;  
 Such knowledge is reserv'd for galley-slaves  
 Chain'd to a narrow plank, who gasp for breath,  
 Where none hath aught to ask, nor aught to lose,  
 But for a rascal each avows himself,  
 And holds his neighbour for a rascal too, —  
 Such men as these perchance may know each other.  
 But for the rest, we courteously misjudge them,  
 In hopes that they'll misjudge us in return.

How long thine hallow'd image from my gaze  
 Veil'd the coquette, working, with paltry arts!  
 The mask has fallen! — Now I see Armida  
 Denuded of her charms, — yes, thou art she,  
 Of whom my bodeful verse prophetic sang!

And then the little, cunning go-between!  
 With what profound contempt I view her now!  
     hear the rustling of her stealthy step,  
 As round me still she spreads her artful toils.  
 Ay, now I know you! And let that suffice!  
 And misery, though it beggar me of all,  
 I'll honour still, — for it hath taught me truth.

#### ANTONIO

I hear thee with amazement, though I know  
 How thy rash humour, Tasso, urges thee  
 To rush in haste to opposite extremes.  
 Collect thy spirit and command thy rage!  
 Thou speakest slander, dost indulge in words  
 Which to thine anguish though they be forgiven,  
 Thou never can'st forgive unto thyself.

#### TASSO

Oh, speak not to me with a gentle lip,  
 Let me not hear one prudent word from thee!

Leave me my sullen happiness, that I  
 May not regain my senses, but to lose them.  
 My very bones are crush'd, yet do I livé; —  
 Ay! live to feel the agonizing pain.  
 Despair enfolds me in its ruthless grasp,  
 And, in the hell-pang that annihilates,  
 These sland'rous words are but the feeble cry,  
 Wrung from the depth of my sore agony.  
 I will away! If honest, point the path,  
 And suffer me at once to fly from hence.

#### ANTONIO

In thine extremity I will not leave thee;  
 And should'st thou wholly lose thy self-control,  
 My patience shall not fail.

#### TASSO

And must I then  
 Yield myself up a prisoner to thee?  
 Resign'd I yield myself, and it is done.  
 I cease to struggle, and 'tis well with me.  
 Now let mine anguish'd heart recall how fair  
 What, as in sport, I've madly flung aside.  
 They go from hence. — Oh God! I there behold  
 The dust, ascending from their chariot wheels.  
 The riders in advance — ay, there they go  
 E'en to the very place from whence I came!  
 And now they're gone — estrang'd from me they're gone.  
 Oh that I once again had kiss'd his hand!  
 That I had still to take a last farewell!  
 That I could only falter out — “forgive!”  
 That I could hear him say, — “go, thou'rt forgiven!”  
 Alas! I hear it not; — I ne'er shall hear it —  
 Yes, I will go! Let me but say farewell,  
 Only farewell! Give me, oh give me back  
 Their long'd for presence for a single moment!  
 Perchance I might recover! Never more!  
 I am rejected, doom'd to banishment!  
 Alas! I am self-banish'd, never more  
 To hear that gentle voice, that tender glance  
 To meet no more —

## ANTONIO

Yet hear the voice of one,  
 Who, not without emotion, stands beside thee!  
 Thou'rt not so wretched, Tasso, as thou thinkest.  
 Collect thyself! Too much thou art unmann'd.

## TASSO

And am I then as wretched as I seem?  
 Am I as weak as I do show myself?  
 Say, is all lost? Has sorrow's direful stroke,  
 As with an earthquake's sudden shock, transform'd  
 The stately pile into a ruin'd heap?  
 Is all the genius flown that did erewhile  
 So richly charm, and so exalt my soul?  
 Is all the power extinguish'd which of yore  
 Stirr'd in my bosom's depths? Am I become  
 A nothing? A mere nothing? No, all's here!  
 I have it still, and yet myself am nothing!  
 I from myself am sever'd, she from me!

## ANTONIO

Though to thyself thou seemest so forlorn,  
 Be calm, and bear in mind what still thou art!

## TASSO

Ay, in due season thou remindest me!  
 Hath history no example for mine aid?  
 Before me doth there rise no man of worth  
 Who hath borne more than I, that with his fate  
 Mine own comparing, I may gather strength.  
 No, all is gone! But one thing still remains;  
 Tears, balmy tears, kind nature has bestow'd.  
 The cry of anguish, when the man at length  
 Can bear no more — yea, and to me beside,  
 She leaveth melody and speech, that I  
 May utter forth the fulness of my woe.  
 Though in their mortal anguish men are dumb,  
 To me a God hath given to tell my grief.

*[Antonio approaches him and takes his hand]*

## TASSO

Oh, noble friend, thou standest firm and calm,  
While I am like the tempest-driven wave.  
But be not boastful of thy strength. Reflect!  
Nature, whose mighty power hath fix'd the rock,  
Gives to the wave its instability.  
She sends her storm, the passive wave is driven,  
And rolls, and swells, and falls in billowy foam.  
Yet in this very wave the glorious sun  
Mirrors his splendour, and the quiet stars  
Upon its heaving bosom gently rest.  
Dimm'd is the splendour, vanish'd is the calm! —  
In danger's hour I know myself no longer  
Nor am I now ashamed of the confession.  
The helm is broken, and on ev'ry side  
The reeling vessel splits. The riven planks,  
Bursting asunder, yawn beneath my feet!  
Thus with my outstretch'd arms I cling to thee!  
So doth the shipwreck'd mariner at last,  
Cling to the rock whereon his vessel struck.



# EGMONT

## DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

MARGARET OF PARMA, Daughter of Charles V, and  
Regent of the Netherlands

COUNT EGMONT, Prince of Gaure

WILLIAM OF ORANGE

THE DUKE OF ALVA

FERDINAND, his natural Son

MECHIAVEL, in the service of the Regent

RICHARD, Egmont's private Secretary

SILVA }  
GOMEZ } in the service of Alva

CLARA, the Beloved of Egmont

Her MOTHER

BRACKENBURG, a Citizen's Son

SOEST, a Shopkeeper }

JETTER, a Tailor }

A CARPENTER }

A SOAPBOILER }

Citizens of Brussels

BUYCK, a Hollander, a Soldier under Egmont

RUYSUM, a Frieslander, an invalid Soldier, and deaf

VANSEN, a Clerk

People, Attendants, Guards, &c.

The Scene is laid in Brussels



## ACT THE FIRST

SOLDIERS and CITIZENS (*with cross-bows*)

JETTER (*steps forward, and bends his cross-bow*)

SOEST. BUYCK. RUYSUM

SOEST. Come, shoot away, and have done with it! You won't beat me! Three black rings, you never made such a shot in all your life. And so I'm master for this year.

JETTER. Master and king to-boot; who envies you? You'll have to pay double reckoning; 'tis only fair you should pay for your dexterity.

BUYCK. Jetter, I'll buy your shot, share the prize, and treat the company. I have already been here so long, and am a debtor for so many civilities. If I miss, then it shall be as if you had shot.

SOEST. I ought to have a voice, for in fact I am the loser. No matter! Come, Buyck, shoot away.

BUYCK (*shoots*). Now, corporal, look out! — One! Two! Three! Four!

SOEST. Four rings! So be it!

ALL. Hurrah! Long live the King! Hurrah! Hurrah!

BUYCK. Thanks, sirs, master even were too much! Thanks for the honor.

JETTER. You have no one to thank but yourself.

RUYSUM. Let me tell you! —

SOEST. How now, gray beard?

RUYSUM. Let me tell you! — He shoots like his master, he shoots like Egmont.

BUYCK. Compared with him, I am only a bungler. He aims with the rifle as no one else does. Not only when he's lucky or in the vein; no! he levels, and the bull's eye is pierced. I have learned from him. He were indeed a blockhead, who could serve under him and learn nothing! — But, sirs, let us not forget! A king maintains his followers; and so, wine here, at the king's charge!



JETTER. We have agreed among ourselves that each —

BUYCK. I am a foreigner and a king, and care not a jot for your laws and customs.

JETTER. Why you are worse than the Spaniard, who has not yet ventured to meddle with them.

RUYSUM. What does he say?

SOEST (*loud to RUYSUM*). He wants to treat us; he will not hear of our clubbing together, the king paying only a double share.

RUYSUM. Let him! under protest, however! 'Tis his master's fashion, too, to be munificent, and to let the money flow in a good cause. *[Wine is brought]*

ALL. Here's to his majesty! Hurrah!

JETTER (*to BUYCK*). That means your majesty, of course.

BUYCK. My hearty thanks, if it be so.

SOEST. Assuredly! A Netherlander does not find it easy to drink the health of his Spanish majesty from his heart.

RUYSUM. Who?

SOEST (*aloud*). Philip the Second, King of Spain.

RUYSUM. Our most gracious king and master! Long life to him!

SOEST. Did you not like his father, Charles the Fifth, better?

RUYSUM. God bless him! He was a king indeed! His hand reached over the whole earth, and he was all in all. Yet, when he met you, he'd greet you just as one neighbour greets another, — and if you were frightened, he knew so well how to put you at your ease, — ay, you understand me, — he walked out, rode out, just as it came into his head, with very few followers. We all wept when he resigned the government here to his son. You understand me, — he is another sort of man, he's more majestic.

JETTER. When he was here, he never appeared in public, except in pomp and royal state. He speaks little, they say.

SOEST. He is no king for us Netherlanders. Our princes must be joyous and free like ourselves, must live, and

let live. We will neither be despised nor oppressed, good-natured fools though we be.

JETTER. The king, methinks, were a gracious sovereign enough, if he had only better counsellors.

SOEST. No, no! He has no affection for us Netherlanders; he has no heart for the people; he loves us not; how then can we love him? Why is everybody so fond of Count Egmont? Why are we all so devoted to him? Why, because one can read in his face that he loves us; because joyousness, open-heartedness, and good-nature, speak in his eyes; because he possesses nothing that he does not share with him who needs it, ay, and with him who needs it not. Long live Count Egmont! Buyck, it is for you to give the first toast! give us your master's health.

BUYCK. With all my heart; here's to Count Egmont! Hurrah!

RUYSUM. Conqueror of St. Quintin.

BUYCK. The hero of Gravelines.

ALL. Hurrah!

RUYSUM. St. Quintin was my last battle. I was hardly able to crawl along, and could with difficulty carry my heavy rifle. I managed, notwithstanding, to singe the skin of the French once more, and, as a parting gift, received a grazing shot in my right leg.

BUYCK. Gravelines! Ha, my friends, we had sharp work of it there! The victory was all our own. Did not those French dogs carry fire and desolation into the very heart of Flanders? We gave it them, however! The old hard-fisted veterans held out bravely for awhile, but we pushed on, fired away, and laid about us, till they made wry faces, and their lines gave way. Then Egmont's horse was shot under him; and for a long time we fought pell-mell, man to man, horse to horse, troop to troop, on the broad, flat, sea-sand. Suddenly, as if from heaven, down came the cannon shot from the mouth of the river, bang, bang, right into the midst of the French. These were English, who, under Admiral Malin, happened to be sailing past from Dunkirk. They did not help us much, 'tis

true; they could only approach with their smallest vessels, and that not near enough; — besides, their shot fell sometimes among our troops. It did some good, however! It broke the French lines, and raised our courage. Away it went. Helter, skelter! topsy, turvy! all struck dead, or forced into the river; the fellows were drowned the moment they tasted the water, while we Hollanders dashed in after them. Being amphibious, we were as much in our element as frogs, and hacked away at the enemy, and shot them down as if they had been ducks. The few who struggled through, were struck dead in their flight by the peasant women, armed with hoes and pitchforks. His Gallic majesty was compelled at once to humble himself, and make peace; and that peace you owe to us, to the great Egmont.

ALL. Hurrah, for the great Egmont! Hurrah! Hurrah!

JETTER. Had they but appointed him Regent, instead of Margaret of Parma!

SOEST. Not so! Truth is truth! I'll not hear Margaret abused. Now it is my turn. Long live our gracious lady!

ALL. Long life to her!

SOEST. Truly, there are excellent women in that family. Long live the Regent!

JETTER. She is prudent and moderate in all she does; if she would only not hold so fast to the priests. It is partly her fault, too, that we have the fourteen new mitres in the land. Of what use are they, I should like to know? Why, that foreigners may be shoved into the good benefices, where formerly abbots were chosen out of the chapters! And we're to believe it's for the sake of religion. We know better. Three bishops were enough for us; things went on decently and reputably. Now each must busy himself as if he were needed; and this gives rise every moment to dissensions and ill-will. And the more you agitate the matter, the worse it grows.

*[They drink]*

SOEST. But it was the will of the king; she cannot alter it, one way or another.

JETTER. Then we may not even sing the new psalms; but ribald songs, as many as we please. And why? There is

heresy in them, they say, and heaven knows what. I have sung some of them, however; they are new to be sure, but I see no harm in them.

BUYCK. Ask their leave, forsooth! In our province we sing just what we please. That's because Count Egmont is our stadtholder, who does not trouble himself about such matters. In Ghent, Yprès, and throughout the whole of Flanders, any body sings them that chooses. (*Aloud to RUYSUM*) There is nothing more harmless than a spiritual song. Is there father?

RUYSUM. What, indeed! It is a godly work, and truly edifying.

JETTER. They say, however, that they are not of the right sort, not of their sort, and, since it is dangerous, we had better leave them alone. The officers of the Inquisition are always lurking and spying about, and many an honest fellow has already fallen into their clutches. They had not gone so far as to meddle with conscience, that was yet wanting. If they will not allow me to do what I like, they might at least let me think and sing as I please.

SOEST. The Inquisition won't do here. We are not made like the Spaniards, to let our consciences be tyrannized over. The nobles must look to it, and clip its wings betimes.

JETTER. It is a great bore. Whenever it comes into their worships' heads to break into my house, and I am sitting there at my work, humming a French psalm, thinking nothing about it, neither good nor bad; singing it just because it is in my throat; forthwith I'm a heretic, and am clapped into prison. Or if I am passing through the country, and stand near a crowd listening to a new preacher, one of those who have come from Germany; instantly I'm called a rebel, and am in danger of losing my head! Have you ever heard one of these preachers?

SOEST. Brave fellows! Not long ago, I heard one of them preach in a field, before thousands and thousands of people. A different sort of dish he gave us from that of our humdrum preachers, who, from the pulpit, choke their

hearers with scraps of Latin. He spoke from his heart; told us how we had, till now, been led by the nose, how we had been kept in darkness, and how we might procure more light; — ay, and he proved it all out of the Bible.

JETTER. There may be something in it. I always said as much, and have often pondered the matter over. It has long been running in my head.

BUYCK. All the people run after them.

SOEST. No wonder, since they hear both what is good and what is new.

JETTER. And what is it all about? Surely they might let every one preach after his own fashion.

BUYCK. Come, sirs! While you are talking, you forget the wine and the prince of Orange.

JETTER. We must not forget him. He's a very wall of defence. In thinking of him, one fancies, that if one could only hide behind him, the devil himself could not get at one. Here's to William of Orange! Hurrah!

ALL. Hurrah! Hurrah!

SOEST. Now, gray beard, let's have your toast.

RUYSUM. Here's to old soldiers! To all soldiers! War for ever!

BUYCK. Bravo, old fellow! Here's to all soldiers! War for ever!

JETTER. War! War! Do ye know what ye are shouting about? That it should slip glibly from your tongue is natural enough; but what wretched work it is for us, I have not words to tell you. To be stunned the whole year round by the beating of the drum; to hear of nothing except how one troop marched here, and another there; how they came over this height, and halted near that mill; how many were left dead on this field, and how many on that; how they press forward, and how one wins, and another loses, without being able to comprehend what they are fighting about; how a town is taken, how the citizens are put to the sword, and how it fares with the poor women and innocent children. This is grievous work, and then one thinks every moment: "Here they come! It will be our turn next."

SOEST. Therefore every citizen must be practised in the use of arms.

JETTER. Fine talking, indeed, for him who has a wife and children. And yet I would rather hear of soldiers than see them.

BUYCK. I might take offence at that.

JETTER. It was not intended for you, countryman. When we got rid of the Spanish garrison, we breathed freely again.

SOEST. Faith! They pressed on you heavy enough.

JETTER. Mind your own business.

SOEST. They came to sharp quarters with you.

JETTER. Hold your tongue.

SOEST. They drove him out of kitchen, cellar,  
Chamber — and bed. *[They laugh]*

JETTER. You are a blockhead.

BUYCK. Peace, sirs! Must the soldier cry peace? Since you will not hear anything about us, let us have a toast of your own — a citizen's toast.

JETTER. We're all ready for that! Safety and peace!

SOEST. Freedom and order!

BUYCK. Bravo! That will content us all.

*[They ring their glasses together, and joyously repeat the words, but in such a manner that each utters a different sound, and it becomes a kind of chaunt. The old man listens, and at length joins in]*

ALL. Safety and peace! Freedom and order!

### *Palace of the Regent*

MARGARET OF PARMA, *(in a hunting dress)*

COURTIERS, PAGES, SERVANTS

REGENT. Put off the hunt, I shall not ride to-day. Bid Mechiavel attend me. *[Exeunt all but the REGENT]*

The thought of these terrible events leaves me no repose! Nothing can amuse, nothing divert my mind. These images, these cares, are always before me. The king will now say that these are the natural fruits of my kindness, of my clemency;



yet my conscience assures me that I have adopted the wisest, the most prudent course. Ought I sooner to have kindled, and spread abroad these flames with the breath of wrath? My hope was to keep them in, to let them smoulder in their own ashes. Yes, my inward conviction, and my knowledge of the circumstances, justify my conduct in my own eyes, but in what light will it appear to my brother! For, can it be denied that the insolence of these foreign teachers waxes daily more audacious? They have desecrated our sanctuaries, unsettled the dull minds of the people, and conjured up amongst them a spirit of delusion. Impure spirits have mingled among the insurgents, deeds horrible to think of have been perpetrated, and of these a circumstantial account must be transmitted instantly to court. Prompt and minute must be my communication, lest rumour outrun my messenger, and the king suspect that some particulars have been purposely withheld. I can see no means, severe or mild, by which to stem the evil. Oh, what are we great ones on the billows of life? We think to control them, and are ourselves driven to and fro, hither and thither.

*Enter* MECHIAVEL

REGENT. Are the despatches to the king prepared?

MECHIAVEL. In an hour they will be ready for your signature.

REGENT. Have you made the report sufficiently circumstantial?

MECHIAVEL. Full and circumstantial, as the king loves to have it. I relate how the rage of the iconoclasts first broke out at St. Omer. How a furious multitude, with stones, hatchets, hammers, ladders, and cords, accompanied by a few armed men, first assailed the chapels, churches, and convents, drove out the worshippers, forced the barred gates, threw everything into confusion, tore down the altars, destroyed the statues of the saints, defaced the pictures, and dashed to atoms, and trampled under foot, whatever came in their way that was consecrated and holy. How the crowd increased as it advanced, and how the inhabitants of Yprès opened their gates at its approach. How, with incredible rapidity, they

demolished the cathedral, and burned the library of the bishop. How a vast multitude, possessed by the like frenzy, dispersed themselves through Menin, Comines, Verviers, Lille, nowhere encountered opposition; and how, through almost the whole of Flanders, in a single moment, the monstrous conspiracy broke forth, and accomplished its object.

REGENT. Alas! Your recital rends my heart anew; and the fear that the evil will increase, adds to my grief. Tell me your thoughts, Mechiavell!

MECHIAVEL. Pardon me, your Highness, my thoughts will appear to you but as idle fancies; and though you always seem well satisfied with my services, you have seldom felt inclined to follow my advice, How often have you said in jest: "You see too far, Mechiavell! You should be an historian; he who acts, must provide for the exigence of the hour." And yet, have I not predicted this terrible history? Have I not foreseen it all?

REGENT. I too can foresee many things, without being able to avert them.

MECHIAVEL. In one word, then: — you will not be able to suppress the new faith. Let it be recognized, separate its votaries from the true believers, give them churches of their own, include them within the pale of social order, subject them to the restraints of law, — do this, and you will at once tranquillize the insurgents. All other measures will prove abortive, and you will depopulate the country.

REGENT. Have you forgotten with what aversion the mere suggestion of toleration was rejected by my brother? Know you not, how in every letter he urgently recommends to me the maintenance of the true faith? That he will not hear of tranquillity and order being restored at the expense of religion? Even in the provinces, does he not maintain spies, unknown to us, in order to ascertain who inclines to the new doctrines? Has he not, to our astonishment, named to us this or that individual residing in our very neighbourhood, who, without its being known, was obnoxious to the charge of heresy? Does he not enjoin harshness and severity? and am I



to be lenient? Am I to recommend for his adoption measures of indulgence and toleration? Should I not thus lose all credit with him, and at once forfeit his confidence?

MECHIAVEL. I know it. The king commands and puts you in full possession of his intentions. You are to restore tranquillity and peace by measures which cannot fail still more to embitter men's minds, and which must inevitably kindle the flames of war from one extremity of the country to the other. Consider well what you are doing. The principal merchants are infected — nobles, citizens, soldiers. What avails persisting in our opinion, when everything is changing around us? Oh, that some good genius would suggest to Philip that it better becomes a monarch to govern subjects of two different creeds, than to expose them to mutual destruction!

REGENT. Never let me hear such words again. Full well I know that the policy of statesmen rarely maintains truth and fidelity; that it excludes from the heart, candour, charity, toleration. In secular affairs, this is, alas! only too true; but shall we trifle with God as we do with each other? Shall we be indifferent to our established faith, for the sake of which so many have sacrificed their lives? Shall we abandon it to these far-fetched, uncertain, and self-contradicting heresies?

MECHIAVEL. Think not the worse of me for what I have uttered.

REGENT. I know you and your fidelity. I know too that a man may be both honest and sagacious, and yet miss the best and nearest way to the salvation of his soul. There are others, Mechiavel, men whom I esteem, yet whom I needs must blame.

MECHIAVEL. To whom do you refer?

REGENT. I must confess that Egmont caused me to-day deep and heart-felt annoyance.

MECHIAVEL. How so?

REGENT. By his accustomed demeanour, his usual indifference and levity. I received the fatal tidings as I was leaving church, attended by him and several others. I did not

restrain my anguish, I broke forth into lamentations, loud and deep, and turning to him, exclaimed, "See what is going on in your province! Do you suffer it, count, you, in whom the king confided so implicitly?"

MECHIAVEL. And what was his reply?

REGENT. As if it were a mere trifle, an affair of no moment, he answered: "Were the Netherlanders but satisfied as to their constitution, the rest would soon follow."

MECHIAVEL. There was, perhaps, more truth than discretion or piety in his words. How can we hope to acquire and to maintain the confidence of the Netherlander, when he sees that we are more interested in appropriating his possessions, than in promoting his welfare, temporal or spiritual? Does the number of souls saved by the new bishops exceed that of the fat benefices they have swallowed? And are they not for the most part foreigners? As yet, the office of stadtholder has been held by Netherlanders; but do not the Spaniards betray their great and irresistible desire to possess themselves of these places? Will not people prefer being governed by their own countrymen, and according to their ancient customs, rather than by foreigners, who, from their first entrance into the land, endeavour to enrich themselves at the general expense, who measure everything by a foreign standard, and who exercise their authority without cordiality or sympathy?

REGENT. You take part with our opponents?

MECHIAVEL. Assuredly not in my heart. Would that with my understanding I could be wholly on our side!

REGENT. If such your disposition, it were better I should resign the regency to them; for both Egmont and Orange entertained great hopes of occupying this position. Then they were adversaries, now they are leagued against me, and have become friends, — inseparable friends.

MECHIAVEL. A dangerous pair.

REGENT. To speak candidly, I fear Orange, — I fear for Egmont. — Orange meditates some dangerous scheme, his thoughts are far-reaching, he is reserved, appears to accede to everything, never contradicts, and while

maintaining the show of reverence, with clear foresight accomplishes his own designs.

MECHIAVEL. Egmont, on the contrary, advances with a bold step, as if the world were all his own.

REGENT. He bears his head as proudly, as if the hand of majesty were not suspended over him.

MECHIAVEL. The eyes of all the people are fixed upon him, and he is the idol of their hearts.

REGENT. He has never assumed the least disguise, and carries himself as if no one had a right to call him to account. He still bears the name of Egmont. Count Egmont is the title by which he loves to hear himself addressed, as though he would fain be reminded that his ancestors were masters of Guelderland. Why does he not assume his proper title, — Prince of Gaure? What object has he in view? Would he again revive extinguished claims?

MECHIAVEL. I hold him for a faithful servant of the king.

REGENT. Were he so inclined, what important service could he not render to the government; whereas now, without benefiting himself, he has caused us unspeakable vexation. His banquets and entertainments have done more to unite the nobles and to knit them together, than the most dangerous secret associations. With his toasts, his guests have drunk in a permanent intoxication, a giddy frenzy, that never subsides. How often have his facetious jests stirred up the minds of the populace? and what an excitement was produced among the mob, by the new liveries, and the extravagant devices of his followers!

MECHIAVEL. I am convinced he had no design.

REGENT. Be that as it may, it is bad enough. As I said before, he injures us without benefiting himself. He treats as a jest matters of serious import; and not to appear negligent and remiss, we are forced to treat seriously what he intended as a jest. Thus one urges on the other; and what we are endeavouring to avert is actually brought to pass. He is more dangerous than the acknowledged head of a conspiracy; and I am much mistaken if it is not all remembered against him at

court. I cannot deny that scarcely a day passes in which he does not wound me, deeply wound me.

MECHIAVEL. He appears to me to act on all occasions according to the dictates of his conscience.

REGENT. His conscience has a convenient mirror. His demeanour is often offensive. He carries himself as if he felt he were the master here, and were withheld by courtesy alone from making us feel his supremacy; as if he would not exactly drive us out of the country; there'll be no need for that.

MECHIAVEL. I entreat you, put not too harsh a construction upon his frank and joyous temper, which treats lightly matters of serious moment. You but injure yourself and him.

REGENT. I interpret nothing. I speak only of inevitable consequences, and I know him. His patent of nobility, and the golden fleece upon his breast, strengthen his confidence, his audacity. Both can protect him against any sudden outbreak of royal displeasure. Consider the matter closely, and he is alone responsible for the disorders that have broken out in Flanders. From the first, he connived at the proceedings of the foreign teachers, avoided stringent measures, and perhaps rejoiced in secret, that they gave us so much to do. Let me alone; on this occasion, I will give utterance to that which weighs upon my heart; I will not shoot my arrow in vain. I know where he is vulnerable. For he is vulnerable.

MECHIAVEL. Have you summoned the council? Will Orange attend?

REGENT. I have sent for him to Antwerp. I will lay upon their shoulders the burden of responsibility; they shall either strenuously co-operate with me in quelling the evil, or at once declare themselves rebels. Let the letters be completed without delay, and bring them for my signature. Then hasten to dispatch the trusty Vasca to Madrid; he is faithful and indefatigable; let him use all diligence, that he may not be anticipated by common report, that my brother may receive the intelligence first through him. I will myself speak with him ere he departs.

MECHIAVEL. Your orders shall be promptly and punctually obeyed.

*Citizen's house*

CLARA. HER MOTHER. BRACKENBURG

CLARA. Will you not hold the yarn for me, Brackenburg?

BRACKENBURG. I entreat you, excuse me, Clara.

CLARA. What ails you? Why refuse me this trifling service?

BRACKENBURG. When I hold the yarn, I stand as it were spell-bound before you, and cannot escape your eyes.

CLARA. Nonsense! Come and hold!

MOTHER (*knitting in her arm-chair*). Give us a song! Brackenburg sings so good a second. You used to be merry once, and I had always something to laugh at.

BRACKENBURG. Once!

CLARA. Well, let us sing.

BRACKENBURG. As you please.

CLARA. Merrily, then, and sing away! 'Tis a soldier's song, my favourite.

*[She winds yarn, and sings with Brackenburg]*

The drum is resounding,  
And shrill the fife plays,  
My love for the battle,  
His brave troop arrays,  
He lifts his lance high  
And the people he sways.  
My blood it is boiling!  
My heart throbs pit-pat!  
Oh, had I a jacket,  
With hose and with hat!

How boldly I'd follow,  
And march through the gate;  
Through all the wide province  
I'd follow him straight.  
The foe yield, we capture

Or shoot them! Ah, me!  
 What heart-thrilling rapture  
 A soldier to be!

*[During the song, Brackenburgh has frequently looked at Clara, at length his voice falters, his eyes fill with tears, he lets the skein fall, and goes to the window. Clara finishes the song alone, her mother motions to her, half displeased, she rises, advances a few steps towards him, turns back, as if irresolute, and again sits down]*

MOTHER. What is going on in the street, Brackenburgh? I hear soldiers marching.

BRACKENBURGH. It is the Regent's body-guard.

CLARA. At this hour? What can it mean? *[She rises and joins BRACKENBURGH at the window]* That is not the daily guard; it is more numerous! almost all the troops! Oh, Brackenburgh, do go! Learn what it means. It must be something unusual. Go, good Brackenburgh, do me this favour.

BRACKENBURGH. I am going! I will return immediately.

*[He offers his hand to CLARA, and she gives him hers]*

*[Exit BRACKENBURGH]*

MOTHER. Do you send him away so soon!

CLARA. I long to know what is going on; and, besides, — do not be angry, mother, — his presence pains me. I never know how I ought to behave towards him. I have done him a wrong, and it goes to my very heart, to see how deeply he feels it. Well, — it can't be helped now!

MOTHER. He is such a true-hearted fellow!

CLARA. I cannot help it, I must treat him kindly. Often, without a thought, I return the gentle loving pressure of his hand. I reproach myself that I am deceiving him, that I am nourishing in his heart a vain hope. I am in a sad plight. God knows, I do not willingly deceive him. I do not wish him to hope, yet I cannot let him despair!

MOTHER. That is not as it should be.

CLARA. I liked him once, and in my soul I like him still. I could have married him; yet I believe I was never really in love with him.



MOTHER. You would have been always happy with him.

CLARA. I should have been provided for, and have led a quiet life.

MOTHER. And it has all been trifled away through your own folly.

CLARA. I am in a strange position. When I think how it has come to pass, I know it, indeed, and I know it not. But I have only to look upon Egmont, and I understand it all; ay, and stranger things would seem natural then. Oh, what a man he is. All the provinces worship him. And in his arms, shall I not be the happiest creature in the world?

MOTHER. And how will it be in the future?

CLARA. I only ask, does he love me? — does he love me? — as if there were any doubt about it.

MOTHER. One has nothing but anxiety of heart with one's children. Always care and sorrow, whatever may be the end of it! It cannot come to good! Alas, you have made yourself wretched! You have made your mother wretched too.

CLARA (*quietly*). Yet, you allowed it in the beginning.

MOTHER. Alas, I was too indulgent, I am always too indulgent.

CLARA. When Egmont rode by, and I ran to the window, did you chide me then? Did you not come to the window yourself? When he looked up, smiled, nodded, and greeted me; was it displeasing to you? Did you not feel honoured in your daughter?

MOTHER. Go on with your reproaches.

CLARA (*with emotion*). Then, when he passed more frequently, and we felt sure that it was on my account that he came this way, did you not remark it, yourself, with secret joy? Did you call me away, when I stood at the closed window waiting for him?

MOTHER. Could I imagine that it would go so far?

CLARA (*with faltering voice, and repressed tears*). And then, one evening, when, enveloped in his mantle, he surprised us as we sat at our lamp, who busied herself in receiving him, while I remained, lost in astonishment, as if fastened to my chair?

MOTHER. Could I imagine that the prudent Clara would so soon be carried away by this unhappy love? I must now endure that my daughter —

CLARA (*bursting into tears*). Mother! How can you? You take pleasure in tormenting me.

MOTHER (*weeping*). Ay, weep away! Make me yet more wretched by your grief. Is it not misery enough that my only daughter is a cast-a-way?

CLARA (*rising, and speaking coldly*). A cast-away! The beloved of Egmont, a cast-away? — What princess but would envy the poor Clara her place in his heart? Oh, mother, — my own mother, you were not wont to speak thus! Dear mother, be kind! — Let the people think, let the neighbours whisper what they like, — this chamber, this lowly house is a paradise, since Egmont's love dwelt here.

MOTHER. One cannot help liking him! that is true. He is always so kind, frank, and open-hearted.

CLARA. There is not a drop of false blood in his veins. And then, mother, he is indeed the great Egmont; yet, when he comes to me, how tender he is, how kind! How he tries to conceal from me his rank, his bravery! How anxious he is about me! so entirely the man, the friend, the lover.

MOTHER. Do you expect him to-day?

CLARA. Have you not noticed how often I go to the window? How I listen to every noise at the door? Though I know that he will not come before night, yet, from the time when I rise in the morning, I keep expecting him every moment. Were I but a boy, to follow him always, to the court and everywhere! Could I but carry his colours in the field!

MOTHER. You were always such a lively, restless creature; even as a little child, now wild, now thoughtful. Will you not dress yourself a little better?

CLARA. Perhaps I may, if I want something to do. — Yesterday, some of his people went by, singing songs in his honour. At least his name was in the songs! I could not understand the rest. My heart leaped up into my throat, — I would fain have called them back if I had not felt ashamed.



MOTHER. Take care! Your impetuous nature will ruin all. You will betray yourself before the people; as, not long ago, at your cousin's, when you found the wood-cut with the description, and exclaimed, with a cry: "Count Egmont!" — I grew as red as fire.

CLARA. Could I help crying out? It was the battle of Gravelines, and I found in the picture, the letter C, and then looked for it in the description below. There it stood, "Count Egmont, with his horse shot under him." I shuddered, and afterwards I could not help laughing at the wood-cut figure of Egmont, as tall as the neighbouring tower of Gravelines, and the English ships at the side. — When I remember how I used to conceive of a battle, and what an idea I had, as a girl, of Count Egmont, when I listened to descriptions of him, and of all the other earls and princes; — and think how it is with me now!

*Enter* BRACKENBURG

CLARA. Well, what is going on?

BRACKENBURG. Nothing certain is known. It is rumoured that an insurrection has lately broken out in Flanders; the Regent is afraid of its spreading here. The castle is strongly garrisoned, the citizens are crowding to the gates, and the streets are thronged with people. I will hasten at once to my old father.

*[as if about to go]*

CLARA. Shall we see you to-morrow? I must change my dress a little. I am expecting my cousin, and I look too untidy. Come, mother, help me a moment. Take the book, Brackenburgh, and bring me such another story.

MOTHER. Farewell.

BRACKENBURG *(extending his hand)*. Your hand!

CLARA *(refusing hers)*. When you come next.

*[Exeunt* MOTHER *and* DAUGHTER

BRACKENBURG *(alone)*. I had resolved to go away again at once, and yet, when she takes me at my word, and lets me leave her, I feel as if I could go mad. — Wretched man! Does the fate of thy fatherland, does the growing disturbance fail to move thee? — Are countryman and

Spaniard the same to thee? and carest thou not who rules, and who is in the right? — I was a different sort of fellow as a schoolboy! — Then, when an exercise in oratory was given; “Brutus’ speech for liberty,” for instance, Fritz was ever the first, and the rector would say: “If it were only spoken more deliberately, the words not all huddled together.” — Then my blood boiled, and I longed for action; — Now I drag along, bound by the eyes of a maiden. I cannot leave her! yet she, alas, cannot love me! — ah — no — she — she cannot have entirely rejected me — not entirely — yet half love is no love! — I will endure it no longer! — Can it be true, what a friend lately whispered in my ear, that she secretly admits a man into the house by night, when she always sends me away modestly before evening? No, it cannot be true! It is a lie! A base, slanderous, lie! Clara is as innocent as I am wretched. — She has rejected me, has thrust me from her heart — and shall I live on thus? I cannot, I will not endure it. Already my native land is convulsed by internal strife, and do I perish abjectly amid the tumult? I will not endure it! When the trumpet sounds, when a shot falls, it thrills through my bone and marrow! But, alas, it does not rouse me! It does not summon me to join the onslaught, to rescue, to dare. — Wretched, degrading position! Better end it at once! Not long ago, I threw myself into the water; I sank — but nature in her agony was too strong for me; I felt that I could swim, and saved myself against my will. Could I but forget the time when she loved me, seemed to love me! — Why has this happiness penetrated my very bone and marrow? Why have these hopes, while disclosing to me a distant paradise, consumed all the enjoyment of life? — And that first, that only kiss! — Here (*laying his hand upon the table*), here we were alone, — she had always been kind and friendly towards me, — then she seemed to soften, — she looked at me, — my brain reeled, — I felt her lips on mine, — and — and now? — Die, wretch! Why dost thou hesitate? (*He draws a phial from his pocket*) Thou healing poison, it shall not have been in vain that I stole thee from my brother’s medicine chest! From this anxious fear, this dizziness, this death-agony, thou shalt deliver me at once.



## ACT THE SECOND

*Square in Brussels*

JETTER *and* a MASTER CARPENTER (*meeting*)

CARPENTER. Did I not tell you beforehand? Eight days ago, at the guild, I said there would be serious disturbances.

JETTER. Is it then true that they have plundered the churches in Flanders?

CARPENTER. They have utterly destroyed both churches and chapels. They have left nothing standing but the four bare walls. The lowest rabble! And this it is that damages our good cause. We ought rather to have laid our claims before the Regent, formally and decidedly, and then have stood by them. If we now speak, if we now assemble, it will be said that we are joining the rebels.

JETTER. Ay, so every one thinks at first. Why should you thrust your nose into the mess? The neck is closely connected with it.

CARPENTER. I am always uneasy when tumults arise among the mob, among people who have nothing to lose. They use as a pretext that to which we also must appeal, and plunge the country in misery.

*Enter SOEST*

SOEST. Good day, sirs! What news? Is it true that the insurgents are coming straight in this direction?

CARPENTER. Here they shall touch nothing, at any rate.

SOEST. A soldier came into my shop just now to buy tobacco; I questioned him about the matter. The Regent, though so brave and prudent a lady, has for once lost her presence of mind. Things must be bad indeed when she thus takes refuge behind her guards. The castle is strongly garrisoned. It is even rumoured that she means to fly from the town.

CARPENTER. Forth she shall not go! Her presence protects us, and we will ensure her safety better than her mustachioed gentry. If she only maintains our rights and privileges, we will stand faithfully by her.

*Enter a SOAPBOILER*

SOAPBOILER. An ugly business this! a bad business! Troubles are beginning; all things are going wrong! Mind you keep quiet, or they'll take you also for rioters.

SOEST. Here come the seven wise men of Greece.

SOAPBOILER. I know there are many who in secret hold with the Calvinists, abuse the bishops, and care not for the king. But a loyal subject, a sincere Catholic! —

*[By degrees others join the speakers and listen*

*Enter VANSSEN*

VANSSEN. God save you, sirs! What news?

CARPENTER. Have nothing to do with him, he's a dangerous fellow.

JETTER. Is he not secretary to Dr. Wiets?

CARPENTER. He has already had several masters. First he was a clerk, and as one patron after another turned him off, on account of his roguish tricks, he now dabbles in the business of notary and advocate, and is a brandy-drinker to boot.

*[More people gather round and stand in groups*

VANSSEN. So here you are, putting your heads together. Well, it is worth talking about.

SOEST. I think so too.

VANSSEN. Now if only one of you had heart and another head enough for the work, we might break the Spanish fetters at once.

SOEST. Sirs! you must not talk thus. We have taken our oath to the king.

VANSSEN. And the king to us. Mark that!

JETTER. There's sense in that! Tell us your opinion.

OTHERS. Hearken to him; he's a clever fellow. He's sharp enough.

VANSSEN. I had an old master once, who possessed a collection of parchments, among which were charters of

ancient constitutions, contracts, and privileges. He set great store, too, by the rarest books. One of these contained our whole constitution; how, at first, we Netherlanders had princes of our own, who governed according to hereditary laws, rights, and usages; how our ancestors paid due honour to their sovereign so long as he governed them equitably; and how they were immediately on their guard the moment he was for overstepping his bounds. The states were down upon him at once; for every province, however small, had its own chamber and representatives.

CARPENTER. Hold your tongue! We knew that long ago! Every honest citizen learns as much about the constitution as he needs.

JETTER. Let him speak; one may always learn something.

SOEST. He is quite right.

*Several* CITIZENS. Go on! Go on! One does not hear this every day.

VANSEN. You citizens, forsooth! You live only in the present; and as you tamely follow the trade inherited from your fathers, so you let the government do with you just as it pleases. You make no inquiry into the origin, the history, or the rights of a Regent; and in consequence of this negligence, the Spaniard has drawn the net over your ears.

SOEST. Who cares for that, if one has only daily bread?

JETTER. The devil! Why did not some one come forward and tell us this in time?

VANSEN. I tell it you now. The King of Spain, whose good fortune it is to bear sway over these provinces, has no right to govern them otherwise than the petty princes who formerly possessed them separately. Do you understand that?

JETTER. Explain it to us.

VANSEN. Why, it is as clear as the sun. Must you not be governed according to your provincial laws? How comes that?

A CITIZEN. Certainly!

VANSEN. Are not the laws of Brussels different from those of Antwerp? The laws of Antwerp different from those of Ghent? How comes that?

*Another* CITIZEN. By heaven!

VANSEN. But if you let matters run on thus, they will soon tell you a different story. Fye on you! Philip, through a woman, now ventures to do what neither Charles the Bold, Frederick the Warrior, nor Charles the Fifth could accomplish.

SOEST. Yes, yes! The old princes tried it also.

VANSEN. Ay! But our ancestors kept a sharp look-out. If they thought themselves aggrieved by their sovereign, they would perhaps get his son and heir into their hands, detain him as a hostage, and surrender him only on the most favourable conditions. Our fathers were men! They knew their own interests! They knew how to lay hold on what they wanted, and to get it established! They were men of the right sort; and hence it is that our privileges are so clearly defined, our liberties so well secured.

SOEST. What are you saying about our liberties?

ALL. Our liberties! our privileges! Tell us about our privileges.

VANSEN. All the provinces have their peculiar advantages, but we of Brabant are the most splendidly provided for. I have read it all.

SOEST. Say on.

JETTER. Let us hear.

A CITIZEN. Pray do.

VANSEN. First, it stands written: — The Duke of Brabant shall be to us a good and faithful sovereign.

SOEST. Good! Stands it so?

JETTER. Faithful? Is that true?

VANSEN. As I tell you. He is bound to us as we are to him. Secondly; — in the exercise of his authority he shall neither exert arbitrary power, nor exhibit caprice, himself, nor shall he, either directly or indirectly, sanction them in others.

JETTER. Bravo! Bravo! Not exert arbitrary power.



SOEST. Not exhibit caprice.

ANOTHER. And not sanction them in others! That is the main point. Not sanction them, either directly or indirectly.

VANSEN. In express words.

JETTER. Get us the book.

A CITIZEN. Yes, we must have it.

OTHERS. The book! The book!

ANOTHER. We will to the Regent with the book.

ANOTHER. Sir doctor, you shall be spokesman.

SOAPBOILER. Oh, the dolts!

OTHERS. Something more out of the book!

SOAPBOILER. I'll knock his teeth down his throat if he says another word.

PEOPLE. We'll see who dares to lay hands upon him. Tell us about our privileges! Have we any more privileges?

VANSEN. Many, very good and very wholesome ones too. Thus it stands: The sovereign shall neither benefit the clergy, nor increase their number, without the consent of the nobles and of the states. Mark that! Nor shall he alter the constitution of the country.

SOEST. Stands it so?

VANSEN. I'll show it you, as it was written down two or three centuries ago.

A CITIZEN. And we tolerate the new bishops? The nobles must protect us, we will make a row else!

OTHERS. And we suffer ourselves to be intimidated by the Inquisition?

VANSEN. It is your own fault.

PEOPLE. We have Egmont! We have Orange! They will protect our interests.

VANSEN. Your brothers in Flanders are beginning the good work.

SOAPBOILER. Dog! *[Strikes him]*

OTHERS *oppose the SOAPBOILER and exclaim*, Are you also a Spaniard?

ANOTHER. What! This honourable-man?



ANOTHER. This learned man?

*[They attack the SOAPBOILER]*

CARPENTER. For heaven's sake, peace!

*[Others mingle in the fray]*

CARPENTER. Citizens, what means this?

*[Boys whistle, throw stones, set on dogs; citizens stand and gape, people come running up, others walk quietly to and fro, others play all sorts of pranks, shout and huzza]*

OTHERS. Freedom and privilege! Privilege and freedom!

*Enter EGMONT, with followers*

EGMONT. Peace! Peace! good people. What is the matter? Peace, I say! Separate them.

CARPENTER. My good lord, you come like an angel from heaven. Hush! See you nothing? Count Egmont! Greet Count Egmont.

EGMONT. Here, too! What are you about? Citizen against citizen! Does not even the neighbourhood of our royal mistress oppose a barrier to this frenzy? Disperse yourselves, and go about your business. 'Tis a bad sign when you thus keep holiday on working days. How did the disturbance begin.

*[The tumult gradually subsides, and the people gather around]*

EGMONT

CARPENTER. They are fighting about their privileges.

EGMONT. Which they will forfeit through their own folly — and who are you? You seem honest people.

CARPENTER. 'Tis our wish to be so.

EGMONT. Your calling?

CARPENTER. A carpenter, and master of the guild.

EGMONT. And you?

SOEST. A shopkeeper.

EGMONT. And you?

JETTER. A tailor.

EGMONT. I remember, you were employed upon the liveries of my people. Your name is Jetter.

JETTER. To think of your grace remembering it!

EGMONT. I do not easily forget any one whom I have seen or conversed with. Do what you can, good people, to keep the peace; you stand in bad repute enough already. Provoke not the king still farther. The power, after all is in his hands. An honest citizen, who maintains himself, industriously, has everywhere as much freedom as he wants.

CARPENTER. That now is just our misfortune! With all due deference, your grace, 'tis the idle portion of the community, your drunkards and vagabonds, who quarrel for want of something to do, and clamour about privilege because they are hungry; they impose upon the curious and the credulous, and in order to obtain a pot of beer, excite disturbances that will bring misery upon thousands. That is just what they want. We keep our houses and chests too well guarded; they would fain drive us away from them with fire-brands.

EGMONT. You shall have all needful assistance; measures have been taken to stem the evil by force. Make a firm stand against the new doctrines, and do not imagine that privileges are secured by sedition. Remain at home, suffer no crowds to assemble in the streets. Sensible people can accomplish much.

*[In the meantime the crowd has for the most part dispersed]*

CARPENTER. Thanks, your excellency — thanks for your good opinion. We will do what in us lies. (*Exit* EGMONT) A gracious lord! A true Netherlander! Nothing of the Spaniard about him.

JETTER. If we had only him for a regent! 'Tis a pleasure to follow him.

SOEST. The king won't hear of that. He takes care to appoint his own people to the place.

JETTER. Did you notice his dress? It was of the newest fashion — after the Spanish cut.

CARPENTER. A handsome gentleman.

JETTER. His head now were a dainty morsel for a headsman.

SOEST. Are you mad? What are you thinking about?

JETTER. It is stupid enough that such an idea should come into one's head! But so it is. Whenever I see a fine long neck, I cannot help thinking how well it would suit the block. These cursed executions! One cannot get them out of one's head. When the lads are swimming, and I chance to see a naked back, I think forthwith of the dozens I have seen beaten with rods. If I meet a portly gentleman, I fancy I already see him roasting at the stake. At night, in my dreams, I am tortured in every limb; one cannot have a single hour's enjoyment; all merriment and fun have long been forgotten. These terrible images seem burnt in upon my brain.

*Egmont's residence*

His SECRETARY (*at a desk with papers. He rises impatiently*).

Still he comes not! And I have been waiting already full two hours, pen in hand, the papers before me; and just to-day I was anxious to be out so early. The floor burns under my feet. I can with difficulty restrain my impatience. "Be punctual to the hour." Such was his parting injunction; now he comes not. There is so much business to get through, I shall not have finished before midnight. He overlooks one's faults, it is true; methinks it would be better though, were he more strict, so he dismissed one at the appointed time. One could then arrange one's plans. It is now full two hours since he left the Regent; who knows whom he may have chanced to meet by the way?

*Enter EGMONT*

EGMONT. Well, how do matters look?

SECRETARY. I am ready, and three couriers are waiting.

EGMONT. I have detained you too long; you look somewhat out of humour.

SECRETARY. In obedience to your command I have already been in attendance for some time. Here are the papers!

EGMONT. Donna Elvira will be angry with me, when she learns that I have detained you.

SECRETARY. You are pleased to jest.

EGMONT. Nay, be not ashamed. I admire your taste. She is pretty, and I have no objection that you should have a friend at court. What say the letters?

SECRETARY. Much, my lord, but withal little that is satisfactory.

EGMONT. 'Tis well that we have pleasures at home, we have the less occasion to seek them from abroad. Is there much that requires attention?

SECRETARY. Enough, my lord; three couriers are in attendance.

EGMONT. Proceed! The most important.

SECRETARY. All is important.

EGMONT. One after the other; only be prompt.

SECRETARY. Captain Breda sends an account of the occurrences that have further taken place in Ghent and the surrounding districts. The tumult is for the most part allayed.

EGMONT. He doubtless reports individual acts of folly and temerity?

SECRETARY. He does, my lord.

EGMONT. Spare me the recital.

SECRETARY. Six of the mob who tore down the image of the Virgin at Verviers, have been arrested. He inquires whether they are to be hanged like the others?

EGMONT. I am weary of hanging; let them be flogged and discharged.

SECRETARY. There are two women among them; are they to be flogged also?

EGMONT. He may admonish them and let them go.

SECRETARY. Brink, of Breda's company, wants to marry; the captain hopes you will not allow it. There are so many women among the troops, he writes, that when on the

march, they resemble a gang of gipsies rather than regular soldiers.

EGMONT. We must overlook it in his case. He is a fine young fellow, and moreover entreated me so earnestly before I came away. This must be the last time, however; though it grieves me to refuse the poor fellows their best pastime; they have enough without that to torment them.

SECRETARY. Two of your people, Seter and Hart, have ill-treated a damsel, the daughter of an inn-keeper. They got her alone and she could not escape from them.

EGMONT. If she be an honest maiden and they used violence, let them be flogged three days in succession; and if they have any property, let him retain as much of it as will portion the girl.

SECRETARY. One of the foreign preachers has been discovered passing secretly through Comines. He swore that he was on the point of leaving for France. According to law, he ought to be beheaded.

EGMONT. Let him be conducted quietly to the frontier, and there admonished, that, the next time, he will not escape so easily.

SECRETARY. A letter from your steward. He writes that money comes in slowly, he can with difficulty send you the required sum within the week; the late disturbances have thrown everything into the greatest confusion.

EGMONT. Money must be had! It is for him to look to the means.

SECRETARY. He says he will do his utmost, and at length proposes to sue and imprison Raymond, who has been so long in your debt.

EGMONT. But he has promised to pay!

SECRETARY. The last time he fixed a fortnight himself.

EGMONT. Well, grant him another fortnight; after that he may proceed against him.

SECRETARY. You do well. His non-payment of the money proceeds not from inability, but from want of

inclination. He will trifle no longer when he sees that you are in earnest. The steward further proposes to withhold, for half a month, the pensions which you allow to the old soldiers, widows, and others. In the meantime some expedient may be devised; they must make their arrangements accordingly.

EGMONT. But what arrangements can be made here? These poor people want the money more than I do. He must not think of it.

SECRETARY. How then, my lord, is he to raise the required sum?

EGMONT. It is his business to think of that. He was told so in a former letter.

SECRETARY. And therefore he makes these proposals.

EGMONT. They will never do; — he must think of something else. Let him suggest expedients that are admissible, and, before all, let him procure the money.

SECRETARY. I have again before me the letter from Count Oliva. Pardon my recalling it to your remembrance. Before all others, the aged count deserves a detailed reply. You proposed writing to him with your own hand. Doubtless, he loves you as a father.

EGMONT. I cannot command the time; — and of all detestable things, writing is to me the most detestable. You imitate my hand so admirably, do you write in my name. I am expecting Orange. I cannot do it; — I wish, however, that something soothing should be written, to allay his fears.

SECRETARY. Just give me a notion of what you wish to communicate; I will at once draw up the answer, and lay it before you. It shall be so written that it might pass for your hand in a court of justice.

EGMONT. Give me the letter. (*After glancing over it*) Dear, excellent, old man! Wert thou then so cautious in thy youth? Did'st thou never mount a breach? Did'st thou remain in the rear of battle at the suggestion of prudence? — What affectionate solicitude! He has indeed my safety and happiness at heart, but considers not, that he who lives but to save his life, is already dead. — Charge him not to be anxious



on my account; I act as circumstances require, and shall be upon my guard. Let him use his influence at court in my favour, and be assured of my warmest thanks.

SECRETARY. Is that all? He expects still more.

EGMONT. What more can I say? If you choose to write more fully, do so. The matter turns upon a single point; he would have me live as I cannot live. That I am joyous, live fast, take matters easily, is my good fortune; nor would I exchange it for his tomb-like safety. My blood rebels against the Spanish mode of life, nor have I the least inclination to regulate my movements by the new and cautious measures of the court. Do I live only to think of life? Am I to forego the enjoyment of the present moment in order to secure the next? And must that in its turn be consumed in anxieties and idle fears?

SECRETARY. I entreat you, my lord, be not so harsh towards the venerable man. You are wont to be friendly towards every one. Say a kindly word to allay the anxiety of your noble friend. See how considerate he is, with what delicacy he warns you.

EGMONT. Yet he harps continually on the same string. He knows of old how I detest these admonitions. They serve only to perplex and are of no avail. What if I were a somnambulist, and trod the giddy summit of a lofty house, — were it the part of friendship to call me by my name, to warn me of my danger, to waken, to kill me? Let each choose his own path, and provide for his own safety.

SECRETARY. It may become you, my lord, to be without a fear, but those who know and love you —

EGMONT (*looking over the letter*). Then he recalls the old story of our sayings and doings, one evening, in the wantonness of conviviality and wine; and what conclusions and inferences were thence drawn and circulated throughout the whole kingdom! Well, we had a cap and bells embroidered on the sleeves of our servants' liveries, and afterwards exchanged this senseless device for a bundle of arrows; — a still more dangerous symbol for those who are bent upon discovering a meaning where nothing is meant.

These and similar follies were conceived and brought forth in a moment of merriment. It was at our suggestion, that a noble troop, with beggars' wallets, and a self-chosen nickname, with mock humility recalled the king's duty to his remembrance. It was at our suggestion too — well what does it signify? Is a carnival jest to be construed into high treason? Are we to be grudged the scanty, variegated rags, wherewith a youthful spirit and heated imagination would adorn the poor nakedness of life? Take life too seriously, and what is it worth? If the morning wake us to no new joys, if in the evening we have no pleasures to hope for, is it worth the trouble of dressing and undressing? Does the sun shine on me to-day, that I may reflect on what happened yesterday? That I may endeavour to foresee and control, what can neither be foreseen nor controlled, — the destiny of the morrow? Spare me these reflections, we will leave them to scholars and courtiers. Let them ponder and contrive, creep hither and thither, and surreptitiously achieve their ends. — If you can make use of these suggestions, without swelling your letter into a volume, it is well. Everything appears of exaggerated importance to the good old man. 'Tis thus the friend, who has long held our hand, grasps it more warmly ere he quits his hold.

SECRETARY. Pardon me, the pedestrian grows dizzy when he beholds the charioteer drive past with whirling speed.

EGMONT. Child! Child! Forbear! As if goaded by invisible spirits, the sun-steeds of time bear onward the light car of our destiny; and nothing remains for us but, with calm self-possession, firmly to grasp the reins, and now right, now left, to steer the wheels, here from the precipice and there from the rock. Whither he is hasting, who knows? Does any one consider whence he came?

SECRETARY. My lord! my lord!

EGMONT. I stand high, but I can and must rise yet higher. Courage, strength, and hope possess my soul. Not yet have I attained the height of my ambition; that once achieved, I will stand firmly and without fear. Should I fall, should a



thunder-clap, a storm-blast, ay, a false step of my own, precipitate me into the abyss, so be it! I shall lie there with thousands of others. I have never disdained, even for a trifling stake, to throw the bloody die with my gallant comrades; and shall I hesitate now, when all that is most precious in life is set upon the cast?

SECRETARY. Oh, my lord! you know not what you say! May heaven protect you!

EGMONT. Collect your papers. Orange is coming. Dispatch what is most urgent, that the couriers may set forth before the gates are closed. The rest may wait. Leave the Count's letter till to-morrow. Fail not to visit Elvira, and greet her from me. Inform yourself concerning the Regent's health. She cannot be well, though she would fain conceal it.

[Exit SECRETARY

*Enter* ORANGE

EGMONT. Welcome, Orange; you appear somewhat disturbed.

ORANGE. What say you to our conference with the Regent?

EGMONT. I found nothing extraordinary in her manner of receiving us. I have often seen her thus before. She appeared to me to be somewhat indisposed.

ORANGE. Marked you not that she was more reserved than usual? She began by cautiously approving our conduct during the late insurrection; glanced at the false light in which, nevertheless, it might be viewed; and finally turned the discourse to her favourite topic — that her gracious demeanour, her friendship for us Netherlanders, had never been sufficiently recognized, never appreciated as it deserved; that nothing came to a prosperous issue; that for her part she was beginning to grow weary of it; that the king must at last resolve upon other measures. Did you hear that?

EGMONT. Not all; I was thinking at the time of something else. She is a woman, good Orange, and all women expect that every one shall submit passively to their gentle yoke; that every Hercules shall lay aside his lion's skin, assume

the distaff, and swell their train; and, because they are themselves peaceably inclined, imagine, forsooth, that the ferment which seizes a nation, the storm which powerful rivals excite against one another, may be allayed by one soothing word, and the most discordant elements be brought to unite in tranquil harmony at their feet. 'Tis thus with her; and since she cannot accomplish her object, why she has no resource left but to lose her temper, to menace us with direful prospects for the future, and to threaten to take her departure.

ORANGE. Think you not that this time she will fulfil her threat?

EGMONT. Never! How often have I seen her actually prepared for the journey! Whither should she go? Being here a stadtholder, a queen, think you that she could endure to spend her days in insignificance at her brother's court? Or to repair to Italy, and there drag on her existence among her old family connexions.

ORANGE. She is held incapable of this determination, because you have already seen her hesitate and draw back; nevertheless, it is in her to take this step; new circumstances may impel her to the long delayed resolve. What if she were to depart, and the king to send another?

EGMONT. Why he would come, and he also would have business enough upon his hands. He would arrive with vast projects and schemes, to reduce all things to order, to subjugate, and combine; and to-day he would be occupied with this trifle, to-morrow with that, and the day following have to deal with some unexpected hindrance. He would spend one month in forming plans, another in mortification at their failure, and half a year would be consumed in cares for a single province. With him also time would pass, his head grow dizzy, and things hold on their ordinary course, till instead of sailing into the open sea, according to the plan which he had previously marked out, he might thank God, if, amid the tempest, he were able to keep his vessel off the rocks.

ORANGE. What if the king were advised to try an experiment?

EGMONT. Which should be — ?

ORANGE. To try how the body would get on without the head.

EGMONT. How?

ORANGE. Egmont, our interests have for years weighed upon my heart; I ever stand as over a chess-board, and regard no move of my adversary as insignificant; and as men of science carefully investigate the secrets of nature, so I hold it to be the duty, ay, the very vocation of a prince, to acquaint himself with the dispositions and intentions of all parties. I have reason to fear an outbreak. The king has long acted according to certain principles; he finds that they do not lead to a prosperous issue; what more probable than that he should seek it some other way?

EGMONT. I do not believe it. When a man grows old, has attempted much, and finds that the world cannot be made to move according to his will, he must needs grow weary of it at last.

ORANGE. One thing he has not yet attempted.

EGMONT. What?

ORANGE. To spare the people, and put an end to the princes.

EGMONT. How many have long been haunted by this dread! There is no cause for such anxiety.

ORANGE. Once I felt anxious; gradually I became suspicious; suspicion has at length grown into certainty.

EGMONT. Has the king more faithful servants than ourselves?

ORANGE. We serve him after our own fashion; and between ourselves, it must be confessed, that we understand pretty well how to make the interests of the king square with our own.

EGMONT. And who does not? He has our duty and submission, in so far as they are his due.

ORANGE. But what if he should arrogate still more, and regard as disloyalty what we esteem the maintenance of our just rights?

EGMONT. We shall know in that case how to defend ourselves. Let him assemble the knights of the Golden Fleece; we will submit ourselves to their decision.

ORANGE. What if the sentence were to precede the trial? punishment, the sentence?

EGMONT. It were an injustice of which Philip is incapable; a folly, which I cannot impute either to him or his counsellors.

ORANGE. And how if they were both foolish and unjust?

EGMONT. No, Orange, it is impossible. Who would venture to lay hands on us? The attempt to capture us were a fruitless enterprize. No, they dare not raise the standard of tyranny so high. The breeze that should waft these tidings over the land would kindle a mighty conflagration. And what object would they have in view? The king alone has no power either to judge or to condemn us; and would they attempt our lives by assassination? They cannot intend it. A terrible league would unite the entire people. Direful hate, and eternal separation from the crown of Spain would, on the instant, be forcibly declared.

ORANGE. The flames would then rage over our grave, and the blood of our enemies flow, a vain oblation. Let us consider, Egmont.

EGMONT. But how could they effect this purpose?

ORANGE. Alva is on the way.

EGMONT. I do not believe it.

ORANGE. I know it.

EGMONT. The Regent appeared to know nothing of it.

ORANGE. And, therefore, the stronger is my conviction. The Regent will give place to him. I know his blood-thirsty disposition, and he brings an army with him.

EGMONT. To harass the provinces anew? The people will be exasperated to the last degree.

ORANGE. Their leaders will be secured.

EGMONT. No! No!

ORANGE. Let us retire, each to his province. There we can strengthen ourselves; the duke will not begin with open violence.

EGMONT. Must we not greet him when he comes?

ORANGE. We will delay.

EGMONT. What if, on his arrival, he should summon us in the king's name.

ORANGE. We will answer evasively.

EGMONT. And if he is urgent?

ORANGE. We will excuse ourselves.

EGMONT. And if he insist?

ORANGE. We shall be the less disposed to come.

EGMONT. Then war is declared; and we are rebels. Do not suffer prudence to mislead you, Orange. I know it is not fear that makes you yield. Consider this step.

ORANGE. I have considered it.

EGMONT. Consider for what you are answerable if you are wrong. For the most fatal war that ever yet desolated a country. Your refusal is the signal that at once summons the provinces to arms, that justifies every cruelty for which Spain has hitherto so anxiously sought a pretext. With a single nod, you will excite to the direst confusion what, with patient effort, we have so long kept in abeyance. Think of the towns, the nobles, the people; think of commerce, agriculture, trade! Realize the murder, the desolation! Calmly the soldier beholds his comrade fall beside him in the battle-field. But towards you, carried downwards by the stream, shall float the corpses of citizens, of children, of maidens, till, aghast with horror, you shall no longer know whose cause you are defending, since you shall see those, for whose liberty you drew the sword, perishing around you. And what will be your emotions when conscience whispers, "It was for my own safety that I drew it."

ORANGE. We are not ordinary men, Egmont. If it becomes us to sacrifice ourselves for thousands, it becomes us no less to spare ourselves for thousands.

EGMONT. He who spares himself becomes an object of suspicion ever to himself.

ORANGE. He who is sure of his own motives can, with confidence, advance or retreat.

EGMONT. Your own act will render certain the evil that you dread.

ORANGE. Wisdom and courage alike prompt us to meet an inevitable evil.

EGMONT. When the danger is imminent the faintest hope should be taken into account.

ORANGE. We have not the smallest footing left; we are on the very brink of the precipice.

EGMONT. Is the king's favour ground so narrow?

ORANGE. Not narrow, perhaps, but slippery.

EGMONT. By heavens! he is belied. I cannot endure that he should be so meanly thought of! He is Charles's son and incapable of meanness.

ORANGE. Kings of course do nothing mean.

EGMONT. He should be better known.

ORANGE. Our knowledge counsels us not to await the result of a dangerous experiment.

EGMONT. No experiment is dangerous, the result of which we have the courage to meet.

ORANGE. You are irritated, Egmont.

EGMONT. I must see with my own eyes.

ORANGE. Oh that for once you saw with mine! My friend, because your eyes are open, you imagine that you see. I go! Await Alva's arrival, and God be with you! My refusal to do so may perhaps save you. The dragon may deem the prey not worth seizing, if he cannot swallow us both. Perhaps he may delay, in order more surely to execute his purpose; in the meantime you may see matters in their true light. But then, be prompt! Lose not a moment! Save, — oh, save yourself! Farewell! — Let nothing escape your vigilance: — how many troops he brings with him; how he garrisons the town; what force the Regent retains; how your friends are prepared. Send me tidings — Egmont —



EGMONT. What would you?

ORANGE. (*grasping his hand*) Be persuaded! Go with me!

EGMONT. How! Tears, Orange!

ORANGE. To weep for a lost friend is not unmanly.

EGMONT. You deem me lost?

ORANGE. You are lost. Consider! Only a brief respite is left you. Farewell. [*Exit*

EGMONT. (*alone*) Strange that the thoughts of other men should exert such an influence over us. These fears would never have entered my mind; and this man infects me with his solicitude. Away! 'Tis a foreign drop in my blood! Kind nature, cast it forth! And to erase the furrowed lines from my brow there yet remains indeed a friendly means.

## ACT THE THIRD

*Palace of the Régent*

MARGARET of PARMA

REGENT. I might have expected it. Ha! when we live immersed in anxiety and toil, we imagine that we achieve the utmost that is possible; while he, who, from a distance, looks on and commands, believes that he requires only the possible. O ye kings! I had not thought it could have galled me thus. It is so sweet to reign! — and to abdicate? I know not how my father could do so; but I will also.

[MECHIAVEL *appears in the back-ground*]

REGENT. Approach, Mechiavel. I am thinking over this letter from my brother.

MECHIAVEL. May I know what it contains?

REGENT. As much tender consideration for me, as anxiety for his states. He extols the firmness, the industry, the fidelity, with which I have hitherto watched over the interests of his majesty in these provinces. He condoles with me that the unbridled people occasion me so much trouble. He is so thoroughly convinced of the depth of my views, so extraordinarily satisfied with the prudence of my conduct, that I must almost say the letter is too politely written for a king — certainly for a brother.

MECHIAVEL. It is not the first time that he has testified to you his just satisfaction.

REGENT. But the first time that it is a mere rhetorical figure.

MECHIAVEL. I do not understand you.

REGENT. You soon will. — For after this preamble, he is of opinion, that without soldiers, without a small army indeed, — I shall always cut a sorry figure here! He intimates that we did wrong to withdraw our troops from the provinces at the remonstrance of the inhabitants; and thinks that a garrison which shall press upon the neck of the



citizen, will prevent him, by its weight, from making any lofty spring.

MECHIAVEL. It would irritate the public mind to the last degree.

REGENT. The king thinks however, — attend to this — he thinks that a clever general, one who never listens to reason, will be able to deal promptly with all parties; — people and nobles, citizens and peasants; he therefore sends, with a powerful army, the duke of Alva.

Mechiavel. Alva?

REGENT. You are surprised.

MECHIAVEL. You say, he sends, he asks doubtless whether he should send.

REGENT. The king asks not, he sends.

MECHIAVEL. You will then have an experienced warrior in your service.

REGENT. In my service? Speak out Mechiavel.

MECHIAVEL. I would not anticipate you.

REGENT. And I would I could dissimulate. It wounds me — wounds me to the quick. I had rather my brother would speak his mind, than attach his signature to formal epistles, drawn up by a secretary of State.

MECHIAVEL. Can they not comprehend ——

REGENT. I know them thoroughly. They would fain make a clean sweep; and since they cannot set about it themselves, they give their confidence to any one who comes with a besom in his hand. Oh, it seems to me as if I saw the king and his council worked upon this tapestry.

MECHIAVEL. So distinctly!

REGENT. No feature is wanting. There are good men among them. The honest Roderigo, so experienced and so moderate, who does not aim too high, yet lets nothing sink too low; the upright Alonzo, the diligent Freneda, the steadfast Las Vargas, and others who join them when the good party are in power. But there sits the hollow-eyed Toledan, with brazen front and deep fire-glance, muttering between his teeth about womanish softness, ill-timed

concession, and that women can ride trained steeds well enough, but are themselves bad horse-breakers, and the like pleasantries, which, in former times, I have been compelled to hear from political gentlemen.

MECHIABEL. You have chosen good colours for your picture.

REGENT. Confess, Mechiavel, among the tints from which I might select, there is no hue so livid, so jaundice-like, as Alva's complexion, and the colour he is wont to paint with. He regards every one as a blasphemer or traitor; for under this head they can be racked, impaled, quartered, and burnt at pleasure. The good I have accomplished here, appears as nothing seen from a distance, just because it is good. Then he dwells on every outbreak that is past, recalls every disturbance that is quieted, and brings before the king such a picture of mutiny, sedition, and audacity, that we appear to him to be actually devouring one another, when with us the transient explosion of a rude people has long been forgotten. Thus he conceives a cordial hatred for the poor people; he views them with horror, as beasts and monsters; looks around for fire and sword, and imagines that by such means human beings are subdued.

MECHIABEL. You appear to me too vehement; you take the matter too seriously. Do you not remain regent?

REGENT. I am aware of that. He will bring his instructions. I am old enough in state affairs to understand how people can be supplanted, without being actually deprived of office. First, he will produce a commission, couched in terms somewhat obscure and equivocal; he will stretch his authority, for the power is in his hands; if I complain, he will hint at secret instructions; if I desire to see them, he will answer evasively; if I insist, he will produce a paper of totally different import; and if this fail to satisfy me, he will go on precisely as if I had never interfered. Meanwhile he will have accomplished what I dread, and have frustrated my most cherished schemes.

MECHIABEL. I wish I could contradict you.

REGENT. His harshness and cruelty will again arouse the turbulent spirit, which, with unspeakable patience, I have succeeded in quelling; I shall see my work destroyed before my eyes, and have besides to bear the blame of his wrongdoing.

MECHIAVEL. Await it, your highness.

REGENT. I have sufficient self-command to remain quiet. Let him come; I will make way for him with the best grace ere he pushes me aside.

MECHIAVEL. So important a step thus suddenly?

REGENT. 'Tis harder than you imagine. He who is accustomed to rule, to hold daily in his hand the destiny of thousands, descends from the throne as into the grave. Better thus, however, than linger a spectre among the living, and with hollow aspect endeavour to maintain a place which another has inherited, and already possesses and enjoys.

*Clara's dwelling*

CLARA and her MOTHER

MOTHER. Such a love as Brackenburg's I have never seen; I thought it was to be found only in romance books.

CLARA. (*walking up and down the room, humming a song*)

With love's thrilling rapture  
What joy can compare!

MOTHER. He suspects your attachment to Egmont; and yet, if you would but treat him a little kindly, I do believe he would marry you still, if you would have him.

CLARA. (*sings*)

Blissful  
And tearful,  
With thought-teeming brain;  
Hoping  
And fearing  
In passionate pain;  
Now shouting in triumph,  
Now sunk in despair; —  
With love's thrilling rapture  
What joy can compare!

MOTHER. Have done with your baby-nonsense.

CLARA. Nay, do not abuse it; 'tis a song of marvellous virtue. Many a time I have lulled a grown child to sleep with it.

MOTHER. Ay! You can think of nothing but your love. If it only did not put everything else out of your head. You should have more regard for Brackenburg, I tell you. He may make you happy yet some day.

CLARA. He?

MOTHER. Oh, yes! A time will come! You children live only in the present, and give no ear to our experience. Youth and happy love, all has an end; and there comes a time when one thanks God if one has any corner to creep into.

CLARA. (*shudders, and after a pause stands up*) Mother, let that time come — like death. To think of it beforehand is horrible! And if it come! If we must — then — we will bear ourselves as we may. Live without thee, Egmont! (*weeping*) No! It is impossible.

*Enter* EGMONT. (*Enveloped in a horseman's cloak, his hat drawn over his face*)

EGMONT. Clara!

CLARA. (*utters a cry and starts back*). Egmont! (*she hastens towards him*) Egmont! (*she embraces and leans upon him*) O you good, kind, sweet Egmont! Are you come? Is it you indeed?

EGMONT. Good evening, mother!

MOTHER. God save you, noble sir! My daughter has well nigh pined to death, because you have stayed away so long; she talks and sings about you the live-long day.

EGMONT. You will give me some supper?

MOTHER. You do us too much honour. If we only had anything —

CLARA. Certainly! Be quiet, mother; I have provided everything; there is something prepared. Do not betray me, mother.

MOTHER. There's little enough.

CLARA. Never mind! When he is with me I am never hungry; so he cannot, I should think, have any great appetite when I am with him.

EGMONT. Do you think so?

CLARA. (*stamps with her foot and turns pettishly away*)

EGMONT. What ails you?

CLARA. How cold you are to-day! You have not yet offered me a kiss. Why do you keep your arms enveloped in your mantle, like a new-born babe. It becomes neither a soldier nor a lover to keep his arms muffled up.

EGMONT. Sometimes, dearest, sometimes. When the soldier stands in ambush and would delude the foe, he collects his thoughts, gathers his mantle around him, and matures his plan; and a lover ——

MOTHER. Will you not take a seat, and make yourself comfortable? I must to the kitchen, Clara thinks of nothing when you are here. You must put up with what we have.

EGMONT. Your good-will is the best seasoning.

[*Exit* MOTHER]

CLARA. And what then is my love?

EGMONT. Just what you please.

CLARA. Liken it to anything, if you have the heart.

EGMONT. But first. [*He flings aside his mantle, and appears arrayed in a magnificent dress*]

CLARA. Oh heavens!

EGMONT. Now my arms are free! [*Embraces her*]

CLARA. Don't! You will spoil your dress. (*she steps back*)  
How magnificent! I dare not touch you.

EGMONT. Are you satisfied? I promised to come once arrayed in Spanish fashion.

CLARA. I had ceased to remind you of it; I thought you did not like it — ah, and the Golden Fleece!

EGMONT. You see it now.

CLARA. And did the emperor really hang it round your neck?

EGMONT. He did, my child! And this chain and Order invest the wearer with the noblest privileges. On earth I acknowledge no judge over my actions, except the grand master of the Order, with the assembled chapter of knights.

CLARA. Oh, you might let the whole world sit in judgment over you. The velvet is too splendid! and the braiding! and the embroidery! One knows not where to begin.

EGMONT. There, look your fill.

CLARA. And the Golden Fleece! You told me its history, how it is the symbol of everything great and precious, of everything that can be merited and won by diligence and toil. It is very precious — I may liken it to your love; — even so I wear it next my heart; — and then ——

EGMONT. Well — what then?

CLARA. And then again it is not like.

EGMONT. How so?

CLARA. I have not won it by diligence and toil, I have not deserved it.

EGMONT. It is otherwise in love. You deserve it because you have not sought it — and, for the most part, those only obtain love who seek it not.

CLARA. Is it from your own experience that you have learned this? Did you make that proud remark in reference to yourself? you, whom all the people love?

EGMONT. Would that I had done something for them! That I could do anything for them! It is their own good pleasure to love me.

CLARA. You have doubtless been with the Regent to-day?

EGMONT. I have.

CLARA. Are you upon good terms with her?

EGMONT. So it would appear. We are kind and serviceable to each other.

CLARA. And in your heart?

EGMONT. I like her. True, we have each our own views; but that is nothing to the purpose. She is an excellent woman, knows with whom she has to deal, and would be penetrating enough were she not quite so suspicious. I give her plenty of employment, because she is always suspecting some secret motive in my conduct when, in fact, I have none.

CLARA. Really none?



EGMONT. Well, with one little exception, perhaps. All wine deposits lees in the cask in the course of time. Orange furnishes her still better entertainment, and is a perpetual riddle. He has got the credit of harbouring some secret design; and she studies his brow to discover his thoughts, and his steps, to learn in what direction they are bent.

CLARA. Does she dissemble?

EGMONT. She is regent — and do you ask?

CLARA. Pardon me; I meant to say, is she false?

EGMONT. Neither more nor less than everyone who has his own objects to attain.

CLARA. I should never feel at home in the world. But she has a masculine spirit, and is another sort of woman from us housewives and sempstresses. She is great, steadfast, resolute.

EGMONT. Yes, when matters are not too much involved. For once, however, she is a little disconcerted.

CLARA. How so?

EGMONT. She has a moustache, too, on her upper lip, and occasionally an attack of the gout. A regular Amazon.

CLARA. A majestic woman! I should dread to appear before her.

EGMONT. Yet you are not wont to be timid! It would not be fear, only maidenly bashfulness.

*[CLARA casts down her eyes, takes his hand, and leans upon him]*

EGMONT. I understand you, dearest! You may raise your eyes.

*[He kisses her eyes]*

CLARA. Let me be silent! Let me embrace thee! Let me look into thine eyes, and find there everything — hope and comfort, joy and sorrow! *(she embraces and gazes on him)* Tell me! Oh, tell me! It seems so strange — art thou indeed Egmont! Count Egmont! The great Egmont, who makes so much noise in the world, who figures in the newspapers, who is the support and stay of the provinces?

EGMONT. No, Clara, I am not he.

CLARA. How?

EGMONT. Seest thou, Clara? Let me sit down! (*He seats himself, she kneels on a footstool before him, rests her arms on his knees, and looks up in his face*) That Egmont is a morose, cold, unbending Egmont, obliged to be upon his guard, to assume now this appearance and now that; harassed, misapprehended and perplexed, when the crowd esteem him light-hearted and gay; beloved by a people who do not know their own minds; honoured and extolled by the intractable multitude; surrounded by friends in whom he dares not confide; observed by men who are on the watch to supplant him; toiling and striving, often without an object, generally without a reward. O let me conceal how it fares with him, let me not speak of his feelings! But this Egmont, Clara, is calm, unreserved, happy, beloved and known by the best of hearts, which is also thoroughly known to him, and which he presses to his own with unbounded confidence and love. (*He embraces her*) This is thy Egmont.

CLARA. So let me die! The world has no joy after this!





## ACT THE FOURTH

### *A Street*

JETTER.      CARPENTER

JETTER. Hist! neighbour, — a word!

CARPENTER. Go your way and be quiet.

JETTER. Only one word. Is there nothing new?

CARPENTER. Nothing, except that we are anew forbidden to speak.

JETTER. How?

CARPENTER. Step here, close to this house. Take heed! Immediately on his arrival, the Duke of Alva published a decree, by which two or three, found conversing together in the streets, are, without trial, declared guilty of high treason.

JETTER. Alas!

CARPENTER. To speak of state affairs is prohibited on pain of perpetual imprisonment.

JETTER. Alas for our liberty!

CARPENTER. And no one, on pain of death, shall censure the measures of government.

JETTER. Alas, for our heads!

CARPENTER. And fathers, mothers, children, kindred, friends, and servants, are invited, by the promise of large rewards, to disclose what passes in the privacy of our homes, before an expressly appointed tribunal.

JETTER. Let us go home.

CARPENTER. And the obedient are promised that they shall suffer no injury, either in person or estate.

JETTER. How gracious! — I felt ill at ease the moment the duke entered the town. Since then, it has seemed to me, as though the heavens were covered with black crape, which hangs so low, that one must stoop down to avoid knocking one's head against it.

CARPENTER. And how do you like his soldiers? They are a different sort of crabs from those we have been used to.

JETTER. Faugh! It gives one the cramp at one's heart to see such a troop march down the street, as straight as tapers, with fixed look, only one step, however many there may be; and when they stand sentinel, and you pass one of them, it seems as though he would look you through and through; and he looks so stiff and morose, that you fancy you see a task-master at every corner. They offend my sight. Our militia were merry fellows; they took liberties, stood their legs astride, their hats over their ears, they lived and let live; these fellows are like machines with a devil inside them.

CARPENTER. Were such an one to cry, "Halt!" and to level his musket, think you, one would stand?

JETTER. I should fall dead upon the spot.

CARPENTER. Let us go home!

JETTER. No good can come of it. Farewell.

*Enter SOEST*

SOEST. Friends! Neighbours!

CARPENTER. Hush! Let us go.

SOEST. Have you heard?

JETTER. Only too much!

SOEST. The Regent is gone.

JETTER. Then heaven help us.

CARPENTER. She was some stay to us.

SOEST. Her departure was sudden and secret. She could not agree with the duke; she has sent word to the nobles that she intends to return. No one believes it, however.

CARPENTER. God pardon the nobles for letting this new yoke be laid upon our necks. They might have prevented it. Our privileges are gone.

JETTER. For heaven's sake not a word about privileges. I already scent an execution; the sun will not come forth; the fogs are rank.

SOEST. Orange, too, is gone.

CARPENTER. Then are we quite deserted!

SOEST. Count Egmont is still here.

JETTER. God be thanked! Strengthen him all ye saints to do his utmost; he is the only one who can help us.

*Enter VANSSEN*

VANSSEN. Have I at length found a few brave citizens who have not crept out of sight?

JETTER. Do us the favour to pass on.

VANSSEN. You are not civil.

JETTER. This is no time for compliments. Does your back itch again? are your wounds already healed?

VANSSEN. Ask a soldier about his wounds! Had I cared for blows, nothing good would have come of me.

JETTER. Matters may grow more serious.

VANSSEN. You feel from the gathering storm, a pitiful weakness in your limbs, it seems.

CARPENTER. Your limbs will soon be in motion elsewhere, if you do not keep quiet.

VANSSEN. Poor mice! The master of the house procures a new cat, and ye are straight in despair! The difference is very trifling; we shall get on as we did before, only be quiet.

CARPENTER. You are an insolent knave.

VANSSEN. Gossip! Let the duke alone. The old cat looks as though he had swallowed devils, instead of mice, and could not now digest them. Let him alone I say; he must eat, drink, and sleep, like other men. I am not afraid if we only watch our opportunity. At first he makes quick work of it; by and by, however, he too will find that it is pleasanter to live in the larder, among flitches of bacon, and to rest by night, than to entrap a few solitary mice in the granary. Go to! I know the stadtholders.

CARPENTER. What such a fellow can say with impunity! Had I said such a thing, I should not hold myself safe a moment.

VANSSEN. Do not make yourselves uneasy! God in heaven does not trouble himself about you, poor worms, much less the Regent.

JETTER. Slanderer!

VANSSEN. I know some for whom it would be better, if instead of their own high spirits, they had a little tailor's blood in their veins.

CARPENTER. What mean you by that?

VANSEN. Hum! I mean the count.

JETTER. Egmont! What has he to fear?

VANSEN. I'm a poor devil, and could live a whole year round on what he loses in a single night; yet he would do well to give me his revenue for a twelvemonth, to have my head upon his shoulders for one quarter of an hour.

JETTER. You think yourself very clever; yet there is more sense in the hairs of Egmont's head, than in your brains.

VANSEN. Perhaps so! Not more shrewdness, however. These gentry are the most apt to deceive themselves. He should be more chary of his confidence.

JETTER. How his tongue wags! Such a gentleman!

VANSEN. Just because he is not a tailor.

JETTER. You audacious scoundrel!

VANSEN. I only wish he had your courage in his limbs for an hour to make him uneasy, and plague and torment him, till he were compelled to leave the town.

JETTER. What nonsense you talk; why he's as safe as a star in heaven.

VANSEN. Have you ever seen one snuff itself out? Off it went!

CARPENTER. Who would dare to meddle with him, I should like to know?

VANSEN. Will you interfere to prevent it? Will you stir up an insurrection if he is arrested?

JETTER. Ah!

VANSEN. Will you risk your ribs for his sake?

SOEST. Eh!

VANSEN. (*Mimicking them*) Eh! Oh! Ah! Run through the alphabet in your wonderment. So it is, and so it will remain. Heaven help him!

JETTER. Confound your impudence. Can such a noble, upright man, have anything to fear?

VANSEN. In this world the rogue has everywhere the advantage. At the bar, he makes a fool of the judge; on the

bench, he takes pleasure in convicting the accused. I have had to copy out a protocol, where the commissary was handsomely rewarded by the court, both with praise and money, because through his cross-examination, an honest devil, against whom they had a grudge, was made out to be a rogue.

CARPENTER. Why that again is a downright lie. What can they want to get out of a man if he is innocent?

VANSEN. Oh you blockhead! When nothing can be worked out of a man by cross-examination, they work it into him. Honesty is rash and withal somewhat presumptuous; at first they question quietly enough, and the prisoner, proud of his innocence, as they call it, comes out with much that a sensible man would keep back; then, from these answers the inquisitor proceeds to put new questions, and is on the watch for the slightest contradiction; there he fastens his line; and let the poor devil lose his self-possession, say too much here, or too little there, or, heaven knows from what whim or other, let him withhold some trifling circumstance, or at any moment give way to fear, — then we're on the right track, and, I assure you, no beggar-woman seeks for rags among the rubbish with more care, than such a fabricator of rogues, from trifling, crooked, disjointed, misplaced, misprinted, and concealed facts and information, acknowledged or denied, endeavours at length to patch up a scarecrow, by means of which he may at least hang his victim in effigy; and the poor devil may thank heaven, if he is in a condition to see himself hanged.

JETTER. He has a ready tongue of his own.

CARPENTER. This may serve well enough with flies. Wasps laugh at your cunning well.

VANSEN. According to the kind of spider. The tall duke now, has just the look of your garden spider; not the large-bellied kind, they are less dangerous; but your long-footed, meagre-bodied gentleman, that does not fatten on his diet, and whose threads are slender indeed, but not the less tenacious.

JETTER. Egmont is knight of the Golden Fleece, who dare lay hands on him? He can be tried only by his peers, by the assembled knights of his order. Your own foul tongue and evil conscience betray you into this nonsense.

VANSEN. Think you that I wish him ill? I would you were in the right. He is an excellent gentleman. He once let off, with a sound drubbing, some good friends of mine, who would else have been hanged. Now take yourselves off! be gone, I advise you! yonder I see the patrol again commencing their round. They do not look as if they would be willing to fraternize with us over a glass. We must wait, and bide our time. I have a couple of nieces and a gossip of a tapster; if after enjoying themselves in their company, they are not tamed, they are regular wolves.

*The Palace of Eulenberg*

*Residence of the Duke of Alva*

*Silva and Gomez (meeting)*

SILVA. Have you executed the duke's commands?

GOMEZ. Punctually. All the day patrols have received orders to assemble at the appointed time, at the various points that I have indicated. Meanwhile, they march as usual through the town to maintain order. Each is ignorant respecting the movements of the rest, and imagines the command to have reference to himself alone; thus in a moment the cordon can be formed, and all the avenues to the palace occupied. Know you the reason of this command?

SILVA. I am accustomed blindly to obey; and to whom can one more easily render obedience than to the duke, since the event always proves the wisdom of his commands.

GOMEZ. Well! Well! I am not surprised that you are become as reserved and monosyllabic as the duke, since you are obliged to be always about his person; to me, however, who am accustomed to the lighter service of Italy, it seems strange enough. In loyalty and obedience I am the same old soldier as ever; but I am wont to indulge in gossip and discussion; here, you are all silent, and seem as though you



knew not how to enjoy yourselves. The duke, methinks, is like a brazen tower without gates, the garrison of which must be furnished with wings. Not long ago I heard him say at the table of a gay, jovial fellow, that he was like a bad spirit-shop, with a brandy sign displayed to allure idlers, vagabonds, and thieves.

SILVA. And has he not brought us hither in silence?

GOMEZ. Nothing can be said against that. Of a truth, we, who witnessed the address with which he led the troops hither out of Italy, have seen something. How he advanced warily through friends and foes; through the French, both royalists and heretics; through the Swiss and their confederates; maintained the strictest discipline, and accomplished with ease, and without the slightest hindrance, a march that was esteemed so perilous! — We have seen and learned something.

SILVA. Here too! Is not everything as still and quiet as though there had been no disturbance?

GOMEZ. Why, as for that, it was tolerably quiet when we arrived.

SILVA. The provinces have become much more tranquil; if there is any movement now, it is only among those who wish to escape; and to them, methinks, the duke will speedily close every outlet.

GOMEZ. This service cannot fail to win for him the favour of the king.

SILVA. And nothing is more expedient for us than to retain his. Should the king come hither, the duke doubtless and all whom he recommends will not go without their reward.

GOMEZ. Do you really believe then that the king will come?

SILVA. So many preparations are being made, that the report appears highly probable.

GOMEZ. I am not convinced, however.

SILVA. Keep your thoughts to yourself, then. For if it should not be the king's intention to come, it is at least certain that he wishes the rumour to be believed.



*Enter FERDINAND*

FERDINAND. Is my father not yet abroad?

SILVA. We are waiting to receive his commands.

FERDINAND. The princes will soon be here.

GOMEZ. Are they expected to-day?

FERDINAND. Orange and Egmont.

GOMEZ. (*aside to SILVA*) A light breaks in upon me.

SILVA. Well, then, say nothing about it.

*Enter the DUKE OF ALVA (as he advances the rest draw back)*

ALVA. Gomez.

GOMEZ (*steps forward*). My lord.

ALVA. You have distributed the guards and given them their instructions?

GOMEZ. Most accurately. The day patrols ——

ALVA. Enough. Attend in the gallery. Silva will announce to you the moment when you are to draw them together, and to occupy the avenues leading to the palace. The rest you know.

GOMEZ. I do, my lord.

[*Exit*

ALVA. Silva.

SILVA. Here, my lord.

ALVA. I shall require you to manifest to-day all the qualities which I have hitherto prized in you: courage, resolve, unswerving execution.

SILVA. I thank you for affording me an opportunity of showing that your old servant is unchanged.

ALVA. The moment the princes enter my cabinet, hasten to arrest Egmont's private secretary. You have made all needful preparations for securing the others who are specified?

SILVA. Rely upon us. Their doom, like a well-calculated eclipse, will overtake them with terrible certainty.

ALVA. Have you had them all narrowly watched?

SILVA. All. Egmont especially. He is the only one whose demeanour, since your arrival, remains unchanged. The live-long day he is now on one horse and now on

another; he invites guests as usual, is merry and entertaining at table, plays at dice, shoots, and at night steals to his mistress. The others, on the contrary, have made a manifest pause in their mode of life; they remain at home, and, from the outward aspect of their houses, you would imagine that there was a sick man within.

ALVA. To work then, ere they recover in spite of us.

SILVA. I shall bring them without fail. In obedience to your commands we load them with officious honours; they are alarmed; cautiously, yet anxiously, they tender us their thanks, feel that flight would be the most prudent course, yet none venture to adopt it; they hesitate, are unable to work together, while the bond which unites them prevents their acting boldly as individuals. They are anxious to withdraw themselves from suspicion, and thus only render themselves more obnoxious to it. I already contemplate with joy the successful realization of your scheme.

ALVA. I rejoice only over what is accomplished, and not lightly over that; for there ever remains ground for serious and anxious thought. Fortune is capricious; the common, the worthless, she oft-times ennobles, while she dishonours with a contemptible issue the most maturely-considered schemes. Await the arrival of the princes, then order Gomez to occupy the streets, and hasten yourself to arrest Egmont's secretary, and the others who are specified. This done, return, and announce to my son that he may bring me the tidings in the council.

SILVA. I trust this evening I shall dare to appear in your presence. (ALVA *approaches his son, who has hitherto been standing in the gallery*) I dare not whisper it even to myself; but my mind misgives me. The event will, I fear, be different from what he anticipates. I see before me spirits, who, still and thoughtful, weigh in ebon scales the doom of princes and of many thousands. Slowly the beam moves up and down; deeply the judges appear to ponder; at length one scale sinks, the other rises, breathed on by the caprice of destiny, and all is decided.

[Exit

ALVA (*advancing with his son*). How did you find the town?

FERDINAND. All is again quiet. I rode as for pastime, from street to street. Your well-distributed patrols hold fear so tightly yoked, that she does not venture even to whisper. The town resembles a plain when the lightning's glare announces the impending storm: no bird, no beast is to be seen, that is not stealing to a place of shelter.

ALVA. Has nothing further occurred?

FERDINAND. Egmont, with a few companions, rode into the market-place; we exchanged greetings; he was mounted on an unbroken charger, which excited my admiration. "Let us hasten to break in our steeds," he exclaimed; "we shall need them ere long!" He said that he should see me again to-day; he is coming here, at your desire, to deliberate with you.

ALVA. He will see you again.

FERDINAND. Among all the knights whom I know here, he pleases me the best. I think we shall be friends.

ALVA. You are always rash and inconsiderate. I recognize in you the levity of your mother, which threw her unconditionally into my arms. Appearances have already allured you precipitately into many dangerous connexions.

FERDINAND. You will find me ever submissive.

ALVA. I pardon this inconsiderate kindness, this heedless gaiety, in consideration of your youthful blood. Only forget not on what mission I am sent, and what part in it I would assign to you.

FERDINAND. Admonish me, and spare me not, when you deem it needful.

ALVA. (*after a pause*) My son!

FERDINAND. My father!

ALVA. The princes will be here anon; Orange and Egmont. It is not mistrust that has withheld me till now, from disclosing to you what is about to take place. They will not depart hence.

FERDINAND. What do you purpose?

ALVA. It has been resolved to arrest them. — You are astonished! Learn what you have to do; the reasons you shall know when all is accomplished. Time fails now to unfold them. With you alone I wish to deliberate on the weightiest, the most secret matters; a powerful bond holds us linked together; you are dear and precious to me; on you I would bestow everything. Not the habit of obedience alone would I impress upon you; I desire also to implant within your mind the power to realize, to execute, to command; to you I would bequeath a vast inheritance, to the king a most useful servant; I would endow you with the noblest of my possessions, that you may not be ashamed to appear among your brethren.

FERDINAND. How deeply am I indebted to you for this love, which you manifest for me alone, while a whole kingdom trembles before you.

ALVA. Now hear what is to be done. As soon as the princes have entered, every avenue to the palace will be guarded. This duty is confided to Gomez. Silva will hasten to arrest Egmont's secretary, together with those whom we hold most in suspicion. You, meanwhile, will take the command of the guards stationed at the gates and in the courts. Before all, take care to occupy the adjoining apartment with the trustiest soldiers. Wait in the gallery till Silva returns, then bring me any unimportant paper, as a signal that his commission is executed. Remain in the ante-chamber till Orange retires, follow him; I will detain Egmont here as though I had some further communication to make to him. At the end of the gallery demand Orange's sword, summon the guards, secure promptly the most dangerous man; I meanwhile will seize Egmont here.

FERDINAND. I obey, my father — for the first time with a heavy and an anxious heart.

ALVA. I pardon you; this is the first great day of your life.

*Enter SILVA*

SILVA. A courier from Antwerp. Here is Orange's letter. He does not come.

ALVA. Says the messenger so? . . .

SILVA. No, my own heart tells me.

ALVA. In thee speaks my evil genius. (*after reading the letter, he makes a sign to the two, and they retire to the gallery. ALVA remains alone in front of the stage*) He comes not! Till the last moment he delays declaring himself. He ventures not to come! So then, the cautious man, contrary to all expectation, is for once sagacious enough to lay aside his wonted caution. The hour moves on! Let the finger travel but a short space over the dial, and a great work is done or lost — irrevocably lost; for the opportunity can never be retrieved, nor can our intention remain concealed. Long had I maturely weighed everything, foreseen even this contingency, and firmly resolved in my own mind what, in that case, was to be done; and now, when I am called upon to act, I can with difficulty guard my mind from being again distracted by conflicting doubts. Is it expedient to seize the others if he escape me? Shall I delay, and suffer Egmont to elude my grasp, together with his friends, and so many others who now, and perhaps for to-day only, are in my hands? How! Does destiny control even thee — the uncontrollable? How long matured! How well prepared! How great, how admirable the plan! How nearly had hope attained the goal! And now, at the decisive moment, thou art placed between two evils; as in a lottery, thou dost grasp in the dark future; what thou hast drawn remains still unrolled, to thee unknown whether it is a prize or a blank! (*He becomes attentive, like one who hears a noise, and steps to the window*) 'Tis he! Egmont! Did thy steed bear thee hither so lightly, and started not at the scent of blood, at the spirit with the naked sword who received thee at the gate? Dismount! Lo, now thou hast one foot in the grave! And now both! Ay, caress him, and for the last time stroke his neck for the gallant service he has rendered thee. And for me no choice is left. The delusion, in which Egmont ventures here to-day, cannot a second time deliver him into my hands! Hark! (*FERDINAND and SILVA enter hastily*) Obey my orders! I swerve not from my purpose. I shall detain Egmont here as best I may, till you bring me tidings from Silva. Then remain



at hand. Thee, too, fate has robbed of the proud honour of arresting with thine own hand the king's greatest enemy. (*to SILVA*) Be prompt! (*to FERDINAND*) Advance to meet him.

[*ALVA remains some moments alone, pacing the chamber in silence*]

*Enter EGMONT*

EGMONT. I come to learn the king's commands; to hear what service he demands from our loyalty, which remains eternally devoted to him.

ALVA. He desires, before all, to hear your counsel.

EGMONT. Upon what subject? Does Orange come also? I thought to find him here.

ALVA. I regret that he fails us at this important crisis. The king desires your counsel, your opinion as to the best means of tranquillizing these states. He trusts indeed that you will zealously co-operate with him in quelling these disturbances, and in securing to these provinces the benefit of complete and permanent order.

EGMONT. You, my lord, should know better than I, that tranquillity is already sufficiently restored, and was still more so, till the appearance of fresh troops again agitated the public mind, and filled it anew with anxiety and alarm.

ALVA. You seem to intimate that it would have been more advisable if the king had not placed me in a position to interrogate you.

EGMONT. Pardon me! It is not for me to determine whether the king acted advisedly in sending the army hither, whether the might of his royal presence alone would not have operated more powerfully. The army is here, the king is not. But we should be most ungrateful were we to forget what we owe to the Regent. Let it be acknowledged! By her prudence and valour, by her judicious use of authority and force, of persuasion and finesse, she pacified the insurgents, and, to the astonishment of the world, succeeded, in the course of a few months, in bringing a rebellious people back to their duty.

ALVA. I deny it not. The insurrection is quelled; and the people appear to be already forced back within the bounds of

obedience. But does it not depend upon their caprice alone to overstep these bounds? Who shall prevent them from again breaking loose? Where is the power capable of restraining them? Who will be answerable to us for their future loyalty and submission? Their own good will is the sole pledge we have.

EGMONT. And is not the good-will of a people the surest, the noblest pledge? By heaven! when can a monarch hold himself more secure, ay, both against foreign and domestic foes, than when all can stand for one, and one for all?

ALVA. You would not have us believe, however, that such is the case here at present?

EGMONT. Let the king proclaim a general pardon; he will thus tranquillize the public mind; and it will be seen how speedily loyalty and affection will return, when confidence is restored.

ALVA. How! And suffer those who have insulted the majesty of the king, who have violated the sanctuaries of our religion, to go abroad unchallenged! living witnesses that enormous crimes may be perpetrated with impunity!

EGMONT. And ought not a crime of frenzy, of intoxication, to be excused, rather than horribly chastised? Especially when there is the sure hope, nay, more, where there is positive certainty, that the evil will never again recur? Would not sovereigns thus be more secure? Are not those monarchs most extolled by the world and by posterity, who can pardon, pity, despise an offence against their dignity? Are they not on that account likened to God himself, who is far too exalted to be assailed by every idle blasphemy?

ALVA. And therefore, should the king maintain the honour of God and of religion, we the authority of the king. What the supreme power disdains to avert, it is our duty to avenge. Were I to counsel, no guilty person should live to rejoice in his impunity.

EGMONT. Think you that you will be able to reach them all? Do we not daily hear that fear is driving them to and fro, and forcing them out of the land. The more wealthy will escape to other countries, with their property, their children, and their friends; while the poor will carry their industrious hands to our neighbours.

ALVA. They will, if they cannot be prevented. It is on this account that the king desires counsel and aid from every prince, zealous co-operation from every stadtholder; not merely a description of the present posture of affairs, or conjectures as to what might take place were events suffered to hold on their course without interruption. To contemplate a mighty evil, to flatter oneself with hope, to trust to time, to strike a blow, like the clown in a play, so as to make a noise, and appear to do something, when in fact one would fain do nothing; is not such conduct calculated to awaken a suspicion that those who act thus contemplate with satisfaction a rebellion, which they would not indeed excite, but which they are by no means unwilling to encourage?

EGMONT. (*about to break forth, restrains himself, and after a brief pause, speaks with composure*) Every design is not immediately obvious, and a man's intentions are often misconstrued. It is widely rumoured, however, that the object which the king has in view is not so much to govern the provinces according to uniform and clearly defined laws, to maintain the majesty of religion, and to give his people universal peace, as unconditionally to subjugate them, to rob them of their ancient rights, to appropriate their possessions, to curtail the fair privileges of the nobles, for whose sake alone they are ready to serve him with life and limb. Religion, it is said, is merely a splendid device, behind which every dangerous design may be contrived with the greater ease; the prostrate crowds adore the sacred symbols pictured there, while behind lurks the fowler ready to ensnare them.

ALVA. Must I hear this from you?

EGMONT. I speak not my own sentiments! I but repeat what is loudly rumoured, and uttered here and there by rich and poor, by wise men and fools. The Netherlands fear a double yoke, and who will be surety to them for their liberty?

ALVA. Liberty! A fair word when rightly understood. What liberty would they have? What is the freedom of the most free? To do right! And in that the monarch will not hinder them. No! No! They imagine themselves enslaved, when they have not the power to injure themselves and



others. Would it not be better to abdicate at once, rather than rule such a people? When the country is threatened by foreign invaders, the citizens, occupied only with their immediate interests, bestow no thought upon the advancing foe, and when the king requires their aid, they quarrel among themselves, and thus, as it were, conspire with the enemy. Far better is it to circumscribe their power, to control and guide them for their good, as children are controlled and guided. Trust me, a people grows neither old nor wise, a people remains always in its infancy.

EGMONT. How rarely does a king attain wisdom! And is it not fit that the many should confide their interests to the many rather than to the one? And not even to the one, but to the few servants of the one, men who have grown old under the eyes of their master. To grow wise, it seems, is the exclusive privilege of these favoured individuals.

ALVA. Perhaps for the very reason that they are not left to themselves.

EGMONT. And therefore they would fain leave no one else to his own guidance. Let them do what they like, however; I have replied to your questions, and I repeat, the measures you propose will never do! They cannot succeed! I know my countrymen. They are men worthy to tread God's earth; each complete in himself, a little king, steadfast, active, capable, loyal, attached to ancient customs. It may be difficult to win their confidence, but it is easy to retain it. Firm and unbending! They may be crushed, but not subdued.

ALVA. (*who during this speech has looked round several times*) Would you venture to repeat what you have uttered, in the king's presence?

EGMONT. It were the worse, if in his presence I were restrained by fear! The better for him, and for his people, if he inspired me with confidence, if he encouraged me to give yet freer utterance to my thoughts.

ALVA. What is profitable, I can listen to as well as he.

EGMONT. I would say to him — 'Tis easy for the shepherd to drive before him a flock of sheep; the ox draws

the plough without opposition; but if you would ride the noble steed, you must study his thoughts, you must require nothing unreasonable, nor unreasonably, from him. The citizen desires to retain his ancient constitution; to be governed by his own countrymen; and why? Because he knows in that case how he shall be ruled, because he can rely upon their disinterestedness, upon their sympathy with his fate.

ALVA. And ought not the Regent to be empowered to alter these ancient usages? Should not this constitute his fairest privilege? What is permanent in this world? And shall the constitution of a state alone remain unchanged? Must not every relation alter in the course of time? And an ancient constitution become the source of a thousand evils, because not adapted to the present condition of the people? These ancient rights afford, doubtless, convenient loopholes, through which the crafty and the powerful may creep, and wherein they may lie concealed, to the injury of the people and of the entire community; and it is on this account, I fear, that they are held in such high esteem.

EGMONT. And these arbitrary changes, these unlimited encroachments of the supreme power, are they not indications that one will permit himself to do what is forbidden to thousands? The monarch would alone be free, that he may have it in his power to gratify his every wish, to realize his every thought. And though we should confide in him as a good and virtuous sovereign, will he be answerable to us for his successors? That none who come after him shall rule without consideration, without forbearance! And who would deliver us from absolute caprice, should he send hither his servants, his minions, who, without knowledge of the country and its requirements, should govern according to their own good pleasure, meet with no opposition, and know themselves exempt from all responsibility?

ALVA (*who has meanwhile again looked round*). There is nothing more natural than that a king should choose to retain the power in his own hands, and that he should select as the

instruments of his authority, those who best understand him, who desire to understand him, and who will unconditionally execute his will.

EGMONT. And just as natural is it, that the citizen should prefer being governed by one born and reared in the same land, whose notions of right and wrong are in harmony with his own, and whom he can regard as his brother.

ALVA. And yet the noble, methinks, has shared rather unequally with these brethren of his.

EGMONT. That took place centuries ago, and is now submitted to without envy. But should new men, whose presence is not needed in the country, be sent, to enrich themselves a second time, at the cost of the nation; should the people see themselves exposed to their bold unscrupulous rapacity, it would excite a ferment that would not soon be quelled?

ALVA. You utter words to which I ought not to listen; — I too am a foreigner.

EGMONT. That they are spoken in your presence is a sufficient proof that they have no reference to you.

ALVA. Be that as it may, I would rather not hear them from you. The king sent me here in the hope that I should obtain the support of the nobles. The king wills, and will have his will obeyed. After profound deliberation, he at length discerns what course will best promote the welfare of the people; matters cannot be permitted to go on as heretofore; it is his intention to limit their power for their own good; if necessary, to force upon them their salvation; to sacrifice the more dangerous citizens, that the rest may find repose, and enjoy in peace the blessing of a wise government. This is his resolve; this I am commissioned to announce to the nobles; and in his name I require from them advice, not as to the course to be pursued, — on that he is resolved, — but as to the best means of carrying his purpose into effect.

EGMONT. Your words, alas, justify the fears of the people, the fears of all! The king has then resolved as no sovereign ought to resolve. In order to govern his subjects more easily, he would crush, subvert, nay, ruthlessly destroy,

their strength, their spirit, and their self-respect! He would violate the core of their individuality, doubtless with the view of promoting their happiness. He would annihilate them, that they may assume a new, a different shape. Oh! if his purpose be good, he is fatally misguided! It is not the king whom we resist; — we but place ourselves in the way of the monarch, who, unhappily, is about to take the first rash step in a wrong direction.

ALVA. Such being your sentiments, it were a vain attempt for us to endeavour to agree. You must indeed think poorly of the king, and contemptibly of his counsellors, if you imagine that everything has not already been thought of and maturely weighed. I have no commission a second time to balance conflicting arguments. From the people I demand submission; — and from you, their leaders and princes, I demand counsel and support, as pledges of this unconditional duty.

EGMONT. Demand our heads and your object is attained; to a noble soul it must be indifferent whether he stoop his neck to such a yoke, or lay it upon the block. I have spoken much to little purpose. I have agitated the air, but accomplished nothing.

*Enter FERDINAND*

FERDINAND. Pardon my intrusion. Here is a letter, the bearer of which urgently demands an answer.

ALVA. Allow me to peruse its contents. (*Steps aside*)

FERDINAND (*to EGMONT*). 'Tis a noble steed that your people have brought for you.

EGMONT. I have seen worse. I have had him some time; I think of parting with him. If he pleases you we shall probably soon agree as to the price.

FERDINAND. We will think about it.

ALVA (*motions to his son, who retires to the back-ground*).

EGMONT. Farewell! Allow me to retire; for by heaven I know not what more I can say.

ALVA. Fortunately for you, chance prevents you from making a fuller disclosure of your sentiments. You

incautiously lay bare the recesses of your heart, and your own lips furnish evidence against you, more fatal than could be produced by your bitterest adversary.

EGMONT. This reproach disturbs me not. I know my own heart; I know with what honest zeal I am devoted to the king; I know that my allegiance is more true than that of many who, in his service, seek only to serve themselves. I regret that our discussion should terminate so unsatisfactorily, and trust that in spite of our opposing views, the service of the king, our master, and the welfare of our country, may speedily unite us; another conference, the presence of the princes who to-day are absent, may, perchance, in a more propitious moment, accomplish what at present appears impossible. In this hope I take my leave.

ALVA (*who at the same time makes a sign to FERDINAND*). Hold, Egmont! — Your sword! — (*The centre door opens and discloses the gallery, which is occupied with guards, who remain motionless*)

EGMONT (*after a pause of astonishment*). Was this then your intention? Was it for this purpose that I was summoned here? (*Grasping his sword as if to defend himself*) Am I then weaponless?

ALVA. The king commands. You are my prisoner. (*At the same time guards enter from both sides*)

EGMONT (*after a pause*). The king? — Orange! Orange! (*after a pause, resigning his sword*) Take it! It has been employed far oftener in defending the cause of my king, than in protecting this breast.

(*He retires by the centre door, followed by the guard and ALVA's son. ALVA remains standing while the curtain falls*)

## ACT THE FIFTH

*A street. Twilight*

CLARA   BRACKENBURG ·   CITIZENS

BRACKENBURG. Dearest, for heaven's sake, what would'st thou do!

CLARA. Come with me, Brackenburg! You cannot know the people, we are certain to rescue him; for what can equal their love for him? I could swear it, the breast of every citizen burns with the desire to deliver him, to avert danger from a life so precious, and to restore freedom to the most free. Come, a voice only is wanting to call them together. In their souls the memory is still fresh of all they owe him, and well they know that his mighty arm alone shields them from destruction. For his sake, for their own sake, they must peril everything. And what do we peril? At most, our lives, which, if he perish, are not worth preserving.

BRACKENBURG. Unhappy girl! Thou seest not the power that holds us fettered as with bands of iron.

CLARA. To me it does not appear invincible. Let us not lose time in idle words. Here come some of our old, honest, valiant citizens! Hark ye, friends! Neighbours! Hark! — Say, how fares it with Egmont?

CARPENTER. What does the girl want? Tell her to hold her peace.

CLARA. Step nearer, that we may speak low, till we are united and more strong. Not a moment is to be lost! Audacious tyranny, that dared to fetter him, already lifts the dagger against his life. Oh, my friends! With the advancing twilight my anxiety grows more intense. I dread this night. Come! Let us disperse; let us hasten from quarter to quarter, and call out the citizens. Let every one grasp his ancient weapons. In the market-place we meet again, and every one will be carried onward by our gathering stream. The enemy will see themselves surrounded, overwhelmed, and be



compelled to yield. How can a handful of slaves resist us? And he will return among us, he will see himself rescued, and can for once thank us, us, who are already so deeply in his debt. He will behold, perchance, ay doubtless, he will again behold the morn's red dawn in the free heavens.

CARPENTER. What ails thee, maiden?

CLARA. Can ye misunderstand me? I speak of the Count! I speak of Egmont.

JETTER. Speak not the name, 'tis deadly.

CLARA. Not speak his name? Not Egmont's name? Is it not on every tongue? Does it not appear everywhere legibly inscribed? I read it emblazoned in golden letters among the stars. Not utter it? What mean ye? Friends! Good, kind neighbours; ye are dreaming; collect yourselves. Gaze not upon me with those fixed and anxious looks! Cast not such timid glances on every side! I but give utterance to the wish of all. Is not my voice the voice of your own hearts? Who, in this fearful night, ere he seeks his restless couch, but on bended knee, will in earnest prayer seek to wrest his life as a cherished boon from heaven? Ask each other! Let each ask his own heart! And who but exclaims with me, — "Egmont's liberty, or death!"

JETTER. God help us! This is a sad business.

CLARA. Stay! Stay! Shrink not away at the sound of his name, to meet whom ye were wont to press forward so joyously! — When rumour announced his approach, when the cry arose, "Egmont comes! He comes from Ghent!" — then happy indeed were those citizens who dwelt in the streets through which he was to pass. And when the neighing of his steed was heard, did not every one throw aside his work, while a ray of hope and joy, like a sunbeam from his countenance, stole over the toilworn faces that peered from every window. Then, as ye stood in the doorways, ye would lift up your children in your arms, and pointing to him, exclaim: "See, that is Egmont, he who towers above the rest! 'Tis from him that ye must look for better times than those your poor fathers have known." Let not your children inquire

at some future day, "Where is he? Where are the better times ye promised us?" — Thus we waste the time in idle words! do nothing, — betray him.

SOEST. Shame on thee, Brackenburg! Let her not run on thus; prevent the mischief.

BRACKENBURG. Dear Clara! Let us go! What will your mother say? Perchance —

CLARA. Think you I am a child, a lunatic? What avails perchance? — With no vain hope can you hide from me this dreadful certainty.

Ye shall hear me and ye will: for I see it, ye are overwhelmed, ye cannot hearken to the voice of your own hearts. Through the present peril cast but one glance into the past, — the recent past. Send your thoughts forward into the future. Could ye live, would ye live, were he to perish? With him expires the last breath of freedom. What was he not to you? For whose sake did he expose himself to the direst perils? His blood flowed, his wounds were healed for you alone. A dungeon now confines that mighty spirit that upheld you all, while around him hover the terrors of secret assassination. Perhaps, he thinks of you, — perhaps he hopes in you, — he who has been accustomed only to grant favours to others and to fulfil their prayers.

CARPENTER. Come, gossip.

CLARA. I have neither the arms, nor the strength of a man; but I have that which ye all lack — courage and contempt of danger. Oh that my breath could kindle your souls! That, pressing you to this bosom, I could arouse and animate you! Come! I will march in your midst! — As a waving banner, though weaponless, leads on a gallant army of warriors, so shall my spirit hover, like a flame, over your ranks, while love and courage shall unite the dispersed and wavering multitude into a terrible host.

JETTER. Take her away, I pity her, poor thing.

*[Exeunt Citizens]*

BRACKENBURG. Clara! See you not where we are?



CLARA. Where? Under the dome of heaven, which has so often seemed to arch itself more gloriously as the noble Egmont passed beneath it. From these windows I have seen them look forth, four or five heads one above the other; at these doors the cowards have stood, bowing and scraping, if the hero but chanced to look down upon them! Oh how dear they were to me, when they honoured him. Had he been a tyrant they might have turned with indifference from his fall; but they loved him! O ye hands, so prompt to wave caps in his honour, can ye not grasp a sword? And yet, Brackenburg, it is for us to chide them? These arms that have so often embraced him, what do they for him now? Stratagem has accomplished so much in the world. You know the ancient castle, every passage, every secret way. — Nothing is impossible, — suggest some plan. —

BRACKENBURG. If you would but come home.

CLARA. Well.

BRACKENBURG. There at the corner I see Alva's guard; let the voice of reason penetrate to your heart! Do you deem me a coward? Do you doubt that for your sake I would peril my life? Here we are both mad, I as well as you. Do you not perceive that your scheme is impracticable? Oh be calm! You are beside yourself.

CLARA. Beside myself! Horrible. You Brackenburg are beside yourself. When you hailed the hero with loud acclaim, called him your friend, your hope, your refuge, shouted vivats as he passed; — then I stood in my corner, half opened the window, concealed myself while I listened, and my heart beat higher than yours who greeted him so loudly. Now it again beats higher! In the hour of peril you conceal yourselves, deny him, and feel not, that if he perish, you are lost.

BRACKENBURG. Come home.

CLARA. Home?

BRACKENBURG. Recollect yourself! Look around! These are the streets in which you were wont to appear only on the sabbath day, when you walked modestly to church; where, over-decorous perhaps, you were displeased if I but

joined you with a kindly greeting. And now you stand, speak, and act before the eyes of the whole world. Recollect yourself, love! How can this avail us? . . .

CLARA. Home! Yes, I remember. Come, Brackenbush, let us go home! Know you where my home lies?

[*Exeunt*]

### *A Prison*

*Lighted by a lamp, a couch in the back-ground*

EGMONT. (*alone*)

Old friend! Ever faithful sleep, dost thou too forsake me, like my other friends? How wert thou wont of yore to descend unsought upon my free brow, cooling my temples as with a myrtle wreath of love! Amidst the din of battle, on the waves of life, I rested in thine arms, breathing lightly as a growing boy. When tempests whistled through the leaves and boughs, when the summits of the lofty trees swung creaking in the blast, the inmost core of my heart remained unmoved. What agitates thee now? What shakes thy firm and steadfast mind? I feel it, 'tis the sound of the murderous axe, gnawing at thy root. Yet I stand erect, but an inward shudder runs through my frame. Yes, it prevails, this treacherous power; it undermines the firm, the lofty stem, and ere the bark withers, thy verdant crown falls crashing to the earth.

Yet wherefore now, thou who hast so often chased the weightiest cares like bubbles from thy brow, wherefore can'st thou not dissipate this dire foreboding which incessantly haunts thee in a thousand different shapes. Since when hast thou trembled at the approach of death, amid whose varying forms, thou wert wont calmly to dwell, as with the other shapes of this familiar earth. But 'tis not he, the sudden foe, to encounter whom the sound bosom emulously pants; — 'tis the dungeon, dread emblem of the grove, revolting alike to the hero, and the coward. How intolerable I used to feel it, in the stately hall, girt round by gloomy walls, when, seated on

my cushioned chair, in the solemn assembly of the princes, questions, which scarcely required deliberation, were overlaid with endless discussions, while the rafters of the ceiling seemed to stifle and oppress me. Then I would hurry forth as soon as possible, fling myself upon my horse with deep-drawn breath, and away to the wide champaign, man's natural element, where, exhaling from the earth, nature's richest treasures are poured forth around us, while, from the wide heavens, the stars shed down their blessings through the still air; where, like earthborn giants, we spring aloft, invigorated by our mother's touch; where the energies of our being throb in every vein; where the soul of the young hunter glows with the desire to overtake, to conquer, to capture, to possess; where the warrior, with rapid stride, assumes his inborn right to dominion over the world; and, with terrible liberty, sweeps like a desolating hailstorm over field and grove, knowing no boundaries, traced by the hand of man.

Thou art but a shadow, a dream of the happiness I so long possessed; where has treacherous fate conducted thee? Did she deny thee, to meet the rapid stroke of never-shunned death, in the open face of day, only to prepare for thee a foretaste of the grave, in the midst of their loathsome corruption? How revoltingly its rank odour exhales from these damp stones! Life stagnates, and my foot shrinks from the couch as from the grave.

Oh care, care! Thou who dost begin prematurely the work of murder, — forbear! — Since when has Egmont been alone, so utterly alone in the world? 'Tis doubt renders thee insensible, not happiness. The justice of the king, in which, through life thou hast confided, the friendship of the Regent, which, thou may'st confess it, was akin to love, — have these suddenly vanished, like a meteor of the night, and left thee alone upon thy gloomy path? Will not Orange, at the head of thy friends, contrive some daring scheme? Will not the people assemble, and with gathering might, attempt the rescue of their faithful friend?

Ye walls, which thus gird me round, separate me not from the well intentioned zeal of so many kindly souls. And

may the courage with which my glance was wont to inspire them, now return again from their hearts to mine. Yes! they assemble in thousands! they come! they stand beside me! their prayers rise to heaven, and implore a miracle; and if no angel stoops for my deliverance, I see them grasp eagerly their lance and sword. The gates are forced, the bolts are riven, the walls fall beneath their conquering hands, and Egmont advances joyously, to hail the freedom of the rising morn! How many well known faces receive me with loud acclaim! Oh Clara! wert thou a man, I should see thee here the very first, and thank thee for that which it is galling to owe even to a king — liberty.

### *Clara's House*

CLARA

CLARA. (*enters from her chamber with a lamp and a glass of water; she places the glass upon the table and steps to the window*). Brackenburch, is it you? What noise was that? No one yet? No one! I will set the lamp in the window, that he may see that I am still awake, that I still watch for him. He promised me tidings. Tidings? horrible certainty! — Egmont condemned! — What tribunal has the right to summon him? — And they dare to condemn him! — Is it the king who condemns him, or the duke? And the Regent withdraws herself! Orange hesitates, as do all his friends! — Is this the world, of whose fickleness and treachery I have heard so much, and as yet experienced nothing? Is this the world? — Who could be so base as to bear malice against one so dear? Could villainy itself be audacious enough to overwhelm with sudden destruction the object of a nation's homage? Yet so it is — it is — Oh Egmont, I held thee safe before God and man, safe as in my arms! What was I to thee? Thou hast called me thine, my whole being was devoted to thee. What am I now? In vain I stretch out my hand to the toils that environ thee. Thou helpless, and I free! — Here is the key that unlocks my chamber door. My going out and my coming in, depend upon my own caprice; yet, alas, to aid thee I am powerless! — Oh bind me that I may not go mad; hurl me

into the deepest dungeon, that I may dash my head against the damp walls, groan for freedom, and dream how I would rescue him if fetters did not hold me bound. — Now I am free, and in freedom lies the anguish of impotence. — Conscious of my own existence, yet unable to stir a limb in his behalf, alas! even this insignificant portion of thy being, thy Clara, is, like thee, a captive, and separated from thee, consumes her expiring energies in the agonies of death. — I hear a stealthy step, — a cough — Brackenburg, — 'tis he! — Kind, unhappy man, thy destiny remains ever the same; thy love opens to thee the door at night, — alas! to what a doleful meeting.

*Enter* BRACKENBURG

CLARA. You look so pale, so terrified! Speak, Brackenburg! What is the matter?

BRACKENBURG. I have sought you through perils and circuitous paths. The principal streets are occupied with troops; — through lanes and by-ways I have stolen to you!

CLARA. Tell me what is going on.

BRACKENBURG. (*seating himself*). Oh Clara, let me weep, I loved him not. He was the rich man who lured to better pasture the poor man's solitary lamb. Yet I cursed him not, God has created me with a true and tender heart. My life was consumed in anguish, and each day I hoped would end my misery.

CLARA. Let that be forgotten, Brackenburg! Forget thyself. Speak to me of him! Is it true? Is he condemned?

BRACKENBURG. He is! I know it.

CLARA. And still lives?

BRACKENBURG. Yes, he still lives.

CLARA. How can you be sure of that? Tyranny murders its victim in the night! His blood flows concealed from every eye. The people, stunned and bewildered, lie buried in sleep, dream of deliverance, dream of the fulfilment of their impotent wishes, while, indignant at our supineness, his spirit abandons the world. He is no more! Deceive me not; deceive not thyself!



BRACKENBURG. No, — he lives! and the Spaniards, alas, are preparing for the people, on whom they are about to trample, a terrible spectacle, in order to crush, by a violent blow, each heart that yet pants for freedom.

CLARA. Proceed! Calmly pronounce my death-warrant also! Near and more near I approach that blessed land, and already from those realms of peace, I feel the breath of consolation. Say on.

BRACKENBURG. From casual words, dropped here and there by the guards, I learned that secretly in the market-place they were preparing some terrible spectacle. Through by-ways and familiar lanes I stole to my cousin's house, and from a back window, looked out upon the market place. Torches waved to and fro, in the hands of a wide circle of Spanish soldiers. I strained my unaccustomed sight, and out of the darkness there arose before me a scaffold, dark, spacious, and lofty! The sight filled me with horror. Several persons were employed in covering with black cloth such portions of the wood-work as yet remain exposed. The steps were covered last, also with black; — I saw it all. They seemed preparing for the celebration of some horrible sacrifice. A white crucifix, that shone like silver through the night, was raised on one side. As I gazed, the terrible conviction strengthened in my mind. Scattered torches still gleamed here and there; gradually they flickered and went out. Suddenly the hideous birth of night returned into its mother's womb.

CLARA. Hush, Brackenburg! Be still! Let this veil rest upon my soul. The spectres are vanished; and thou, gentle night, lend thy mantle to the inwardly fermenting earth, she will no longer endure the loathsome burden, shuddering, she rends open her yawning chasms, and with a crash swallows the murderous scaffold. And that God, whom in their rage they have insulted, sends down his angel from on high; at the hallowed touch of the messenger bolts and bars fly back; he pours around our friend a flood of splendour, and leads him gently through the night to liberty. My path leads also through the darkness to meet him.

BRACKENBURG (*detaining her*). My child, whither would'st thou go? What would'st thou do.

CLARA. Softly, my friend, lest some one should awake! Lest we should awake ourselves! Know'st thou this phial, Brackenburg? I took it from thee once in jest, when thou, as was thy wont, didst threaten, in thy impatience, to end thy days. — And now my friend —

BRACKENBURG. In the name of all the saints!

CLARA. Thou can'st not hinder me. Death is my portion! Grudge me not the quiet and easy death which thou had'st prepared for thyself. Give me thine hand! At the moment when I uncloset that dismal portal through which there is no return, I may tell thee, with this pressure of the hand, how sincerely I have loved, how deeply I have pitied thee. My Brother died young; I chose thee to fill his place; thy heart rebelled, thou didst torment thyself and me, demanding with still increasing fervour, that which fate had not destined for thee. Forgive me and farewell! Let me call thee brother! 'Tis a name that embraces many names. Receive, with a true heart, the last fair token of the departing spirit — take this kiss. Death unites all, Brackenburg — us too it will unite!

BRACKENBURG. Let me then die with thee! Share it! oh share it! There is enough to extinguish two lives.

CLARA. Hold! Thou must live, thou can'st live. — Support my mother, who, without thee, would be a prey to want. Be to her what I can no longer be, live together, and weep for me. Weep for our fatherland, and for him who could alone have upheld it. The present generation must still endure this bitter woe; vengeance itself could not obliterate it. Poor souls, live on, through this gap in time. To-day the world suddenly stands still, its course is arrested, and my pulse will beat but for a few minutes longer. Farewell!

BRACKENBURG. Oh, live with us, as we live only for thy sake! In taking thine own life thou wilt take ours also; still live and suffer. We will stand by thee, nothing shall sever us from thy side, and love, with ever-watchful solicitude, shall prepare for thee the sweetest consolation in its loving arms. Be ours! Ours! I dare not say, mine.

CLARA. Hush, Brackenburg! You know not what chord you touch. Where you see hope, I see only despair.

BRACKENBURG. Share hope with the living! Pause on the brink of the precipice, cast one glance into the gulf below, and then look back on us.

CLARA. I have conquered; call me not back to the struggle.

BRACKENBURG. Thou art stunned; enveloped in night thou seekest the abyss. Every light is not yet extinguished, yet many days! —

CLARA. Alas! Alas! Cruelly thou dost rend the veil from before mine eyes. Yes, the day will dawn! Despite its misty shroud it needs must dawn. The citizen gazes timidly from his window, night leaves behind an ebon speck; he looks, and the scaffold looms fearfully in the morning light. With re-awakened anguish the desecrated image of the Saviour lifts to the Father its imploring eyes. The sun veils his beams, he will not mark the hero's death-hour. Slowly the fingers go their round — one hour strikes after another — hold! Now is the time! The thought of the morning scares me into the grave. *[She goes to the window as if to look out, and drinks secretly]*

BRACKENBURG. Clara! Clara!

CLARA. *(goes to the table, and drinks water)* Here is the remainder. I invite thee not to follow me. Do as thou wilt; farewell. Extinguish this lamp silently and without delay; I am going to rest. Steal quietly away, close the door after thee. Be still! Wake not my mother! Go, save thyself, if thou wouldst not be taken for my murderer.

*[Exit]*

BRACKENBURG. She leaves me for the last time as she has ever done. What human soul could conceive how cruelly she lacerates the heart that loves her. She leaves me to myself, leaves me to choose between life and death, and both are alike hateful to me. To die alone! Weep ye tender souls! Fate has no sadder doom than mine. She shares with me the death-potion, yet sends me from her side! She draws me after



her, yet thrusts me back into life! Oh, Egmont, how glorious is thy lot! She goes before thee! From her hand thou wilt receive the victor's crown. She will bring heaven itself to meet thy departing spirit. And shall I follow? Again to stand aloof? To carry this inextinguishable jealousy even to yon distant realms? Earth is no longer a tarrying place for me, and hell and heaven offer equal torture. How welcome to the wretched the dread hand of annihilation!

[Exit

*[The scene remains some time unchanged. Music sounds, indicating CLARA's death; the lamp which BRACKENBURG had forgotten to extinguish, flares up once or twice, and then suddenly expires. The scene changes to*

### *A prison*

EGMONT is discovered sleeping on a couch. A rustling of keys is heard; the door opens; servants enter with torches; FERDINAND and SILVA follow, accompanied by soldiers. EGMONT starts from his sleep

EGMONT. Who are ye that thus rudely banish slumber from my eyes? What mean these vague and insolent glances? Why this fearful procession? With what dream of horror come ye to delude my half awakened soul?

SILVA. The duke sends us to announce your sentence.

EGMONT. Do ye also bring the headsman who is to execute it?

SILVA. Listen, and you will know the doom that awaits you.

EGMONT. It is in keeping with the rest of your infamous proceedings. Alike conceived and executed in the night, so would this audacious act of injustice shroud itself from observation! Step boldly forth, thou who dost bear the sword concealed beneath thy mantle; here is my head, the freest ever doomed by tyranny to the block.

SILVA. You err! The righteous judges who have condemned you, will not conceal their sentence from the light of day.

EGMONT. Then does their audacity exceed all imagination and belief.

SILVA. (*takes the sentence from an attendant, unfolds it, and reads*) "In the king's name, and invested by his majesty with authority to judge all his subjects, of whatever rank, not excepting the knights of the Golden Fleece, we declare ——"

EGMONT. Can the king transfer that authority?

SILVA. "We declare, after a strict and legal investigation, you, Henry, Count Egmont, Prince of Gaure, guilty of high treason, and pronounce your sentence: — That at early dawn you be led from this prison to the market-place, and that there, in sight of the people, and as a warning to traitors, your head be severed from your body. Given at Brussels." (*date and year so indistinctly read as to be imperfectly heard by the audience*) "Ferdinand, Duke of Alva, president of the tribunal of twelve."

You know your doom. Brief time remains for you to prepare for the impending stroke, to arrange your affairs, and to take leave of your friends.

[*Exit SILVA, with followers. FERDINAND remains with two torch-bearers. The stage is dimly lighted*]

EGMONT. (*stands for a time, as if buried in thought, and allows SILVA to retire without looking round. He imagines himself alone, and, on raising his eyes, beholds ALVA'S son*) Thou tarriest here? Wouldst thou, by thy presence, augment my amazement, my horror? Wouldst thou carry to thy father the welcome tidings that thou hast seen me overpowered by womanish despair? Go, tell him that he deceives neither the world nor me. At first it will be whispered cautiously behind his back, then spoken more and more loudly, and when, at some future day, the ambitious man descends from his proud eminence, a thousand voices will proclaim — that 'twas not the welfare of the state, nor the honour of the king, nor the tranquillity of the provinces, that brought him hither. For his own selfish ends he, the warrior, has counselled war, that the value of his services might be enhanced. He has excited this monstrous insurrection that his presence might be deemed

necessary in order to quell it. And I fall a victim to his mean hatred, his contemptible envy. Yes, I know it, dying and mortally wounded I may utter it; long has the proud man envied me, long has he meditated and planned my ruin.

Even then, when still young, we played at dice together, and the heaps of gold passed rapidly from his side to mine, he would look on with affected composure, while inwardly consumed with rage, more at my success than at his own loss. Well do I remember the fiery glance, the treacherous pallor that overspread his features, when, at a public festival, we shot for a wager before assembled thousands. He challenged me, and both nations stood by; Spaniards and Netherlanders wagered on either side; I was the victor; his ball missed, mine hit the mark, and the air was rent by acclamations from my friends. His shot now hits me. Tell him that I know this, that I know him, that the world despises every trophy that a paltry spirit erects for itself by base and surreptitious arts. And thou! If it be possible for a son to swerve from the manners of his father, practise shame betimes, while thou art compelled to feel shame for him whom thou wouldst fain revere with thy whole heart.

FERDINAND. I listen without interrupting thee! Thy reproaches fall like blows upon a helm of steel. I feel the shock, but I am armed. They strike, but do not wound me; I am sensible only to the anguish that lacerates my heart. Alas! Alas! Have I lived to witness such a scene? Am I sent hither to behold a spectacle like this?

EGMONT. Dost thou break out into lamentations! What moves, what agitates thee thus? Is it a late remorse at having lent thyself to this infamous conspiracy? Thou art so young, thy exterior is so prepossessing. Thy demeanour towards me was so friendly, so unreserved! So long as I beheld thee, I was reconciled with thy father; and crafty, ay, more crafty than he, thou hast lured me into the toils. Thou art the wretch! The monster! Whoso confides in him, does so at his own peril; but who could apprehend danger in trusting thee? Go! Go! Rob me not of the few moments that are left

to me! Go, that I may collect my thoughts, forget the world, and thee, first of all!

FERDINAND. What can I say! I stand, and gaze on thee, yet see thee not; I am scarcely conscious of my own existence. Shall I seek to excuse myself? Shall I aver that it was not till the last moment that I was made aware of my father's intentions? That I acted as the constrained, the passive instrument of his will? What signifies now the opinion thou mayst entertain of me? Thou art lost; and I, miserable wretch, stand here but to assure thee of it, and to lament thy doom.

EGMONT. What strange voice, what unexpected consolation comes thus to cheer my passage to the tomb? Thou, the son of my first, of almost my only enemy, thou dost pity me, thou art not associated with my murderers? Speak! In what light must I regard thee?

FERDINAND. Cruel father! Yes, I recognize thy nature in this command. Thou didst know my heart, my disposition, which thou hast so often censured as the inheritance of a tender-hearted mother. To mould me into thine own likeness thou hast sent me hither. Thou dost compel me to behold this man on the verge of the yawning grave, in the grasp of an arbitrary doom, that I may experience the profoundest anguish; that thus, rendered callous to every fate, I may henceforth meet every event with a heart unmoved.

EGMONT. I am amazed! Be calm! Act and speak like a man.

FERDINAND. Oh, that I were a woman! That they might say — what moves, what agitates thee? Tell me of a greater, a more monstrous crime, make me the spectator of a more direful deed; I will thank thee, I will say this was nothing.

EGMONT. Thou dost forget thyself. Consider where thou art?

FERDINAND. Let this passion rage, let me give vent to my anguish. I will not seem composed when my whole inner being is convulsed. Must I behold thee here? Thee? It is

horrible? Thou understandest me not! How shouldst thou understand me? Egmont! Egmont!

*[Falling on his neck]*

EGMONT. Explain this mystery.

FERDINAND. It is no mystery.

EGMONT. How can the fate of a mere stranger thus deeply move thee?

FERDINAND. Not a stranger! Thou art no stranger to me. Thy name it was that, even from my boyhood, shone before me like a star in heaven? How often have I made inquiries concerning thee, and listened to the story of thy deeds. The youth is the hope of the boy, the man of the youth. Thus didst thou walk before me, ever before me; I saw thee without envy, and followed after, step by step; at length I hoped to see thee — I saw, and my heart embraced thee. I had destined thee for myself, and when I beheld thee, I made choice of thee anew. I hoped now to know thee, to associate with thee, to be thy friend — 'tis over, and I meet thee here!

EGMONT. My friend, if it can be any comfort to thee, be assured that the very moment we met, my heart was drawn towards thee. Now listen! Let us exchange a few quiet words; is it the stern, the settled purpose of thy father to take my life?

FERDINAND. It is.

EGMONT. This sentence is not a mere scarecrow, designed to terrify me, to punish me through fear and intimidation, to humiliate me, that he may then raise me again by the royal favour?

FERDINAND. Alas, no! At first I flattered myself with this delusive hope, and even then my heart was filled with anguish to behold thee thus. Thy doom is real! Is certain! I cannot command myself. Who will counsel, who will aid me to meet the inevitable?

EGMONT. Listen! If thy heart is impelled so powerfully in my favour, if thou dost abhor the tyranny that holds me fettered, then deliver me! The moments are precious. Thou art the son of the all-powerful, and thou hast power thyself.



Let us fly! I know the roads; the means of effecting our escape cannot be unknown to thee. These walls, a few short miles, alone separate us from my friends. Loose these fetters, conduct me to them; be ours. The king, on some future day, will doubtless thank my deliverer. Now he is taken by surprise, or perchance he is ignorant of the whole proceeding. Thy father ventures on this daring step, and majesty, though horror-struck at the deed, must needs sanction the irrevocable. Thou dost deliberate? Oh, contrive for me the way to freedom! Speak; nourish hope in a living soul.

FERDINAND. Cease! Oh cease! Every word deepens my despair. There is here no outlet, no counsel, no escape. — 'Tis this thought that tortures me, that lays hold of my heart, and rends it as with talons. I have myself spread the net; I know its firm, inextricable knots; I know that every avenue is barred alike to courage and to stratagem. I feel that I too am fettered, like thyself, like all the rest. Think'st thou that I should give way to lamentation if any means of safety remained untried? I have thrown myself at his feet, I have remonstrated, I have implored. He has sent me hither, in order to blast in this fatal moment, every remnant of joy and happiness that yet survived within my heart.

EGMONT. And is there no deliverance?

FERDINAND. None!

EGMONT. (*stamping his foot*) No deliverance! — Sweet life! Sweet, pleasant habitude of being and of activity! Must I part from thee! So calmly part! Not amid the tumult of battle, the din of arms, the excitement of the fray, dost thou send me a hasty farewell; thine is no hurried leave; thou dost not abridge the moment of separation. Once more let me clasp thy hand, gaze once more into thine eyes, feel with keen emotion, thy beauty and thy worth, then resolutely tear myself away, and say; — depart!

FERDINAND. Must I stand by, and look passively on; unable to save thee, or to give thee aid! What voice avails for lamentation! What heart but must break under the pressure of such anguish?

EGMONT. Be calm!

FERDINAND. Thou can'st be calm, thou can'st renounce life: led on by necessity, thou can'st advance to the direful struggle, with the courage of a hero. What can I do? What ought I to do? Thou dost conquer thyself and us; thou art the victor; I survive both myself and thee. I have lost my light at the banquet, my banner on the field. The future lies before me, dark, desolate, perplexed.

EGMONT. Young friend, whom by a strange fatality, at the same moment, I both win and lose, who dost feel for me, who dost suffer for me the agonies of death, — look on me; — thou wilt not lose me. If my life was a mirror in which thou didst love to contemplate thyself, so be also my death. Men are not together only when in each other's presence; — the distant, the departed, still live for us. I shall live for thee, and for myself I have lived long enough. I have enjoyed each day; each day, I have performed, with prompt activity, the duties enjoined by my conscience. Now my life ends, as it might have ended, long, long, ago, on the sands of Gravelines. I shall cease to live; but I have lived. My friend, follow in my steps, lead a cheerful and a joyous life, and dread not the approach of death.

FERDINAND. Thou should'st have saved thyself for us, thou could'st have saved thyself. Thou art the cause of thine own destruction. Often have I listened when able men discoursed concerning thee; foes and friends, they would dispute long as to thy worth; but on one point they were agreed, none ventured to deny that thou wert treading a dangerous path. How often have I longed to warn thee! Hadst thou no friends?

EGMONT. I was warned.

FERDINAND. And when I found all these allegations, point for point, in the indictment, together with thy answers, containing much that might serve to palliate thy conduct, but no evidence weighty enough fully to exculpate thee.

EGMONT. No more of this. Man imagines that he directs his life, that he governs his actions, when in fact his

existence is irresistibly controlled by his destiny. Let us not dwell upon this subject; these reflections I can dismiss with ease — not so my apprehensions for these provinces; yet they too will be cared for. Could my blood bring peace to my people, how freely should it flow. Alas! This may not be. Yet it ill becomes a man idly to speculate, when the power to act is no longer his. If thou canst restrain or guide the fatal power of thy father; do so. Alas, who can? — Farewell!

FERDINAND. I cannot leave thee.

EGMONT. Let me urgently recommend my followers to thy care! I have worthy men in my service; let them not be dispersed, let them not become destitute! How fares it with Richard, my Secretary?

FERDINAND. He is gone before thee. They have beheaded him, as thy accomplice in high treason.

EGMONT. Poor soul! — Yet one word, and then farewell, I can no more. However powerfully the spirit may be stirred, nature at length irresistibly asserts her rights; and like a child who enjoys refreshing slumber though enveloped in a serpent's folds, so the weary one lays himself down to rest before the gates of death, and sleeps soundly, as though a toilsome journey yet lay before him. — One word more, — I know a maiden; thou wilt not despise her because she was mine. Since I can commend her to thy care, I shall die in peace. Thy soul is noble; in such a man, a woman is sure to find a protector. Lives my old Adolphus? Is he free?

FERDINAND. The active old man, who always attended thee on horseback?

EGMONT. The same.

FERDINAND. He lives, he is free.

EGMONT. He knows her dwelling; let him guide thy steps thither, and reward him to his dying day, for having shown thee the way to this jewel. — Farewell!

FERDINAND. I cannot leave thee.

EGMONT. (*urging him towards the door*). Farewell!

FERDINAND. Oh let me linger yet a moment!

EGMONT. No leave-taking, my friend.



*(He accompanies Ferdinand to the door, and then tears himself away; Ferdinand overwhelmed with grief, hastily retires)*

EGMONT (*alone*)

EGMONT. Cruel man! Thou didst not think to render me this service through thy son. He has been the means of relieving my mind from the pressure of care and sorrow, from fear and every anxious thought. Gently, yet urgently, nature claims her final tribute. 'Tis past! — 'Tis resolved! And the reflections which, in the suspense of last night, kept me wakeful on my couch, now with resistless certainty, lull my senses to repose.

*(He seats himself upon the couch; music)*

Sweet sleep! Like the purest happiness, thou comest most willingly, uninvited, unsought. Thou dost loosen the knots of earnest thoughts, dost mingle all images of joy and of sorrow, unimpeded the circle of inner harmony flows on, and wrapped in fond delusion, we sink into oblivion, and cease to be.

*[He sleeps; music accompanies his slumber. The wall behind his couch appears to open and discovers a brilliant apparition. Freedom, in a celestial garb, surrounded by a glory, reposes in a cloud. Her features are those of Clara and she inclines towards the sleeping hero. Her countenance betokens compassion, she seems to lament his fate. Quickly she recovers herself and with an encouraging gesture exhibits the symbols of freedom, the bundle of arrows, with the staff and cap. She encourages him to be of good cheer, and while she signifies to him, that his death will secure the freedom of the provinces, she hails him as a conqueror, and extends to him a laurel crown. As the wreath approaches his head, Egmont moves like one asleep, and reclines with his face towards her. She holds the wreath suspended over his head; — martial music is heard in the distance, at the first sound the vision disappears. The music grows louder and louder. Egmont awakes. The prison is dimly illumined by the dawn. — His first impulse is to lift his hand to his head; he stands up, and gazes round, his hand still upraised]*

The crown is vanished! Beautiful vision, the light of day has frightened thee! Yes, they revealed themselves to my sight, uniting in one radiant form the two sweetest joys of my heart. Divine Liberty borrowed the mien of my beloved one; the lovely maiden arrayed herself in the celestial garb of her friend. In a solemn moment they appeared united with aspect more earnest than tender. With blood-stained feet the vision approached, the waving folds of her robe also were tinged with blood. It was my blood, and the blood of many brave hearts. No! It shall not be shed in vain! Forward! Brave people! The goddess of liberty leads you on! And as the sea breaks through and destroys the barriers that would oppose its fury, so do ye overwhelm the bulwark of tyranny, and with your impetuous flood sweep it away from the land which it usurps.

[Drums

Hark! Hark! How often has this sound summoned my joyous steps to the field of battle and of victory! How bravely did I tread, with my gallant comrades, the dangerous path of fame! And now, from this dungeon I shall go forth, to meet a glorious death; I die for freedom, for whose cause I have lived and fought, and for whom I now offer myself up a sorrowing sacrifice.

[*The back-ground is occupied by Spanish soldiers with halberts*

Yes, lead them on! Close your ranks, ye terrify me not. I am accustomed to stand amid the serried ranks of war, and environed by the threatening forms of death, to feel, with double zest, the energy of life.

[Drums

The foe closes round on every side! Swords are flashing; courage, friends! Behind are your parents, your wives, your children!

[*Pointing to the guard*

And these are impelled by the word of their leader, not by their own free will. Protect your homes! And to save those who are most dear to you, be ready to follow my example, and to fall with joy.

[*Drums. As he advances through the guards towards the door in the back ground, the curtain falls. The music joins in, and the scene closes with a symphony of victory*



GOETZ VON BERLICHINGEN  
WITH THE IRON HAND  
  
A TRAGEDY

TRANSLATED BY WALTER SCOTT, Esq., ADVOCATE

1799



## PREFACE

GOETZ VON BERLICHINGEN, the hero of the following drama, flourished in the 15th century, during the reign of Maximilian the First, Emperor of Germany. Previous to this period, every German noble holding a fief immediately from the Emperor, exercised on his estate a species of sovereignty subordinate to the imperial authority alone. Thus, from the princes and prelates possessed of extensive territories, down to the free knights and barons, whose domains consisted of a castle and a few acres of mountain and forest ground, each was a petty monarch upon his own property, independent of all control but the remote supremacy of the Emperor.

Among the extensive rights conferred by such a constitution, that of waging war against each other by their own private authority, was most precious to a race of proud and military barons. These private wars were called *feuds*, and the privilege of carrying them on was named *Faustrecht* (club-law). As the empire advanced in civilization, the evils attending feuds became dreadfully conspicuous: each petty knight was by law entitled to make war upon his neighbours without any further ceremony than three days previous defiance by a written form called *Fehdbrief*. Even the Golden Bull, which remedied so many evils in the Germanic body, left this dangerous privilege in full vigour. In time the residence of every free baron became a fortress, from which, as his passions or avarice dictated, sallied a band of marauders to back his quarrel, or to collect an extorted revenue from the merchants who presumed to pass through his domain. At length whole bands of these free-booting nobles used to league together for the purpose of mutual defence against their more powerful neighbours, as likewise for that of predatory excursions against the princes, free towns, and ecclesiastic states of the empire, whose wealth tempted the needy barons to exercise against them their

privilege of waging private war. These confederacies were distinguished by various titles expressive of their object: we find among them the Brotherhood of the Mace, the Knights of the Bloody Sleeve, &c., &c. If one of the brotherhood was attacked, the rest marched without delay to his assistance; and thus, though individually weak, the petty feudatories maintained their ground against the more powerful members of the empire. Their independence and privileges were recognised and secured to them by many edicts; and though hated and occasionally oppressed by the princes and ecclesiastical authorities, to whom in return they were a scourge and a pest, they continued to maintain tenaciously the good old privilege (as they termed it) of *Faustrecht*, which they had inherited from their fathers. Amid the obvious mischiefs attending such a state of society, it must be allowed that it is frequently the means of calling into exercise the highest heroic virtues. Men daily exposed to danger, and living by the constant exertion of their courage, acquired the virtues as well as the vices of a savage state; and among many instances of cruelty and rapine, occur not a few of the most exalted valour and generosity. If the fortress of a German knight was the dread of the wealthy merchant and abbot, it was often the ready and hospitable refuge of the weary pilgrim and oppressed peasant. Although the owner subsisted by the plunder of the rich, yet he was frequently beneficent to the poor, and beloved by his own family dependents and allies. The spirit of chivalry doubtless contributed much to soften the character of these marauding nobles. A respect for themselves taught them generosity towards their prisoners, and certain acknowledged rules prevented many of the atrocities which it might have been expected would have marked these feuds. No German noble, for example, if made captive, was confined in fetters or in a dungeon, but remained a prisoner at large upon his parole (which was called *knightly ward*), either in the castle of his conqueror or in some other place assigned to him. The same species of honourable captivity was often indulged by the Emperor to

offenders of a noble rank, of which some instances will be found in the following pages.

Such was the state of the German nobles, when, on the 7th of August, 1495, was published the memorable edict of Maximilian for the establishment of the public peace of the empire. By this ordinance, the right of private war was totally abrogated, under the penalty of the Ban of the empire, to be enforced by the Imperial Chamber then instituted. This was at once a sentence of anathema secular and spiritual, containing the dooms of outlawry and excommunication. — This ordinance was highly acceptable to the princes, bishops, and free towns, who had little to gain and much to lose in these perpetual feuds; and they combined to enforce it with no small severity against the petty feudatories: — these, on the other hand, sensible that the very root of their importance consisted in their privilege of declaring private war, without which they foresaw they would not long be able to maintain their independence, struggled hard against the execution of this edict; by which their confederacies were declared unlawful, and all means taken from them of resisting their richer neighbours.

Upon the jarring interests of the princes and clergy on the one hand, and of the free knights and petty imperial feudatories on the other, arise the incidents of the following drama. The hero, Goetz von Berlichingen, was in reality a zealous champion for the privileges of the free knights, and was repeatedly laid under the Ban of the empire for the feuds in which he was engaged, from which he was only released in consequence of high reputation for gallantry and generosity. His life was published at Nuremberg, 1731; and some account of his exploits, with a declaration of feud (*Fehdbrief*) issued by him against that city, will be found in Meusel's *Inquiry into History*, vol. 4th.

While the princes and free knights were thus banded against each other, the peasants and bondsmen remained in the most abject state of ignorance and oppression. This occasioned at different times the most desperate insurrections, resembling in their nature, and in the atrocities committed by the furious



insurgents, the rebellions of Tyler and Cade in England, or that of the *Jacquerie* in France. Such an event occurs in the following tragedy. There is also a scene founded upon the noted institution called the Secret or Invisible Tribunal. With this extraordinary judicatory, the members and executioners of which were unknown, and met in secret to doom to death those criminals whom other courts of justice could not reach, the English reader has been made acquainted by several translations from the German, particularly the excellent romances called *Herman of Unna*, and *Alf von Duilman*.

The following drama was written by the elegant author of the *Sorrows of Werter*, in imitation, it is said, of the manner of Shakespeare. This resemblance is not to be looked for in the style or expression, but in the outline of the characters, and mode of conducting the incidents of the piece. In Germany it is the object of enthusiastic admiration; partly owing doubtless to the force of national partiality towards a performance in which the ancient manners of the country are faithfully and forcibly painted. Losing, however, this advantage, and under all the defects of a translation, the translator ventures to hope that in the following pages there will still be found something to excite interest. Some liberties have been taken with the original, in omitting two occasional disquisitions upon the civil law as practised in Germany\*. Literal accuracy has been less studied in the translation, than an attempt to convey the spirit and general effect of the piece. Upon the whole, it is hoped the version will be found faithful; of which the translator is less distrustful, owing to the friendship of a gentleman of high literary eminence, who has obligingly taken the trouble of superintending the publication.

WALTER SCOTT.

EDINBURGH, *3rd February*, 1799.

---

\* In the present revision these omitted portions are restored.

## DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

MAXIMILIAN, Emperor of Germany

GOETZ VON BERLICHINGEN, a free knight of the empire

ELIZABETH, his wife

MARIA, his sister

CHARLES, his son — a boy

GEORGE, his page

BISHOP OF BAMBERG

ADELBERT VON WEISLINGEN, a free German knight of the empire

ADELAIDE VON WALLDORF, widow of the Count von Walldorf

LIEBTRAUT, a Courtier of the Bishop's

ABBOT OF FULDA, residing at the Bishop's court

OLEARIUS, a doctor of laws

BROTHER MARTIN, a monk

HANS VON SELBITZ	}	Free knights, in alliance with Goetz
FRANZ VON SICKINGEN		

LERSE, a trooper

FRANCIS, esquire to Weislingen

Female Attendant on Adelaide

PRESIDENT, Accuser, and Avenger of the Secret Tribunal

METZLER	}	Leaders of the Insurgent Peasantry
SIEVERS		
LINK		
KOHL		
WILD		

Imperial Commissioners

Two Merchants of Nuremberg

Magistrates of Heilbronn

MAXIMILIAN STUMF, a vassal of the Palsgrave

An unknown

Bride's father	}	Peasants
Bride		
Bridegroom		

Gipsy captain

Gipsy mother and women

STICKS and WOLF, gipsies

Imperial captain

Imperial officers

Innkeeper

Sentinel

Serjeant-at-arms

Imperial Soldiers — Troopers belonging to Goetz, to Selbitz, to Sickingen, and to Weislingen — Peasants — Gipsies — Judges of the Secret Tribunal — Gaolers — Courtiers, &c. &c. &c.

# GOETZ VON BERLICHINGEN

## WITH THE IRON HAND

### ACT I

#### SCENE I. *An Inn at Schwarzenberg in Franconia*

METZLER and SIEVERS, *two Swabian peasants, are seated at a table —*  
*At the fire, at some distance from them, two troopers from Bamberg — The*  
*Innkeeper*

SIEVERS. Hansel! Another cup of brandy — and Christian measure.

INNKEEPER. Thou art a Never-enough.

METZLER (*apart to Sievers*). Repeat that again about Berlichingen — The Bambergers there are so angry they are almost black in the face.

SIEVERS. Bambergers! — What are they about here?

METZLER. Weislingen has been two days up yonder at the Castle with the Earl — they are his attendants — they came with him I know not whence; they are waiting for him — He is going back to Bamberg.

SIEVERS. Who is that Weislingen?

METZLER. The Bishop of Bamberg's right hand! a powerful lord, who is lying in wait to play Goetz some trick.

SIEVERS. He had better take care of himself.

METZLER (*aside*). Prithee go on! (*Aloud*) How long is it since Goetz had a new dispute with the Bishop? I thought all had been reconciled and squared between them.

SIEVERS. Aye! Reconciliation with Priests! — When the Bishop saw he could do no good, and always got the worst of it, he pulled in his horns, and made haste to patch up a truce — and honest Berlichingen let him off very easily, as he always does when he has got the advantage.

METZLER. God bless him! a worthy nobleman.

SIEVERS. Only think! Was it not shameful? They fell upon a page of his, to his no small surprise; but they will soon be mauled for that.

METZLER. How provoking that his last stroke should have missed. He must have been plaguily annoyed.

SIEVERS. I don't think anything has vexed him so much for a long time. Look you, all had been calculated to a nicety; the time the Bishop would come from the bath, with how many attendants, and which road; and, had it not been betrayed by some traitor, Goetz would have blessed his bath for him, and rubbed him dry.

FIRST TROOPER. What are you prating there about our Bishop; Do you want to pick a quarrel?

SIEVERS. Mind your own affairs; you have nothing to do with our table.

SECOND TROOPER. Who taught you to speak disrespectfully of our Bishop?

SIEVERS. Am I bound to answer *your* questions? — Look at the fool! — (*The first TROOPER boxes his ears*)

METZLER. Smash the rascal! (*They attack each other*)

SECOND TROOPER (*to METZLER*). Come on if you dare —

INNKEEPER (*separating them*). Will you be quiet? Zounds! Take yourselves off if you have any scores to settle; in my house I will have order and decency. (*He pushes the TROOPERS out of doors*) — And what are you about, you jackasses?

METZLER. No bad names, Hansell or your sconce shall pay for it. Come, comrade, we'll go and thrash those blackguards.

*Enter two of BERLICHINGEN'S TROOPERS*

FIRST TROOPER. What's the matter?

SIEVERS. Ah! Good day, Peter! — Good day, Veit! — Whence come you?

SECOND TROOPER. Mind you don't let out whom we serve.

SIEVERS (*whispering*). Then your master Goetz isn't far off?

FIRST TROOPER. Hold your tongue! — Have you had a quarrel?

SIEVERS. You must have met the fellows without — they are Bambergers.

FIRST TROOPER. What brings them here?

SIEVERS. They escort Weislingen, who is up yonder at the Castle with the Earl.

FIRST TROOPER. Weislingen?

SECOND TROOPER (*aside to his companion*) Peter, that is grist to our mill — How long has he been here?

METZLER. Two days — but he is off to-day, as I heard one of his fellows say.

FIRST TROOPER (*aside*). Did I not tell you he was here? — We might have waited yonder long enough — Come, Veit —

SIEVERS. Help us first to drub the Bambergers.

SECOND TROOPER. There are already two of you — We must away — Farewell! [*Exeunt both TROOPERS*]

SIEVERS. Scurvy dogs, these troopers! They won't strike a blow without pay.

METZLER. I could swear they have something in hand. — Whom do they serve?

SIEVERS. I am not to tell — They serve Goetz.

METZLER. So! — Well, now we'll cudgel those fellows outside — While I have a quarter-staff I care not for their spits.

SIEVERS. If we durst but once serve the princes in the same manner, who drag our skins over our ears! [*Exeunt*]

## SCENE II. *A cottage in a thick forest*

GOETZ VON BERLICHINGEN *discovered walking among the trees  
before the door*

GOETZ. Where linger my servants? — I must walk up and down, or sleep will overcome me — Five days and nights already on the watch — It is hardly earned, this bit of life and

freedom. But when I have caught thee, Weislingen, I shall take my ease. (*Fills a glass of wine and drinks; looks at the flask*) — Again empty. — George! — While this and my courage last, I can laugh at the ambition and chicanery of princes? — George! — You may send round your obsequious Weislingen to your uncles and cousins to calumniate my character — Be it so — I am on the alert. — Thou hast escaped me, Bishop; then thy dear Weislingen shall pay the score. — George! — Doesn't the boy hear? — George! George!

GEORGE (*entering in the cuirass of a full-grown man*).  
Worshipful sir.

GOETZ. What kept you? Were you asleep? — What in the devil's name means this masquerade? — Come hither; you don't look amiss. Be not ashamed, boy; you look bravely. Ah! if you could but fill it! — Is it Hans' cuirass?

GEORGE. He wished to sleep a little, and unbuckled it.

GOETZ. He takes things easier than his master.

GEORGE. Do not be angry! I took it quietly away and put it on, then fetched my father's old sword from the wall, ran to the meadow, and drew it —

GOETZ. And laid about you, no doubt? — Rare work among the brambles and thorns! — Is Hans asleep?

GEORGE. He started up and cried out to me when you called — I was trying to unbuckle the cuirass when I heard you twice or thrice.

GOETZ. Go take back his cuirass, and tell him to be ready with the horses.

GEORGE. I have fed them well and they are ready bridled; you may mount when you will.

GOETZ. Bring me a stoup of wine. Give Hans a glass too, and tell him to be on the alert — there is good cause; I expect the return of my scouts every moment.

GEORGE. Ah! noble Sir!

GOETZ. What's the matter?

GEORGE. May I not go with you?

GOETZ. Another time, George! when we waylay merchants and seize their waggons —



GEORGE. Another time! — You have said that so often. — O, this time, this time! I will only skulk behind; just keep on the look-out — I will gather up all the spent arrows for you.

GOETZ. Next time, George! — You must first have a doublet, a steel cap, and a lance.

GEORGE. Take me with you now! — Had I been with you last time, you would not have lost your cross-bow.

GOETZ. Do you know about that?

GEORGE. You threw it at your antagonist's head; one of his followers picked it up, and off with it he went. — Don't I know about it?

GOETZ. Did my people tell you?

GEORGE. O yes: and for that, I whistle them all sorts of tunes while we dress the horses, and teach them merry songs, too.

GOETZ. Thou art a brave boy.

GEORGE. Take me with you to prove myself so.

GOETZ. The next time, I promise you! You must not go to battle unarmed as you are. There is a time coming which will also require men. I tell thee boy, it will be a dear time. Princes shall offer their treasures for a man whom they now hate. Go, George, give Hans his cuirass again, and bring me wine. (*Exit* GEORGE) Where can my people be? It is incomprehensible! — A monk! What brings him here so late?

*Enter Brother MARTIN*

GOETZ. Good evening, reverend father! Whence come you so late? Man of holy rest, thou shamest many knights.

MARTIN. Thanks, noble Sir! I am at present but an unworthy brother, if we come to titles. My cloister name is Augustin, but I like better to be called by my christian name, Martin.

GOETZ. You are tired, brother Martin, and doubtless thirsty.

*Enter GEORGE with wine.*



GOETZ. Here, in good time, comes wine!

MARTIN. For me a draught of water. I dare not drink wine.

GOETZ. Is it against your vow?

MARTIN. Noble Sir, to *drink* wine is not against my vow; but because *wine* is against my vow, therefore I drink it not.

GOETZ. How am I to understand that?

MARTIN. 'Tis well for thee that thou dost not understand it. Eating and drinking nourish man's life.

GOETZ. Well!

MARTIN. When thou hast eaten and drunken, thou art as it were new born, stronger, bolder, fitter for action. Wine rejoices the heart of man, and joyousness is the mother of every virtue. When thou hast drunk wine thou art double what thou shouldst be! twice as ingenious, twice as enterprising, and twice as active.

GOETZ. As I drink it, what you say is true.

MARTIN. 'Tis when thus taken in moderation that I speak of it. But we —— (GEORGE *brings water*. GOETZ *speaks to him apart*)

GOETZ (*to GEORGE*). Go to the road which leads to Daxbach: lay thine ear close to the earth, and listen for the tread of horses. Return immediately.

MARTIN. But we, on the other hand, when we have eaten and drunken, are the reverse of what we should be. Our sluggish digestion depresses our mental powers; and in the indulgence of luxurious ease, desires are generated which grow too strong for our weakness.

GOETZ. One glass, brother Martin, will not disturb your sleep. You have travelled far to-day. (*Helps him to wine*) Here's to all fighting men!

MARTIN. With all my heart! (*They ring their glasses*) I cannot abide idle people — yet will I not say that all monks are idle; they do what they can: I am just come from St. Bede, where I slept last night. The Prior took me into the garden; that is their hive. Excellent salad, cabbages in perfection, and

such cauliflowers and artichokes as you will hardly find in Europe.

GOETZ. So that is not the life for you? (*Goes out and looks anxiously after the boy. Returns*)

MARTIN. Would that God had made me a gardener, or day labourer, I might then have been happy! My convent is Erfurt in Saxony; my Abbot loves me; he knows I cannot remain idle, and so he sends me round the country, wherever there is business to be done. I am on my way to the bishop of Constance.

GOETZ. Another glass. Good speed to you!

MARTIN. The same to you.

GOETZ. Why do you look at me so steadfastly, brother?

MARTIN. I am in love with your armour.

GOETZ. Would you like a suit? It is heavy, and toilsome to the wearer.

MARTIN. What is not toilsome in this world? — But to me nothing is so much so as to renounce my very nature! Poverty, chastity, obedience — three vows, each of which taken singly seems the most dreadful to humanity — so insupportable are they all; — and to spend a life-time under this burthen, or to groan despairingly under the still heavier load of an evil conscience — Ah! Sir Knight, what are the toils of your life compared to the sorrows of a state, which, from a mistaken desire of drawing nearer to the Deity, condemns as crimes the best impulses of our nature, impulses by which we live, grow, and prosper!

GOETZ. Were your vow less sacred, I would give you a suit of armour and a steed, and we would ride out together.

MARTIN. Would to heaven my shoulders had strength to bear armour, and my arm to unhorse an enemy! — Poor weak hand, accustomed from infancy to swing censers, to bear crosses and banners of peace, how couldst thou manage the lance and falchion? My voice, tuned only to Aves and Halleluiahs, would be a herald of my weakness to the enemy, while yours would overpower him; otherwise no vows should

keep me from entering an order founded by the Creator himself.

GOETZ. To your happy return! (*Drinks*)

MARTIN. I drink that only in compliment to you! A return to my prison must ever be unhappy. When you, Sir Knight, return to your castle, with the consciousness of your courage and strength, which no fatigue can overcome; when you, for the first time, after a long absence, stretch yourself unarmed upon your bed, secure from the attack of enemies, and resign yourself to a sleep sweeter than the draught after a long thirst — then can you speak of happiness.

GOETZ. And accordingly it comes but seldom!

MARTIN (*with growing ardour*). But when it does come, it is a foretaste of paradise. — When you return home laden with the spoils of your enemies, and, remember, “such a one I struck from his horse ere he could discharge his piece — such another I overthrew, horse and man;” then you ride to your Castle, and —

GOETZ. And what?

MARTIN. And your wife — (*Fills a glass*) To her health! (*He wipes his eyes*) You have one?

GOETZ. A virtuous, noble wife!

MARTIN. Happy the man who possesses a virtuous wife, his life is doubled. This blessing was denied me, yet was woman the glory or crown of creation.

GOETZ (*aside*). I grieve for him. The sense of his condition preys upon his heart.

*Enter GEORGE, breathless*

GEORGE. My Lord, my Lord, I hear horses in full gallop! — two of them — ’Tis they for certain.

GOETZ. Bring out my steed; let Hans mount. Farewell, dear brother, God be with you. Be cheerful and patient, He will give you ample scope.

MARTIN. Let me request your name.

GOETZ. Pardon me — Farewell! (*Gives his left hand*)

MARTIN. Why do you give the left? — Am I unworthy of the knightly right hand?

GOETZ. Were you the Emperor, you must be satisfied with this. My right hand, though not useless in combat, is unresponsive to the grasp of affection. It is one with its mailed gauntlet — You see, it is *iron*!

MARTIN. Then art thou Goetz of Berlichingen. I thank thee, Heaven, who hast shown me the man whom princes hate, but to whom the oppressed throng! (*He takes his right hand*) Withdraw not this hand, let me kiss it.

GOETZ. You must not!

MARTIN. Let me, let me — Thou hand, more worthy even than the saintly relique through which the most sacred blood has flowed! lifeless instrument, quickened by the noblest spirit's faith in God.

(GOETZ *adjusts his helmet, and takes his lance*)

MARTIN. There was a monk among us about a year ago, who visited you when your hand was shot off at the siege of Landshut. He used to tell us what you suffered, and your grief at being disabled for your profession of arms; till you remembered having heard of one who had also lost a hand, and yet served long as a gallant knight — I shall never forget it.

*Enter the two TROOPERS. They speak apart with GOETZ*

MARTIN (*continuing*). I shall never forget his words uttered in the noblest, the most childlike trust in God: "If I had twelve hands, what would they avail me without thy grace? then may I with only one ——"

GOETZ. In the wood of Haslach then. (*Turns to MARTIN*) Farewell, worthy brother!

[*Embraces him*]

MARTIN. Forget me not, as I shall never forget thee!

[*Exeunt GOETZ and his TROOPERS*]

MARTIN. How my heart beat at the sight of him. He spoke not, yet my spirit recognized his. What rapture to behold a great man!

GEORGE. Reverend sir, you will sleep here?

MARTIN. Can I have a bed?

GEORGE. No, sir! I know of beds only by hearsay; in our quarters there is nothing but straw.

MARTIN. It will serve. What is thy name?

GEORGE. George, reverend sir.

MARTIN. George! Thou hast a gallant patron saint.

GEORGE. They say he was a trooper; that is what I intend to be!

MARTIN. Stop! (*Takes a picture from his breviary and gives it to him*) There behold him — follow his example; be brave, and fear God. [*Exit into the cottage*]

GEORGE. Ah! what a splendid grey horse! If I had but one like that — and the golden armour. There is an ugly dragon. At present I shoot nothing but sparrows. O, St. George! make me but tall and strong; give me a lance, armour, and such a horse, and then let the dragons come! [*Exit*]

### SCENE III. *An Apartment in Jaxthausen, the Castle of Goetz von Berlichingen*

ELIZABETH, MARIA, and CHARLES *discovered*

CHARLES. Pray now, dear aunt, tell me again that story about the good child; it is so pretty —

MARIA. Do you tell it to me, little rogue! that I may see if you have paid attention.

CHARLES. Wait then till I think. — “There was once upon” — Yes — “There was once upon a time a child, and his mother was sick; so the child went ——”

MARIA. No, no! —— “Then his mother said, ‘Dear child,’ ——”

CHARLES. “I am sick ——”

MARIA. “And cannot go out.”

CHARLES. “And gave him money and said, ‘Go and buy yourself a breakfast.’ There came a poor man ——”

MARIA. “The child went. There met him an old man who was ——” Now, Charles!

CHARLES. "Who was — old ——"

MARIA. Of course. "Who was hardly able to walk, and said, 'Dear child' ——"

CHARLES. " 'Give me something; I have eaten not a morsel yesterday or to-day.' Then the child gave him the money ——"

MARIA. "That should have bought his breakfast."

CHARLES. "Then the old man said ——"

MARIA. "Then the old man took the child by the hand ——"

CHARLES. "By the hand and said — and became a fine beautiful saint — and said — 'Dear child' ——"

MARIA. " 'The holy Virgin rewards thee for thy benevolence through me: whatever sick person thou touchest ——' "

CHARLES. " 'With thy hand ——' " It was the right hand, I think.

Maria. Yes.

CHARLES. " 'He will get well directly.' "

MARIA. "Then the child ran home, and could not speak for joy ——"

CHARLES. "And fell upon his mother's neck and wept for joy."

MARIA. "Then the mother cried, 'What is this?' and became ——" Now, Charles.

CHARLES. "Became — became ——"

MARIA. You do not attend — and became well. And the child cured kings and emperors, and became so rich that he built a great abbey."

ELIZABETH. I cannot understand why my husband stays. He has been away five days and nights, and he hoped to have finished his adventure so quickly.

MARIA. I have long felt uneasy. Were I married to a man who continually incurred such danger, I should die within the first year.

ELIZABETH. I thank God that he has made me of firmer stuff!



CHARLES. But must my father ride out, if it is so dangerous?

MARIA. Such is his good pleasure.

ELIZABETH. He must indeed, dear Charles!

Charles. Why?

ELIZABETH. Do you not remember the last time he rode out, when he brought you those nice things?

CHARLES. Will he bring me anything now?

ELIZABETH. I believe so. Listen: there was a tailor at Stutgard who was a capital archer, and had gained the prize at Cologne.

CHARLES. Was it much?

ELIZABETH. A hundred dollars; and afterwards they would not pay him.

MARIA. That was naughty, eh, Charles?

CHARLES. Naughty people!

ELIZABETH. The tailor came to your father and begged him to get his money for him; then your father rode out and intercepted a party of merchants from Cologne, and kept them prisoners till they paid the money. Would you not have ridden out too?

CHARLES. No; for one must go through a dark thick wood, where there are gipsies and witches —

ELIZABETH. You're a fine fellow; afraid of witches!

MARIA. Charles, it is far better to live at home in your castle, like a quiet Christian knight. One may find opportunities enough of doing good on one's own lands. Even the worthiest knights do more harm than good in their excursions.

ELIZABETH. Sister, you know not what you are saying. — God grant our boy may become braver as he grows up, and not take after that Weislingen, who has dealt so faithlessly with my husband.

MARIA. We will not judge, Elizabeth. — My brother is highly incensed, and so are you; I am only a spectator in the matter, and can be more impartial.

ELIZABETH. Weislingen cannot be defended.

MARIA. What I have heard of him has interested me. — Even your husband relates many instances of his former goodness and affection. — How happy was their youth when they were both pages of honour to the Margrave!

ELIZABETH. That may be. But only tell me, how can a man ever have been good who lays snares for his best and truest friend? who has sold his services to the enemies of my husband; and who strives, by invidious misrepresentations, to poison the mind of our noble emperor, who is so gracious to us? (*A horn is heard*)

CHARLES. Papa! papa! the warder sounds his horn — Joy! joy! he opens the gate!

ELIZABETH. There he comes with booty!

*Enter PETER*

PETER. We have fought — we have conquered! — God save you, noble ladies!

ELIZABETH. Have you captured Weislingen?

PETER. Himself, and three followers.

ELIZABETH. How came you to stay so long?

PETER. We lay in wait for him between Nuremberg and Bamberg, but he would not come, though we knew he had set out. At length we heard of his whereabouts; he had struck off sideways, and was staying quietly with the earl at Schwarzenberg.

ELIZABETH. They would also fain make the earl my husband's enemy.

PETER. I immediately told my master. — Up and away we rode into the forest of Haslach. And it was curious, that while we were riding along that night, a shepherd was watching, and five wolves fell upon the flock and attacked them stoutly. Then my master laughed, and said "Good luck to us all, dear comrades, both to you and us!" And the good omen overjoyed us. Just then Weislingen came riding towards us with four attendants —

MARIA. How my heart beats!

PETER. My comrade and I, as our master had commanded, threw ourselves suddenly on him, and clung to



him as if we had grown together, so that he could not move, while my master and Hans fell upon the servants, and overpowered them. They were all taken, except one who escaped.

ELIZABETH. I am curious to see him. Will he arrive soon?

PETER. They are riding through the valley, and will be here in a quarter of an hour.

MARIA. He is no doubt cast down and dejected?

PETER. He looks gloomy enough.

MARIA. It will grieve me to see his distress!

ELIZABETH. O! I must get food ready. You are no doubt all hungry?

PETER. Hungry enough, in truth.

ELIZABETH (*to Maria*). Take the cellar keys and bring the best wine. They have deserved it. [Exit ELIZABETH

CHARLES. I'll go too, aunt.

MARIA. Come then, boy [Exeunt CHARLES and MARIA

PETER. He'll never be his father, else he would have gone with me to the stable.

*Enter GOETZ, WEISLINGEN, HANS, and other TROOPERS*

GOETZ (*laying his helmet and sword on a table*). Unbuckle my armour, and give me my doublet. Ease will refresh me. Brother Martin, thou said'st truly. You have kept us long on the watch, Weislingen!

[WEISLINGEN *paces up and down in silence*

GOETZ. Be of good cheer! Come, unarm yourself! Where are your clothes? I hope nothing has been lost. (*To the attendant*.) Go, ask his servants; open the baggage, and see that nothing is missing. Or I can lend you some of mine.

WEISLINGEN. Let me remain as I am — it is all one.

GOETZ. I can give you a handsome doublet, but it is only of linen; it has grown too tight for me. I wore it at the marriage of my Lord the Palsgrave, when your bishop was so incensed at me. About a fortnight before I had sunk two of his vessels upon the Maine — I was going up stairs in the

Stag at Heidelberg, with Franz von Sickingen. Before you get quite to the top, there is a landing-place with iron rails — there stood the bishop, and gave his hand to Franz as he passed, and to me also as I followed close behind him. I laughed in my sleeve, and went to the Landgrave of Hanau, who was always a kind friend to me, and said, “The bishop has given me his hand, but I’ll wager he did not know me.” The bishop heard me, for I was speaking loud on purpose. He came to us angrily, and said, “True, I gave thee my hand, because I knew thee not.” To which I answered, “I know that, my lord; and so here you have your shake of the hand back again!” The manikin grew red as a Turkey cock with spite, and he ran up into the room and complained to the Palsgrave Lewis and the Prince of Nassau. We have laughed over the scene again and again.

WEISLINGEN. I wish you would leave me to myself.

GOETZ. Why so? I entreat you be of good cheer. You are my prisoner, but I will not abuse my power.

WEISLINGEN. I have no fear of that. That is your duty as a knight.

GOETZ. And you know how sacred it is to me.

WEISLINGEN. I am your prisoner — the rest matters not.

GOETZ. You should not say so. Had you been taken by a prince, fettered and cast into a dungeon, your gaoler directed to drive sleep from your eyes —

*Enter SERVANTS with clothes. WEISLINGEN unarms himself. Enter CHARLES*

CHARLES. Good morrow, papa!

GOETZ (*kisses him*). Good morrow, boy! How have you been this long time?

CHARLES. Very well, father! Aunt says I am a good boy.

GOETZ. Does she?

CHARLES. Have you brought me anything?

GOETZ. Nothing this time.

CHARLES. I have learned a great *déâl*.

GOETZ. Aye!

CHARLES. Shall I tell you about the good child?

GOETZ. After dinner.

CHARLES. I know something else, too.

GOETZ. What may that be?

CHARLES. "Jaxthausen is a village and castle on the Jaxt, which has appertained in property and heritage for two hundred years to the Lords of Berlichingen ——"

GOETZ. Do you know the Lord of Berlichingen? (CHARLES *stares at him. Aside*) His learning is so abstruse that he does not know his own father. To whom does Jaxthausen belong?

CHARLES. "Jaxthausen is a village and castle upon the Jaxt ——"

GOETZ. I did not ask that. I knew every path, pass, and ford about the place, before ever I knew the name of the village, castle, or river. — Is your mother in the kitchen?

CHARLES. Yes, papa! They are cooking a lamb and turnips.

GOETZ. Do you know that too, Jack Turnspit?

CHARLES. And my aunt is roasting an apple for me to eat after dinner —

GOETZ. Can't you eat it raw?

CHARLES. It tastes better roasted.

GOETZ. You must have a tit bit, must you? — Weislingen, I will be with you immediately. I must go and see my wife. — Come, Charles!

CHARLES. Who is that man?

GOETZ. Bid him welcome. Tell him to be merry.

CHARLES. There's my hand for you, man! Be merry — for the dinner will soon be ready.

WEISLINGEN (*Takes up the child and kisses him*). Happy boy! that knowest no worse evil than the delay of dinner. May you live to have much joy in your son, Berlichingen!

GOETZ. Where there is most light the shades are deepest. Yet I thank God for him. We'll see what they are about.

[*Exit with CHARLES and SERVANTS*]

WEISLINGEN. O that I could but wake and find this all a dream! In the power of Berlichingen! — from whom I had scarcely detached myself — whose remembrance I shunned like fire — whom I hoped to overpower! and he still the old true-hearted Goetz! Gracious God! what will be the end of it? O Adelbert! Led back to the very hall where we played as children; when thou didst love and prize him as thy soul! Who can know him and hate him? Alas! I am so thoroughly insignificant here. Happy days! ye are gone. There, in his chair by the chimney, sat old Berlichingen, while we played around him, and loved each other like cherubs! How anxious the bishop and all my friends will be. Well, the whole country will sympathize with my misfortune. But what avails it? Can they give me the peace after which I strive?

*Re-enter GOETZ with wine and goblets*

GOETZ. We'll take a glass while dinner is preparing. Come, sit down — think yourself at home! Fancy you've come once more to see Goetz. It is long since we have sat and emptied a flagon together. (*Fills*) Come: a light heart!

WEISLINGEN. Those times are gone by.

GOETZ. God forbid! To be sure, we shall hardly pass more pleasant days than those we spent together at the Margrave's court, when we were inseparable night and day. I think with pleasure on my youth. Do you remember the scuffle I had with the Polander, whose pomaded and frizzled hair I chanced to rub with my sleeve?

WEISLINGEN. It was at table; and he struck at you with a knife.

GOETZ. I gave it him, however; and you had a quarrel upon that account with his comrades. We always stuck together like brave fellows, and were the admiration of every one. (*Fills, and hands to WEISLINGEN*) Castor and Pollux! It used to rejoice my heart when the Margrave so called us.

WEISLINGEN. The bishop of Wurtzburg first gave us the name.

GOETZ. That bishop was a learned man, and withal so kind and gentle. I shall remember as long as I live how he used to caress us, praise our friendship, and say: "Happy is the man who has an adopted brother for a friend."

WEISLINGEN. No more of that!

GOETZ. Why not? I know nothing more delightful after fatigue than to talk over old times. Indeed, when I recall to mind how we bore good and bad fortune together, and were all in all to each other, and how I thought this was to continue for ever. Was not that my sole comfort when my hand was shot away at Landshut, and you nursed and tended me like a brother? I hoped Adelbert would in future be my right hand. And now ——

WEISLINGEN. Alas!

GOETZ. Hadst thou but listened to me when I begged thee to go with me to Brabant, all would have been well. But then that unhappy turn for court-dangling seized thee, and thy coquetting and flirting with the women. I always told thee, when thou wouldst mix with these lounging, vain court sycophants, and entertain them with gossip about unlucky matches and seduced girls, scandal about absent friends, and all such trash as they take interest in. — I always said, Adelbert, thou wilt become a rogue!

WEISLINGEN. To what purpose is all this?

GOETZ. Would to God I could forget it, or that it were otherwise! Art thou not free and nobly born as any in Germany; independent, subject to the emperor alone; and dost thou crouch among vassals? What is the bishop to thee? Granted, he is thy neighbour, and can do thee a shrewd turn; hast thou not power and friends to requite him in kind? Art thou ignorant of the dignity of a free knight, who depends only upon God, the emperor, and himself, that thou degradest thyself to be the courtier of a stubborn, jealous priest?

WEISLINGEN. Let me speak!

GOETZ. What hast thou to say?

WEISLINGEN. You look upon the princes as the wolf upon the shepherd. And can you blame them for defending their territories and property? Are they a moment secure from the unruly knights, who plunder their vassals even upon the high-roads, and sack their castles and villages? Upon the other hand, our country's enemies threaten to overrun the lands of our beloved emperor, yet, while he needs the princes' assistance, they can scarce defend their own lives; is it not our good genius which at this moment leads them to devise means of procuring peace for Germany, of securing the administration of justice, and giving to great and small the blessings of quiet? And can you blame us, Berlichengen, for securing the protection of the powerful princes, our neighbours, whose assistance is at hand, rather than relying on that of the emperor, who is so far removed from us, and is hardly able to protect himself?

GOETZ. Yes, yes, I understand you. Weislingen, were the princes as you paint them, we should all have what we want. Peace and quiet! No doubt! Every bird of prey naturally likes to eat its plunder undisturbed. The general weal! If they would but take the trouble to study that. And they trifle with the emperor shamefully. Every day some new tinker or other comes to give his opinion. The emperor means well, and would gladly put things to rights; but because he happens to understand a thing readily, and by a single word, can put a thousand hands into motion, he thinks everything will be as speedily and as easily accomplished. Ordinance upon ordinance is promulgated, each nullifying the last, while the princes obey only those which serve their own interest, and prate of peace and security of the empire, while they are treading under foot their weaker neighbours. I will be sworn, many a one thanks God in his heart that the Turk keeps the emperor fully employed!

WEISLINGEN. You view things your own way.

GOETZ. So does every one. The question is, which is the right way to view them? And your plans at least shun the day.



WEISLINGEN. You may say what you will; I am your prisoner.

GOETZ. If your conscience is free, so are you. How was it with the general tranquillity? I remember going as a boy of sixteen with the Margrave to the Imperial Diet. What harangues the princes made! And the clergy were the most vociferous of all. Your bishop thundered into the emperor's ears his regard for justice, till one thought it had become part and parcel of his being. And now he has imprisoned a page of mine, at a time when our quarrels were all accommodated, and I had buried them in oblivion. Is not all settled between us? What does he want with the boy?

WEISLINGEN. It was done without his knowledge.

GOETZ. Then why does he not release him?

WEISLINGEN. He did not conduct himself as he ought.

GOETZ. Not conduct himself as he ought? By my honour, he performed his duty, as surely as he has been imprisoned both with your knowledge and the bishop's! Do you think I am come into the world this very day, that I cannot see what all this means?

WEISLINGEN. You are suspicious, and do us wrong.

GOETZ. Weislingen, shall I deal openly with you? Inconsiderable as I am, I am a thorn in your side, and Selbitz and Sickingen are no less so, because we are firmly resolved to die sooner than to thank any one but God for the air we breathe, or pay homage to any one but the emperor. This is why they worry me in every possible way, blacken my character with the emperor, and among my friends and neighbours, and spy about for advantage over me. They would have me out of the way at any price; that was your reason for imprisoning the page whom you knew I had dispatched for intelligence: and now you say he did not conduct himself as he should do, because he would not betray my secrets. And you, Weislingen, are their tool!

WEISLINGEN. Berlichingen!

GOETZ. Not a word more. I am an enemy to long explanations; they deceive either the maker or the hearer, and generally both.

*Enter CHARLES*

CHARLES. Dinner is ready, father!

GOETZ. Good news! Come, I hope the company of my women folk will amuse you. You always liked the girls. Aye, aye, they can tell many pretty stories about you. Come!

*[Exeunt]*

SCENE IV. *The Bishop of Bamberg's Palace*

*The BISHOP, the ABBOT of Fulda, OLEARIUS, LIEBTRAUT, and COURTIERs at table. The dessert and wine before them*

BISHOP. Are there many of the German nobility studying at Bologna?

OLEARIUS. Both nobles and citizens; and, I do not exaggerate, in saying that they acquire the most brilliant reputation. It is a proverb in the university: — "As studious as a German noble." For while the citizens display a laudable diligence, in order to compensate by learning for their want of birth, the nobles strive, with praiseworthy emulation, to enhance their ancestral dignity by superior attainments.

ABBOT. Indeed!

LIEBTRAUT. What may one not live to hear. We live and learn, as the proverb says. "As studious as a German noble." I never heard that before.

OLEARIUS. Yes, they are the admiration of the whole university. Some of the oldest and most learned will soon be coming back with their doctor's degree. The emperor will doubtless be happy to entrust to them the highest offices.

BISHOP. He cannot fail to do so.

ABBOT. Do you know, for instance, a young man — a Hessian —

OLEARIUS. There are many Hessians with us.

ABBOT. His name is — is — Does nobody remember it? His mother was a Von — Oh! his father had but one eye, and was a marshal —



LIEBTRAUT. Von Wildenholz!

ABBOT. Right. Von Wildenholz.

OLEARIUS. I know him well. A young man of great abilities. He is particularly esteemed for his talent in disputation.

ABBOT. He has that from his mother.

LIEBTRAUT. Yes; but his father would never praise her that quality.

BISHOP. How call you the emperor who wrote your *Corpus Juris*?

OLEARIUS. Justinian.

BISHOP. A worthy prince: — here's to his memory!

OLEARIUS. To his memory! (*They drink*)

ABBOT. That must be a fine book.

OLEARIUS. It may be called a book of books; a digest of all laws; there you find the sentence ready for every case, and where the text is antiquated or obscure, the deficiency is supplied by notes, with which the most learned men have enriched this truly admirable work.

ABBOT. A digest of all laws! — Indeed! — Then the ten commandments must be in it.

OLEARIUS. Implicitè; not explicitè.

ABBOT. That's what I mean; plainly set down, without any explication.

BISHOP. But the best is, you tell us that a state can be maintained in the most perfect tranquillity and subordination, by receiving and rightly following that statute-book.

OLEARIUS. Doubtless.

BISHOP. All doctors of laws! (*They drink*)

OLEARIUS. I'll tell them of this abroad. (*They drink*)  
Would to heaven that men thought thus in my country!

ABBOT. Whence come you, most learned sir?

OLEARIUS. From Frankfort, at your eminence's service!

BISHOP. You gentlemen of the law, then, are not held in high estimation there? — How comes that?

OLEARIUS. It is strange enough — when I last went there to collect my father's effects, the mob almost stoned me, when they heard I was a lawyer.

ABBOT. God bless me!

OLEARIUS. It is because their tribunal, which they hold in great respect, is composed of people totally ignorant of the Roman law. An intimate acquaintance with the internal condition of the town, and also of its foreign relations, acquired through age and experience, is deemed a sufficient qualification. They decide according to certain established edicts of their own, and some old customs recognised in the city and neighbourhood.

ABBOT. That's very right.

OLEARIUS. But far from sufficient. The life of man is short, and in one generation cases of every description cannot occur; our statute-book is a collection of precedents, furnished by the experience of many centuries. Besides, the wills and opinions of men are variable; one man deems right to-day, what another disapproves to-morrow; and confusion and injustice are the inevitable results. Law determines absolutely, and its decrees are immutable.

ABBOT. That's certainly better.

OLEARIUS. But the common people won't acknowledge that; and, eager as they are after novelty, they hate any innovation in their laws, which leads them out of the beaten track, be it ever so much for the better. They hate a jurist as if he were a cut-purse or a subverter of the state, and become furious, if one attempts to settle among them.

LIEBTRAUT. You come from Frankfort? — I know the place well — we tasted your good cheer at the emperor's coronation. You say your name is Olearius — I know no one in the town of your name.

OLEARIUS. My father's name was Oilman — But after the example, and with the advice of many jurists, I have latinised the name to Olearius for the decoration of the title-page of my legal treatises.

LIEBTRAUT. You did well to translate yourself: a prophet is not honoured in his own country — your books if written in German might have shared the same fate.

OLEARIUS. That was not the reason.

LIEBTRAUT. All things have two reasons.

ABBOT. A prophet is not honoured in his own country.

LIEBTRAUT. But do you know why, most reverend sir?

ABBOT. Because he was born and bred there.

LIEBTRAUT. Well, that may be one reason. The other is, because, upon a nearer acquaintance with these gentlemen, the halo of glory and honour shed around them by the distant haze totally disappears; they are then seen to be nothing more than tiny rushlights!

OLEARIUS. It seems you are placed here to tell pleasant truths.

LIEBTRAUT. As I have wit enough to discover them, I do not lack courage to utter them.

OLEARIUS. Yet you lack the art of applying them well.

LIEBTRAUT. It is no matter where you place a cupping-glass, provided it draws blood.

OLEARIUS. Buffoons are known by their dress, and no one takes offence at their scurvy jests. Let me advise you as a precaution to bear the badge of your order — a cap and bells!

LIEBTRAUT. Where did you take your degree? I only ask, so that, should I ever take a fancy to a fool's cap, I could at once go to the right shop.

OLEARIUS. You carry face enough.

LIEBTRAUT. And you paunch. (*The BISHOP and ABBOT laugh*)

BISHOP. Not so warm, gentlemen! — Some other subject. At table all should be fair and quiet. Choose another subject, Liebtraut.

LIEBTRAUT. Opposite Frankfort lies a village, called Sachsenhausen —

OLEARIUS (*to the BISHOP*). What news of the Turkish expedition, your excellency?

BISHOP. The emperor has most at heart, first of all to restore peace to the empire, put an end to feuds, and secure the strict administration of justice: then according to report, he will go in person against the enemies of his country and of Christendom. At present internal dissensions give him enough to do; and the empire, despite forty years of peace, is one scene of murder. Franconia, Swabia, the Upper Rhine, and the surrounding countries are laid waste by presumptuous and reckless knights. — And here, at Bamberg, Sickingen, Selbitz with one leg, and Goetz with the iron hand, scoff at the imperial authority.

ABBOT. If his Majesty does not exert himself, these fellows will at last thrust us into sacks.

LIEBTRAUT. He would be a sturdy fellow indeed who should thrust the wine-butt of Fulda into a sack!

BISHOP. Goetz especially has been for many years my mortal foe, and annoys me beyond description. But it will not last long, I hope. The emperor holds his court at Augsburg. We have taken our measures, and cannot fail of success. — Doctor, do you know Adelbert von Weislingen?

OLEARIUS. No, your eminence.

BISHOP. If you stay till his arrival, you will have the pleasure of seeing a most noble, accomplished, and gallant knight.

OLEARIUS. He must be an excellent man indeed to deserve such praises from such a mouth.

LIEBTRAUT. And yet he was not bred at any university.

BISHOP. We know that. (*The attendants throng to the window*) What's the matter?

ATTENDANT. Farber, Weislingen's servant, is riding in at the Castle-gate.

BISHOP. See what he brings. He most likely comes to announce his master.

(*Exit* LIEBTRAUT — *They stand up and drink*)

LIEBTRAUT *re-enters*

BISHOP. What news?

LIEBTRAUT. I wish another had to tell it — Weislingen is a prisoner!

BISHOP. What?

LIEBTRAUT. Berlichingen has seized him and three troopers near Haslach — One is escaped to tell you.

ABBOT. A Job's messenger!

OLEARIUS. I grieve from my heart.

BISHOP. I will see the servant; bring him up — I will speak with him myself. Conduct him into my cabinet.

[Exit BISHOP]

ABBOT (*sitting down*). Another draught, however.

[The SERVANTS fill round]

OLEARIUS. Will not your reverence take a turn in the garden? "Post cœnam stabis, seu passus mille meabis."

LIEBTRAUT. In truth, sitting is unhealthy for you. You might get an apoplexy. (*The ABBOT rises. Aside*) Let me but once get him out of doors, I will give him exercise enough!

[Exeunt]

## SCENE V. Jaxthausen

MARIA, WEISLINGEN

MARIA. You love me, you say. I willingly believe it, and hope to be happy with you, and to make you happy also.

WEISLINGEN. I feel nothing but that I am entirely thine. (*Embraces her*)

MARIA. Softly! — I gave you one kiss for earnest, but you must not take possession of what is only yours conditionally.

WEISLINGEN. You are too strict, Maria! Innocent love is pleasing in the sight of Heaven, instead of giving offence.

MARIA. It may be so. But I think differently; for I have been taught that caresses are, like fetters, strong through their

union, and that maidens, when they love, are weaker than Sampson after the loss of his locks.

WEISLINGEN. Who taught you so?

MARIA. The abbess of my convent. Till my sixteenth year I was with her — and it is only with you that I enjoy happiness like that her company afforded me. She had loved, and could tell —— She had a most affectionate heart. Oh! she was an excellent woman!

WEISLINGEN. Then you resemble her. (*Takes her hand*) What will become of me when I am compelled to leave you?

MARIA (*withdrawing her hand*) You will feel some regret, I hope, for I know what my feelings will be. But you must away!

WEISLINGEN. I know it, dearest! and I will — for well I feel what happiness I shall purchase by this sacrifice! Now, blessed be your brother, and the day on which he rode out to capture me!

MARIA. His heart was full of hope for you and himself. Farewell! he said, at his departure, I go to recover my friend.

WEISLINGEN. That he has done. Would that I had studied the arrangement and security of my property, instead of neglecting it, and dallying at that worthless court! — then couldst thou have been instantly mine.

MARIA. Even delay has its pleasures.

WEISLINGEN. Say not so, Maria, else I shall fear that thy heart is less warm than mine. True, I deserve punishment, but what hopes will brighten every step of my journey. To be wholly thine, to live only for thee and thy circle of friends — far removed from the world, in the enjoyment of all the raptures which two hearts can mutually bestow. What is the favour of princes, what the applause of the universe, to such simple, yet unequalled felicity? Many have been my hopes and wishes; but this happiness surpasses them all.

*Enter* GOETZ

GOETZ. Your page has returned. He can scarcely utter a word for hunger and fatigue. My wife has ordered him



some refreshment. Thus much I have gathered: the bishop will not give up my page — imperial commissioners are to be appointed, and a day named, upon which the matter may be adjusted. Be that as it may, Adelbert, you are free. Pledge me but your hand that you will for the future give neither open nor secret assistance to my enemies.

WEISLINGEN. Here I grasp thy hand. From this moment be our friendship and confidence, firm and unalterable as a primary law of nature! Let me take this hand also (*takes MARIA'S hand*), and with it the possession of this most noble lady.

GOETZ. May I say yes for you?

MARIA (*timidly*). If — if it is your wish —

GOETZ. Happily our wishes do not differ on this point. Thou need'st not blush — the glance of thine eye betrays thee. Well then, Weislingen, join hands, and I say *Amen!* My friend and brother! I thank thee, sister; thou canst do more than spin flax, for thou hast drawn a thread which can fetter this wandering bird of paradise. Yet you look not quite at your ease, Adelbert. What troubles you? *I am perfectly happy!* What I but hoped in a dream, I now see with my eyes, and feel as though I were still dreaming. Now my dream is explained. I thought last night that, in token of reconciliation, I gave you this iron hand, and that you held it so fast that it broke away from my arm; I started, and awoke. Had I but dreamed a little longer, I should have seen how you gave me a new living hand. You must away this instant, to put your castle and property in order. That cursed court has made you neglect both. I must call my wife. — Elizabeth!

MARIA. How overjoyed my brother is!

WEISLINGEN. Yet I am still more so.

GOETZ (*to MARIA*). You will have a pleasant residence.

MARIA. Franconia is a fine country.

WEISLINGEN. And I may venture to say that my castle lies in the most fertile and delicious part of it.

GOETZ. That you may, and I can confirm it. Look you, here flows the Maine, around a hill clothed with cornfields

and vineyards, its top crowned with a Gothic castle; then the river makes a sharp turn, and glides round behind the rock on which the castle is built. The windows of the great hall look perpendicularly down upon the river, and command a prospect of many miles in extent.

*Enter ELIZABETH*

ELIZABETH. What would'st thou?

GOETZ. You too must give your hand, and say, God bless you! They are a pair.

Elizabeth. So soon?

GOETZ. But not unexpectedly.

ELIZABETH. May you ever adore her as ardently as while you sought her hand. And then, as your love, so be your happiness!

WEISLINGEN. Amen! I seek no happiness but under this condition.

GOETZ. The bridegroom, my love, must leave us for awhile; for this great change will involve many smaller ones. He must first withdraw himself from the bishop's court, in order that their friendship may gradually cool. Then he must rescue his property from the hands of selfish stewards, and —— But come, sister; come, Elizabeth; let us leave him; his page has no doubt private messages for him.

WEISLINGEN. Nothing but what you may hear.

GOETZ. 'Tis needless. Franconians and Swabians! Ye are now more closely united than ever. Now we shall be able to keep the princes in check.

*[Exeunt GOETZ, ELIZABETH, MARIA]*

WEISLINGEN (*alone*). God in heaven! And canst thou have reserved such happiness for one so unworthy? It is too much for my heart. How meanly I depended upon wretched fools, whom I thought I was governing, upon the smile of princes, upon the homage of those around me! Goetz, my faithful Goetz, thou hast restored me to myself, and thou, Maria, hast completed my reformation. I feel free, as if brought from a dungeon into the open air. Bamberg will I



never see more — will snap all the shameful bonds that have held me beneath myself. My heart expands, and never more will I degrade myself by struggling for a greatness that is denied me. He alone is great and happy who fills his own station of independence, and has neither to command nor to obey.

*Enter FRANCIS*

FRANCIS. God save you, noble sir! I bring you so many salutations that I know not where to begin. Bamberg, and ten miles round, cry with a thousand voices, God save you.

WEISLINGEN. Welcome, Francis! Bring'st thou aught else?

FRANCIS. You are held in such consideration at court that it cannot be expressed.

WEISLINGEN. That will not last long.

FRANCIS. As long as you live; and after your death it will shine with more lustre than the brazen characters on a monument. How they took your misfortune to heart!

WEISLINGEN. And what said the bishop?

FRANCIS. His eager curiosity poured out question upon question, without giving me time to answer. He knew of your accident already; for Farber, who escaped from Haslach, had brought him the tidings. But he wished to hear every particular. He asked so anxiously whether you were wounded. I told him you were whole, from the hair of your head to the nail of your little toe.

WEISLINGEN. And what said he to the proposals?

FRANCIS. He was ready at first to give up the page and a ransom to boot for your liberty. But when he heard you were to be dismissed without ransom, and merely to give your parole that the boy should be set free, he was for putting off Berlichingen with some pretence. He charged me with a thousand messages to you, more than I can ever utter. O how he harangued! It was a long sermon upon the text, "I cannot live without Weislingen!"

WEISLINGEN. He must learn to do so.

FRANCIS. What mean you? He said "Bid him hasten; all the court waits for him."

WEISLINGEN. Let them wait on. I shall not go to court.

FRANCIS. Not go to court! My gracious lord, how comes that? If you knew what I know; could you but dream what I have seen ——

WEISLINGEN. What ails thee?

FRANCIS. The bare remembrance takes away my senses. Bamberg is no longer Bamberg. An angel of heaven, in semblance of woman, has taken up her abode there, and has made it a paradise.

WEISLINGEN. Is that all?

FRANCIS. May I become a shaven friar, if the first glimpse of her does not drive you frantic!

WEISLINGEN. Who is it, then?

FRANCIS. Adelaide von Walldorf.

WEISLINGEN. Indeed! I have heard much of her beauty.

FRANCIS. Heard! You might as well say I have *seen* music. So far is the tongue from being able to rehearse the slightest particle of her beauty, that the very eye which beholds her cannot drink it all in.

WEISLINGEN. You are mad.

FRANCIS. That may well be. The last time I was in her company I had no more command over my senses than if I had been drunk, or, I may rather say, I felt like a glorified saint enjoying the angelic vision! All my senses exalted, more lively and more perfect than ever, yet not one at its owner's command.

WEISLINGEN. That is strange!

FRANCIS. As I took leave of the bishop, she sat by him; they were playing at chess. He was very gracious; gave me his hand to kiss, and said much, of which I heard not a syllable, for I was looking on his fair antagonist. Her eye was fixed upon the board, as if meditating a bold move. — Traces of attentive intelligence around the mouth and cheek. — I

could have wished to be the ivory king. The mixture of dignity and feeling on her brow — and the dazzling lustre of her face and neck, heightened by her raven tresses ——

WEISLINGEN. The theme has made you quite poetical.

FRANCIS. I feel at this moment what constitutes poetic inspiration — a heart altogether wrapt in one idea. As the bishop ended, and I made my obeisance, she looked up and said, “Offer to your master the best wishes of an unknown. Tell him he must come soon. New friends await him; he must not despise them, though he is already so rich in old ones.” I would have answered, but the passage betwixt my heart and my tongue was closed, and I only bowed. I would have given all I had for permission to kiss but one of her fingers! As I stood thus, the bishop let fall a pawn, and in stooping to pick it up, I touched the hem of her garment. Transport thrilled through my limbs, and I scarce know how I left the room.

WEISLINGEN. Is her husband at court?

FRANCIS. She has been a widow these four months, and is residing at the court of Bamberg to divert her melancholy. You will see her; and to meet her glance is to bask in the sunshine of spring.

WEISLINGEN. She would not make so strong an impression on me.

FRANCIS. I hear you are as good as married.

WEISLINGEN. Would I were really so! My gentle Maria will be the happiness of my life. The sweetness of her soul beams through her mild blue eyes, and, like an angel of innocence and love, she guides my heart to the paths of peace and felicity! Pack up, and then to my castle. I will not to Bamberg, though St. Bede came in person to fetch me.

[*Exit* WEISLINGEN

FRANCIS (*alone*). Not to Bamberg! Heavens forbid! But let me hope the best. Maria is beautiful and amiable, and a prisoner or an invalid might easily fall in love with her. Her eyes beam with compassion and melancholy sympathy; but in

thine, Adelaide, is life, fire, spirit. I would —— I am a fool; one glance from her has made me so. My master must to Bamberg, and I also, and either recover my senses or gaze them quite away.

END OF THE FIRST ACT



## ACT THE SECOND

### SCENE I. BAMBERG. *A Hall*

THE BISHOP *and* ADELAIDE (*playing at chess*), LIEBTRAUT (*with a guitar*), LADIES *and* COURTIERS (*standing in groups*)

LIEBTRAUT (*plays and sings*)

Armed with quiver and bow,  
With his torch all a glow,  
Young Cupid comes winging his flight.  
Courage glows in his eyes,  
As adown from the skies,  
He rushes, impatient for fight.

Up! Up!

On! On!

Hark! The bright quiver rings!

Hark! The rustle of wings!

All hail to the delicate sprite!

They welcome the urchin; —

Ah maidens, beware!

He finds every bosom

Unguarded and bare.

In the light of his flambeau

He kindles his darts; —

They fondle and hug him

And press to their hearts.

ADELAIDE. Your thoughts are not in your game.  
Check to the king!

BISHOP. There is still a way of escape.

ADELAIDE. You will not be able to hold out long.  
Check to the king!

LIEBTRAUT. Were I a great prince, I would not play at this game, and would forbid it at court, and throughout the whole land.

ADELAIDE. 'Tis indeed a touchstone of the brain.

LIEBTRAUT. Not on that account! I would rather hear a funeral bell, the cry of the ominous bird, the howling of that snarling watch-dog, conscience; rather would I hear these through the deepest sleep, than from bishops, knights, and such beasts, the eternal — Check to the king!

BISHOP. Into whose head could such an idea enter?

LIEBTRAUT. A man's, for example, endowed with a weak body and a strong conscience, which, for the most part, indeed, accompany each other. Chess is called a royal game, and is said to have been invented for a king, who rewarded the inventor with a mine of wealth. If this be so, I can picture him to myself. He was a minor, either in understanding or in years, under the guardianship of his mother or his wife; had down upon his chin, and flaxen hair around his temples; was pliant as a willow-shoot, and liked to play at draughts with women, not from passion, God forbid! only for pastime. His tutor, too active for a scholar, too intractable for a man of the world, invented the game, *in usum Delphini*, that was so homogeneous with his majesty — and so on.

ADELAIDE. Checkmate! You should fill up the chasms in our histories, Liebtraut. *[They rise]*

LIEBTRAUT. To supply those in our family registers would be more profitable. The merits of our ancestors being available for a common object with their portraits, namely, to cover the naked sides of our chambers and of our characters, one might turn such an occupation to good account.

BISHOP. He will not come, you say!

ADELAIDE. I beseech you, banish him from your thoughts.

BISHOP. What can it mean?

LIEBTRAUT. What! The reasons may be told over like the beads of a rosary. He has been seized with a fit of compunction, of which I could soon cure him.

BISHOP. Do so; ride to him instantly.

LIEBTRAUT. My commission ——

BISHOP. Shall be unlimited. Spare nothing to bring him back.

LIEBTRAUT. May I venture to use your name, gracious lady?

ADELAIDE. With discretion.

LIEBTRAUT. That's a vague commission.

ADELAIDE. Do you know so little of me, or are you so young as not to understand in what tone you should speak of me to Weislingen?

LIEBTRAUT. In the tone of a fowler's whistle, I think.

ADELAIDE. You will never be reasonable.

LIEBTRAUT. Does one ever become so, gracious lady?

BISHOP. Go! Go! Take the best horse in my stable; choose your servants, and bring him hither.

LIEBTRAUT. If I do not conjure him hither, say that an old woman who charms warts and freckles knows more of sympathy than I.

BISHOP. Yet, what will it avail? Berlichingen has wholly gained him over. He will no sooner be here than he will wish to return.

LIEBTRAUT. He will wish it, doubtless; but can he go? A prince's squeeze of the hand and the smiles of a beauty, from these no Weislingen can tear himself away. I have the honour to take my leave.

BISHOP. A prosperous journey!

ADELAIDE. Adieu! [Exit LIEBTRAUT]

BISHOP. When he is once here, I must trust to you.

ADELAIDE. Would you make me your lime-twigg?

BISHOP. By no means.

ADELAIDE. Your call-bird then?

BISHOP. No; that is Liebtraut's part. I beseech you do not refuse to do for me what no other can.

ADELAIDE. We shall see. [Exeunt]

## SCENE II. *Jaxthausen. A Hall in Goetz's Castle*

*Enter GOETZ and HANS VON SELBITZ*

SELBITZ. Every one will applaud you for declaring feud against the Nurembergers.



GOETZ. It would have eaten my very heart away had I remained longer their debtor. It is clear that they betrayed my page to the Bambergers. They shall have cause to remember me.

SELBITZ. They have an old grudge against you.

GOETZ. And I against them. I am glad they have begun the fray.

SELBITZ. These free towns have always taken part with the priests.

GOETZ. They have good reason.

SELBITZ. But we will cook their porridge for them!

GOETZ. I reckon upon you. Would that the Burgomaster of Nurnberg, with his gold chain round his neck, fell in our way, we'd astonish him with all his cleverness.

SELBITZ. I hear Weislingen is again on your side. Does he really join in our league?

GOETZ. Not immediately. There are reasons which prevent his openly giving us assistance; but for the present it is quite enough that he is not against us. The priest without him is what the stole would be without the priest!

SELBITZ. When do we set forward?

GOETZ. To-morrow or next day. There are merchants of Bamberg and Nuremberg returning from the fair of Frankfort — We may strike a good blow.

SELBITZ. Let us hope so!

### SCENE III. *The Bishop's Palace at Bamberg*

ADELAIDE *and her* WAITING-MAID

ADELAIDE. He is here, sayest thou? I can scarce believe it.

MAID. Had I not seen him myself, I should have doubted it.

ADELAIDE. The bishop should frame Liebtraut in gold for such a masterpiece of skill.

MAID. I saw him as he was about to enter the palace. He was mounted on a grey charger. The horse started when

he came on the bridge, and would not move forward. The populace thronged up the street to see him. They rejoiced at the delay of the unruly horse. He was greeted on all sides, and he thanked them gracefully all round. He sate the curvetting steed with an easy indifference, and by threats and soothing brought him to the gate, followed by Liebtraut and a few servants.

ADELAIDE. What do you think of him?

MAID. I never saw a man who pleased me so well. He is as like that portrait of the emperor, as if he were his son (*pointing to a picture*). His nose is somewhat smaller, but just such gentle light-brown eyes, just such fine light hair, and such a figure! A half melancholy expression on his face, I know not how, but he pleased me so well.

ADELAIDE. I am curious to see him.

MAID. He would be the husband for you!

ADELAIDE. Foolish girl!

MAID. Children and fools ——

*Enter LIEBTRAUT*

Now, gracious lady, what do I deserve?

ADELAIDE. Horns from your wife! — for, judging from the present sample of your persuasive powers, you have certainly endangered the honour of many a worthy family.

LIEBTRAUT. Not so, be assured, gracious lady.

ADELAIDE. How did you contrive to bring him?

LIEBTRAUT. You know how they catch snipes, and why should I detail my little stratagems to you? — First, I pretended to have heard nothing, did not understand the reason of his behaviour, and put him upon the disadvantage of telling me the whole story at length — then I saw the matter in quite a different light to what he did — could not find — could not see, and so forth — then I gossipped things great and small about Bamberg, and recalled to his memory certain old recollections; and when I had succeeded in occupying his imagination, I knitted together many a broken association of ideas. He knew not what to say — felt a new attraction towards Bamberg — he would, and he would not.

When I found him begin to waver, and saw him too much occupied with his own feelings to suspect my sincerity, I threw over his head a halter, woven of the three powerful cords, beauty, court-favour, and flattery, and dragged him hither in triumph.

ADELAIDE. What said you of me?

LIEBTRAUT. The simple truth — that you were in perplexity about your estates, and had hoped as he had so much influence with the emperor, all would be satisfactorily settled.

ADELAIDE. 'Tis well.

LIEBTRAUT. The bishop will introduce him to you.

ADELAIDE. I expect them. [*Exit* LIEBTRAUT] And with such feelings have I seldom expected a visitor.

#### SCENE IV. *The Spessart*

*Enter SELBITZ, GOETZ, and GEORGE in the armour and dress of a trooper*

GOETZ. So, thou didst not find him, George?

GEORGE. He had ridden to Bamberg the day before, with Liebtraut and two servants.

GOETZ. I cannot understand what this means.

SELBITZ. I see it well — your reconciliation was almost too speedy to be lasting — Liebtraut is a cunning fellow, and has no doubt inveigled him over.

GOETZ. Think'st thou he will become a traitor?

SELBITZ. The first step is taken.

GOETZ. I will never believe it. Who knows what he may have to do at court — his affairs are still unarranged. Let us hope for the best.

SELBITZ. Would to Heaven he were deserving of your good opinion, and have acted for the best!

GOETZ. A thought strikes me! — We will disguise George in the spoils of the Bamberg trooper, and furnish him with the password — he may then ride to Bamberg, and see how matters stand.

GEORGE. I have long wished to do so.

GOETZ. It is thy first expedition. Be careful, boy; I should be sorry if ill befel thee.

GEORGE. Never fear. I care not how many of them crawl about me; I think no more of them than of rats and mice.

[*Exeunt*]

SCENE V. *The Bishop's Palace. His Cabinet*

THE BISHOP *and* WEISLINGEN

BISHOP. Then thou wilt stay no longer?

WEISLINGEN. You would not have me break my oath.

BISHOP. I could have wished thou hadst not sworn it. — What evil spirit possessed thee? — Could I not have procured thy release without that? Is my influence so small in the imperial court?

WEISLINGEN. The thing is done! — excuse it as you can.

BISHOP. I cannot see that there was the least necessity for taking such a step — To renounce me? — Were there not a thousand other ways of procuring thy freedom? — Had we not his page? And would I not have given gold enough to boot? and thus satisfied Berlichingen. Our operations against him and his confederates could have gone on — But, alas! I do not reflect that I am talking to his friend, who has joined him against me, and can easily counterwork the mines he himself has dug.

WEISLINGEN. My gracious lord...

BISHOP. And yet — when I again look on thy face, again hear thy voice — it is impossible — impossible!

WEISLINGEN. Farewell, good my lord!

BISHOP. I give thee my blessing — formerly when we parted, I was wont to say "Till we meet again!" — Now Heaven grant we meet no more!

WEISLINGEN. Things may alter.

BISHOP. Perhaps I may live to see thee appear as an enemy before my walls, carrying havoc through the fertile plains which now owe their flourishing condition to thee.

WEISLINGEN. Never, my gracious lord!

BISHOP. You cannot say so. My temporal neighbours all have a grudge against me — but while thou wert mine — — Go, Weislingen! — I have no more to say — Thou hast undone much — Go —

WEISLINGEN. I know not what to answer.

[*Exit* BISHOP]

*Enter* FRANCIS

FRANCIS. The Lady Adelaide expects you. She is not well — but she will not let you depart without bidding her adieu.

WEISLINGEN. Come.

FRANCIS. Do we go then for certain?

WEISLINGEN. This very night.

FRANCIS. I feel as if I were about to leave the world —

WEISLINGEN. I too, and as if besides I knew not whither to go.

## SCENE VI. *Adelaide's Apartment*

ADELAIDE and WAITING-MAID

MAID. You are pale, gracious lady!

ADELAIDE. I love him not, yet I wish him to stay — for I am fond of his company, though I should dislike him for my husband.

MAID. Does your ladyship think he will go?

ADELAIDE. He is even now bidding the bishop farewell.

MAID. He has yet a severe struggle to undergo.

ADELAIDE. What meanest thou?

MAID. Why do you ask, gracious lady? The barb'd hook is in his heart — ere he tear it away he must bleed to death.

*Enter* WEISLINGEN

WEISLINGEN. You are not well, gracious lady!

ADELAIDE. That must be indifferent to you — you leave us, leave us forever: what matters it to you whether we live or die?

WEISLINGEN. You do me injustice.

ADELAIDE. I judge you as you appear.

WEISLINGEN. Appearances are deceitful.

ADELAIDE. Then you are aameleon.

WEISLINGEN. Could you but see my heart —

ADELAIDE. I should see fine things there.

WEISLINGEN. Undoubtedly! — You would find your own image —

ADELAIDE. Thrust into some dark corner, with the pictures of defunct ancestors! I beseech you, Weislingen, consider with whom you speak — false words are of value only when they serve to veil our actions — a discovered masquerader plays a pitiful part. You do not disown your deeds, yet your words belie them; what are we to think of you?

WEISLINGEN. What you will — I am so agonised at reflecting on what I am, that I little reck for what I am taken.

ADELAIDE. You came to say farewell.

WEISLINGEN. Permit me to kiss your hand, and I will say adieu! — You remind me — I did not think — but I am troublesome —

ADELAIDE. You misinterpret me: Since you will depart, I only wished to assist your resolution.

WEISLINGEN. O say rather, I must! — were I not compelled by my knightly word — my solemn engagement —

ADELAIDE. Go to! Talk of that to maidens who read the tale of Theuerdanck, and wish that they had such a husband. — Knightly word! — Nonsense!

WEISLINGEN. You do not think so?

ADELAIDE. On my honour, you are dissembling. What have you promised? and to whom? You have pledged your alliance to a traitor to the emperor, at the very moment when he incurred the ban of the empire by taking you prisoner. Such an agreement is no more binding than an extorted, unjust oath. And do not our laws release you from



such oaths? Go, tell that to children, who believe in Rübezahl. There is something behind all this. — To become an enemy of the empire — a disturber of public happiness and tranquillity, an enemy of the emperor, the associate of a robber! — Thou, Weislingen, with thy gentle soul!

WEISLINGEN. Did but you know him.

ADELAIDE. I would deal justly with Goetz. He has a lofty indomitable spirit, and woe to thee, therefore, Weislingen. Go, and persuade thyself thou art his companion: Go, and receive his commands: Thou art courteous, gentle ——

WEISLINGEN. And he too.

ADELAIDE. But thou art yielding, and he is stubborn. Imperceptibly will he draw thee on. Thou wilt become the slave of a baron; thou that mightest command princes! — Yet it is cruel to make you discontented with your future position.

WEISLINGEN. Did you but know what kindness he showed me.

ADELAIDE. Kindness! — Do you make such a merit of that? It was his duty. And what would you have lost had he acted otherwise. I would rather he had done so. An overbearing man like —

WEISLINGEN. You speak of your enemy.

ADELAIDE. I speak for your freedom; yet I know not why I should take so much interest in it. Farewell!

WEISLINGEN. Permit me, but a moment. (*Takes her hand. A pause*)

ADELAIDE. Have you aught to say?

WEISLINGEN. I must hence.

ADELAIDE. Then go.

WEISLINGEN. Gracious lady, I cannot.

ADELAIDE. You must.

WEISLINGEN. And is this your parting look?

ADELAIDE. Go, I am unwell, very inopportunistly.

WEISLINGEN. Look not on me thus!

ADELAIDE. Wilt thou be our enemy, and yet have us smile upon thee — go!

WEISLINGEN. Adelaide!

ADELAIDE. I hate thee!

*Enter Francis*

FRANCIS. Noble sir, the bishop inquires for you.

ADELAIDE. Go! go!

FRANCIS. He begs you to come instantly.

ADELAIDE. Go! Go!

WEISLINGEN. I do not say adieu: I shall see you again.

*[Exeunt WEISLINGEN and FRANCIS]*

ADELAIDE. Thou wilt see me again? We must provide for that. Margaret, when he comes, refuse him admittance. Say I am ill, have a head-ache, am asleep, anything. If this does not detain him, nothing will. *[Exit*

## SCENE VII. *An ante-room*

WEISLINGEN *and* FRANCIS

WEISLINGEN. She will not see me!

FRANCIS. Night draws on; shall we saddle?

WEISLINGEN. She will not see me!

FRANCIS. Shall I order the horses?

WEISLINGEN. It is too late; we stay here.

FRANCIS. God be praised! *[Exit*

WEISLINGEN *(alone)*. Thou stayest! Be on thy guard — the temptation is great. My horse started at the castle gate. My good angel stood before him, he knew the danger that awaited me. Yet it would be wrong to leave in confusion the various affairs entrusted to me by the bishop, without at least so arranging them, that my successor may be able to continue where I left off. That I can do without breach of faith to Berlichingen, and when it is done no one shall detain me. Yet it would have been better that I had never come. But I will away — to-morrow — or next day: — 'Tis decided!

*[Exit*



SCENE VIII. *The Spessart**Enter* GOETZ, SELBITZ, *and* GEORGE

SELBITZ. You see it has turned out as I prophesied.

GOETZ. No, no, no.

GEORGE. I tell you the truth, believe me. I did as you commanded, took the dress and pass-word of the Bamberg trooper, and escorted some peasants of the Lower Rhine, who paid my expenses for my convoy.

SELBITZ. In that disguise? It might have cost thee dear.

GEORGE. So I begin to think, now that it's over. A trooper who thinks of danger beforehand, will never do anything great. I got safely to Bamberg, and in the very first inn I heard them tell how the bishop and Weislingen were reconciled, and how Weislingen was to marry the widow of Von Walldorf.

GOETZ. Mere gossip!

GEORGE. I saw him as he led her to table. She is lovely, by my faith, most lovely! We all bowed — she thanked us all. He nodded, and seemed highly pleased. They passed on, and everybody murmured, "What a handsome pair!"

GOETZ. That may be.

GEORGE. Listen further: The next day as he went to mass, I watched my opportunity; he was attended only by his squire; I stood at the steps, and whispered to him as he passed, "A few words from your friend Berlichingen." He started — I marked the confession of guilt in his face. He had scarcely the heart to look at me — me, a poor trooper's boy!

SELBITZ. His evil conscience degrades him more than thy condition does thee.

GEORGE. "Art thou of Bamberg?" said he. "The Knight of Berlichingen greets you," said I, "and I am to enquire —" "Come to my apartment to-morrow morning," quoth he, "and we will speak further."

GOETZ. And you went.

GEORGE. Yes, certainly, I went, and waited in his ante-chamber a long — long time — and his pages, in their silken

doublets, stared at me from head to foot. Stare on, thought I. At length I was admitted. He seemed angry. But what cared I? I gave my message. He began blustering like a coward who wants to look brave. He wondered that you should take him to task through a trooper's boy. That angered me. "There are but two sorts of people," said I, "true men and scoundrels, and I serve Goetz of Berlichingen." Then he began to talk all manner of nonsense, which all tended to one point, namely, that you had hurried him into an agreement, that he owed you no allegiance, and would have nothing to do with you.

GOETZ. Hadst thou that from his own mouth?

GEORGE. That, and yet more. He threatened me —

GOETZ. It is enough. He is lost for ever. Faith and confidence again, have ye deceived me. Poor Maria! how am I to break this to you?

SELBITZ. I would rather lose my other leg than be such a rascal.

SCENE IX. *Hall in the Bishop's Palace at  
Bamberg*

ADELAIDE and WEISLINGEN *discovered*

ADELAIDE. Time begins to hang insupportably heavy here. I dare not speak seriously, and I am ashamed to trifle with you. Ennui, thou art worse than a slow fever.

WEISLINGEN. Are you tired of me already?

ADELAIDE. Not so much of you as of your society. I would you had gone when you wished, and that we had not detained you.

WEISLINGEN. Such is woman's favour! At first she fosters with maternal warmth our dearest hopes; and then, like an inconstant hen, she forsakes the nest, and abandons the infant brood to death and decay.

ADELAIDE. Yes, you may rail at women. The reckless gambler tears and curses the harmless cards which have been the instruments of his loss. But let me tell you something about *men*. What are you that talk about fickleness? You that are seldom even what you would wish to be, never what you

should be. Princes in holiday garb! the envy of the vulgar. O what would a tailor's wife not give for a necklace of the pearls on the skirt of your robe, which you kick back contemptuously with your heels.

WEISLINGEN. You are severe.

ADELAIDE. It is but the antistrophe to your song. Ere I knew you, Weislingen, I felt like the tailor's wife. Hundred-tongued rumour, to speak without metaphor, had so extolled you, in quack-doctor fashion, that I was tempted to wish — O that I could but see this quintessence of manhood, this phoenix, Weislingen! My wish was granted.

WEISLINGEN. And the phoenix turned out a dunghill cock.

ADELAIDE. No, Weislingen, I took an interest in you.

WEISLINGEN. So it appeared.

ADELAIDE. So it *was* — for you really surpassed your reputation. The multitude prize only the reflection of worth. For my part, I do not care to scrutinize the character of those whom I esteem; so we lived on for some time. I felt there was a deficiency in you, but knew not what I missed; at length my eyes were opened — I saw instead of the energetic being who gave impulse to the affairs of a kingdom, and was ever alive to the voice of fame — who was wont to pile princely project on project, till, like the mountains of the Titans, they reached the clouds — instead of all this, I saw a man as querulous as a love-sick poet, as melancholy as a slighted damsel, and more indolent than an old bachelor. I first ascribed it to your misfortune which still lay at your heart, and excused you as well as I could; but now that it daily becomes worse, you must really forgive me if I withdraw my favour from you. You possess it unjustly; I bestowed it for life on a hero who cannot transfer it to you.

WEISLINGEN. Dismiss me, then.

ADELAIDE. Not till all chance of recovery is lost. Solitude is fatal in your distemper. Alas! poor man! you are as dejected as one whose first love has proved false, and therefore I won't give you up. Give me your hand, and pardon what affection has urged me to say.

WEISLINGEN. Could'st thou but love me, could'st thou but return the fervour of my passion with the least glow of sympathy. — Adelaide, thy reproaches are most unjust. Could'st thou but guess the hundredth part of my sufferings, thou wouldst not have tortured me so unmercifully with encouragement, indifference, and contempt. You smile. To be reconciled to myself after the step I have taken must be the work of more than one day. How can I plot against the man who has been so recently and so vividly restored to my affection.

ADELAIDE. Strange being! Can you love him whom you envy? It is like sending provisions to an enemy.

WEISLINGEN. I well know that here there must be no dallying. He is aware that I am again Weislingen; and he will watch his advantage over us. Besides, Adelaide, we are not so sluggish as you think. Our troopers are reinforced and watchful, our schemes are proceeding, and the diet of Augsburg will, I hope, soon bring them to a favourable issue.

ADELAIDE. You go there?

WEISLINGEN. If I could carry a glimpse of hope with me.

*[Kisses her hand]*

ADELAIDE. Oh! ye infidels! Always signs and wonders required. Go, Weislingen, and accomplish the work! The interest of the bishop, yours, and mine, are all so linked together, that were it only for policy's sake —

WEISLINGEN. You jest.

ADELAIDE. I do not jest. The haughty duke has seized my property. Goetz will not be slow to ravage yours; and if we do not hold together, as our enemies do, and gain over the emperor to our side, we are lost.

WEISLINGEN. I fear nothing. Most of the princes think with us. The emperor needs assistance against the Turks, and it is therefore just that he should help us in his turn. What rapture for me to rescue your fortune from rapacious enemies; to crush the mutinous chivalry of Swabia; to restore peace to the bishopric, and then —

ADELAIDE. One day brings on another, and fate is mistress of the future.

WEISLINGEN. But we must lend our endeavours.

ADELAIDE. We do so.

WEISLINGEN. But seriously.

ADELAIDE. Well, then, seriously. Do but go —

WEISLINGEN. Enchantress!

[*Exeunt*]

## SCENE X. *An Inn*

### *The Bridal of a PEASANT*

*The BRIDE'S FATHER, BRIDE, BRIDEGROOM, and other Country-folks, GOETZ of Berlichingen, and HANS of Selbitz all discovered at table. TROOPERS and PEASANTS attend*

GOETZ. It was the best way thus to settle your lawsuit by a merry bridal.

BRIDE'S FATHER. Better than ever I could have dreamed of, noble sir — to spend my days in peace and quiet with my neighbour, and have a daughter provided for to boot.

BRIDEGROOM. And I to get the bone of contention and a pretty wife into the bargain! Aye, the prettiest in the whole village. Would to Heaven you had consented sooner.

GOETZ. How long have you been at law?

BRIDE'S FATHER. About eight years. I would rather have the fever for twice that time, than go through with it again from the beginning. For these periwigged gentry never give a decision till you tear it out of their very hearts; and after all, what do you get for your pains? The Devil fly away with the assessor Sapupi for a damn'd swarthy Italian!

BRIDEGROOM. Yes, he's a pretty fellow; I was before him twice.

BRIDE'S FATHER. And I thrice; and look ye, gentlemen, we got a judgment at last, which set forth that he was as much in the right as I, and I as much as he; so there we stood like a couple of fools, till a good Providence put it

into my head to give him my daughter, and the ground besides.

GOETZ (*drinks*). To your better understanding for the future.

BRIDE'S FATHER. With all my heart! But come what may, I'll never go to law again as long as I live. What a mint of money it costs! For every bow made to you by a procurator, you must come down with your dollars.

SELBITZ. But there are annual imperial visitations.

BRIDE'S FATHER. I have never heard of them. Many an extra dollar have they contrived to squeeze out of me. The expenses are horrible.

GOETZ. How mean you?

BRIDE'S FATHER. Why, look you, these gentlemen of the law are always holding out their hands. The assessor alone, God forgive him, eased me of eighteen golden guilders.

BRIDEGROOM. Who?

BRIDE'S FATHER. Why, who else but Sapupi.

GOETZ. That is infamous.

BRIDE'S FATHER. Yes, he asked twenty: and there I had to pay them in the great hall of his fine country-house. I thought my heart would burst with anguish. For look you, my lord, I am well enough off with my house and little farm, but how could I raise the ready cash? I stood there, God knows how it was with me. I had not a single farthing to carry me on my journey. At last I took courage and told him my case: when he saw I was desperate, he flung me back a couple of guilders, and sent me about my business.

BRIDEGROOM. Impossible! Sapupi?

BRIDE'S FATHER. Aye, he himself! — What do you stare at?

BRIDEGROOM. Devil take the rascal! He took fifteen guilders from me too!

BRIDE'S FATHER. The deuce he did!

SELBITZ. They call us robbers, Goetz!

BRIDE'S FATHER. Bribe on both sides! That's why the judgment fell out so queer. — Oh! the scoundrel!



GOETZ. You must not let this pass unnoticed.

BRIDE'S FATHER. What can we do?

GOETZ. Why — go to Spire where there is an imperial visitation: make your complaint; they must enquire into it, and help you to your own again.

BRIDEGROOM. Does your honour think we shall succeed?

GOETZ. If I might take him in hand, I could promise it you.

SELBITZ. The sum is worth an attempt.

GOETZ. Aye; many a-day have I ridden out for the fourth part of it.

BRIDE'S FATHER (*to* BRIDEGROOM) What think'st thou?

BRIDEGROOM. We'll try, come what may.

*Enter* GEORGE

GEORGE. The Nurembergers have set out.

GOETZ. Whereabouts are they?

GEORGE. If we ride off quietly, we shall just catch them in the wood betwixt Berheim and Mühlbach.

SELBITZ. Excellent!

GOETZ. Well, my children, God bless you, and help every man to his own!

BRIDE'S FATHER. Thanks, gallant sir! Will you not stay to supper?

GOETZ. I cannot. Adieu!

*[Exeunt* GOETZ, SELBITZ, *and* TROOPERS

END OF THE SECOND ACT

## ACT THE THIRD

### SCENE I. *A Garden at Augsburg*

*Enter two MERCHANTS of Nuremberg*

FIRST MERCHANT. We'll stand here, for the emperor must pass this way. He is just coming up the long avenue.

SECOND MERCHANT. Who is that with him?

FIRST MERCHANT. Adelbert of Weislingen.

SECOND MERCHANT. The bishop's friend. That's lucky!

FIRST MERCHANT. We'll throw ourselves at his feet.

SECOND MERCHANT. See! they come.

*Enter the EMPEROR and WEISLINGEN*

FIRST MERCHANT. He looks displeased.

EMPEROR. I am disheartened, Weislingen. When I review my past life, I am ready to despair. So many half — aye, and wholly ruined undertakings — and all because the pettiest feudatory of the empire thinks more of gratifying his own whims than of seconding my endeavours.

*[The MERCHANTS throw themselves at his feet]*

FIRST MERCHANT. Most mighty! Most gracious!

EMPEROR. Who are ye? What seek ye?

FIRST MERCHANT. Poor merchants of Nuremberg, your majesty's devoted servants, who implore your aid. Goetz von Berlichingen and Hans von Selbitz fell upon thirty of us as we journeyed from the fair of Frankfort, under an escort from Bamberg; they overpowered and plundered us. We implore your imperial assistance to obtain redress, else we are all ruined men, and shall be compelled to beg our bread.

EMPEROR. Good heavens! What is this? The one has but one hand, the other but one leg; if they both had two hands and two legs what would you do then!

FIRST MERCHANT. We most humbly beseech your majesty to cast a look of compassion upon our unfortunate condition.



EMPEROR. How is this: — If a merchant loses a bag of pepper, all Germany is to rise in arms; but when business is to be done, in which the imperial majesty and the empire are interested, should it concern dukedoms, principalities, or kingdoms, there is no bringing you together.

WEISLINGEN. You come at an unseasonable time. Go, and stay at Augsburg for a few days.

MERCHANTS. We make our most humble obeisance.

[*Exeunt* MERCHANTS]

EMPEROR. Again new disturbances; they multiply like the hydra's heads!

WEISLINGEN. And can only be extirpated with fire and sword.

EMPEROR. Do you think so?

WEISLINGEN. Nothing seems to me more advisable, could your majesty and the princes but accommodate your other unimportant disputes. It is not the body of the state that complains of this malady — Franconia and Swabia alone glow with the embers of civil discord; and even there many of the nobles and free barons long for quiet. Could we but crush Sickingen, Selbitz — and — and — and Berlichingen, the others would soon fall asunder; for it is the spirit of these knights which quickens the turbulent multitude.

EMPEROR. Fain would I spare them; they are noble and hardy. Should I be engaged in war, they would follow me to the field.

WEISLINGEN. It is to be wished they had at all times known their duty; though even in that case it would have been dangerous to reward their mutinous bravery by offices of trust. For it is exactly this imperial mercy and forgiveness which they have hitherto so grievously abused, and upon which the hope and confidence of their league rests, and this spirit cannot be quelled till we have wholly destroyed their power in the eyes of the world, and taken from them all hope of ever recovering their lost influence.

EMPEROR. You advise severe measures then?

WEISLINGEN. I see no other means of quelling the spirit of insurrection which has seized upon whole provinces. Do we not already hear the bitterest complaints from the nobles, that their vassals and serfs rebel against them, question their authority, and threaten to curtail their hereditary prerogatives? A proceeding which would involve the most fearful consequences.

EMPEROR. This were a fair occasion for proceeding against Berlichingen and Selbitz; but I will not have them personally injured. Could they be taken prisoners, they should swear to renounce their feuds, and to remain in their own castles and territories upon their knightly parole. At the next session of the Diet we will propose this plan.

WEISLINGEN. A general exclamation of joyful assent will spare your majesty the trouble of particular detail.

[*Exeunt*]

## SCENE II. *Jaxthausen*

*Enter* GOETZ *and* FRANZ VON SICKINGEN

SICKINGEN. Yes, my friend, I come to beg the heart and hand of your noble sister.

GOETZ. I would you had come sooner. Weislingen, during his imprisonment, obtained her affections, proposed for her, and I gave my consent. I let the bird loose, and he now despises the benevolent hand that fed him in his distress. He flutters about to seek his food, God knows upon what hedge.

SICKINGEN. Is this so?

GOETZ. Even as I tell you.

SICKINGEN. He has broken a double bond. 'Tis well for you that you were not more closely allied with the traitor.

GOETZ. The poor maiden passes her life in lamentation and prayer.

SICKINGEN. I will comfort her.

GOETZ. What! Could you make up your mind to marry a forsaken —

SICKINGEN. It is to the honour of you both, to have been deceived by him. Should the poor girl be caged in a cloister because the first man who gained her love proved a villain? Not so; I insist on it. She shall be mistress of my castles!

GOETZ. I tell you he was not indifferent to her.

SICKINGEN. Do you think I cannot efface the recollection of such a wretch? Let us go to her. [Exeunt

SCENE III. *The Camp of the Party sent to  
execute the Imperial mandate*

*Imperial CAPTAIN and OFFICERS discovered*

CAPTAIN. We must be cautious, and spare our people as much as possible. Besides, we have strict orders to overpower and take him alive. It will be difficult to obey; for who will engage with him hand to hand?

FIRST OFFICER. 'Tis true. And he will fight like a wild boar. Besides, he has never in his whole life injured any of us, so each will be glad to leave to the other the honour of risking life and limb to please the emperor.

SECOND OFFICER. 'Twere shame to us should we not take him. Had I him once by the ears, he should not easily escape.

FIRST OFFICER. Don't seize him with your teeth, however, he might chance to run away with your jaw-bone. My good young sir, such men are not taken like a runaway thief.

SECOND OFFICER. We shall see.

CAPTAIN. By this time he must have had our summons. We must not delay. I mean to dispatch a troop to watch his motions.

SECOND OFFICER. Let me lead it.

CAPTAIN. You are unacquainted with the country.

SECOND OFFICER. I have a servant who was born and bred here.

CAPTAIN. That will do.

[Exeunt

SCENE IV. *Jaxthausen*SICKINGEN (*alone*)

All goes as I wish! She was somewhat startled at my proposal, and looked at me from head to foot; I'll wager she was comparing me with her gallant. Thank Heaven I can stand the scrutiny! She answered little and confusedly. So much the better! Let it work for a time. A proposal of marriage does not come amiss after such a cruel disappointment.

*Enter GOETZ*

SICKINGEN. What news, brother?

GOETZ. They have laid me under the ban.

SICKINGEN. How?

GOETZ. There, read the edifying epistle. The emperor has issued an edict against me, which gives my body for food to the beasts of the earth and the fowls of the air.

SICKINGEN. They shall first furnish them with a dinner themselves. I am here in the very nick of time.

GOETZ. No, Sickingen, you must leave me. Your great undertakings might be ruined, should you become the enemy of the emperor at so unseasonable a time. Besides, you can be of more use to me by remaining neutral. The worst that can happen is my being made prisoner; and then your good word with the emperor, who esteems you, may rescue me from the misfortune into which your untimely assistance would irremediably plunge us both. To what purpose should you do otherwise? These troops are marching against me; and if they knew we were united, their numbers would only be increased, and our position would consequently be no better. The emperor is at the fountain head; and I should be utterly ruined were it as easy to inspire soldiers with courage as to collect them into a body.

SICKINGEN. But I can privately reinforce you with a score of troopers.

GOETZ. Good. I have already sent George to Selbitz, and to my people in the neighbourhood. My dear brother,

when my forces are collected, they will be such a troop as few princes can bring together.

SICKINGEN. It will be small against the multitude.

GOETZ. One wolf is too many for a whole flock of sheep.

SICKINGEN. But if they have a good shepherd?

GOETZ. Never fear! They are all hirelings; and then even the best knight can do but little if he cannot act as he pleases. It happened once, that to oblige the Palsgrave, I went to serve against Conrad Schotten; they then presented me with a paper of instructions from the chancery, which set forth — Thus and thus must you proceed. I threw down the paper before the magistrates, and told them I could not act according to it; that something might happen unprovided for in my instructions, and that I must use my own eyes and judge what was best to be done.

SICKINGEN. Good luck, brother! I will hence, and send thee what men I can collect in haste.

GOETZ. Come first to the women. I left them together. I would you had her consent before you depart! Then send me the troopers, and come back in private to carry away my Maria; for my castle, I fear, will shortly be no abode for women.

SICKINGEN. We will hope for the best. [Exeunt

## SCENE V. *Bamberg. Adelaide's Chamber*

ADELAIDE and FRANCIS

ADELAIDE. They have already set out to enforce the ban against both?

FRANCIS. Yes; and my master has the happiness of marching against your enemies. I would gladly have gone also, however rejoiced I always am at being dispatched to you. But I will away instantly, and soon return with good news; my master has allowed me to do so.

ADELAIDE. How is he?

FRANCIS. He is well, and commanded me to kiss your hand.

ADELAIDE. There! — Thy lips glow.

FRANCIS (*aside, pressing his breast*). Here glows something yet more fiery. (*Aloud*) Gracious lady, your servants are the most fortunate of beings!

ADELAIDE. Who goes against Berlichingen?

FRANCIS. The Baron von Sirau. Farewell! Dearest, most gracious lady, I must away. Forget me not!

ADELAIDE. Thou must first take some rest and refreshment.

FRANCIS. I need none, for I have seen you! I am neither weary nor hungry.

ADELAIDE. I know thy fidelity.

FRANCIS. Ah, gracious lady!

ADELAIDE. You can never hold out; you *must* repose and refresh yourself.

FRANCIS. You are too kind to a poor youth. [*Exit*

ADELAIDE. The tears stood in his eyes. I love him from my heart. Never did man attach himself to me with such warmth of affection. [*Exit*

## SCENE VI. *Jaxthausen*

GOETZ *and* GEORGE

GEORGE. He wants to speak with you in person. I do not know him — he is a tall, well-made man, with keen dark eyes.

GOETZ. Admit him. [*Exit* GEORGE

*Enter* LERSE

GOETZ. God save you! What bring you?

LERSE. Myself: not much, but such as it is, it is at your service.

GOETZ. You are welcome, doubly welcome! A brave man, and at a time when, far from expecting new friends, I was in hourly fear of losing the old. Your name?

LERSE. Franz Lerse.

GOETZ. I thank you, Franz, for making me acquainted with a brave man!



LERSE. I made you acquainted with me once before, but then you did not thank me for my pains.

GOETZ. I have no recollection of you.

LERSE. I should be sorry if you had. Do you recollect when, to please the Palsgrave, you rode against Conrad Schotten, and went through Hassfurt on an Allhallows eve?

GOETZ. I remember it well.

LERSE. And twenty-five troopers encountered you in a village by the way?

GOETZ. Exactly. I at first took them for only twelve. I divided my party, which amounted but to sixteen, and halted in the village behind the barn, intending to let them ride by. Then I thought of falling upon them in the rear, as I had concerted with the other troop.

LERSE. We saw you, however, and stationed ourselves on a height above the village. You drew up beneath the hill and halted. When we perceived that you did not intend to come up to us we rode down to you.

GOETZ. And then I saw for the first time that I had thrust my hand into the fire. Five-and-twenty against eight is no jesting business. Everard Truchsess killed one of my followers, for which I knocked him off his horse. Had they all behaved like him and one other trooper, it would have been all over with me and my little band.

LERSE. And that trooper ——

GOETZ. Was as gallant a fellow as I ever saw. He attacked me fiercely; and when I thought I had given him enough and was engaged elsewhere, he was upon me again, and laid on like a fury: he cut quite through my armour, and wounded me in the arm.

LERSE. Have you forgiven him?

GOETZ. He pleased me only too well.

LERSE. I hope then you have cause to be contented with me, since the proof of my valour was on your own person.

GOETZ. Art thou he? O welcome! welcome! Canst thou boast, Maximilian, that amongst thy followers, thou hast gained one after this fashion?

LERSE. I wonder you did not sooner hit upon me.

GOETZ. How could I think that the man would engage in my service who did his best to overpower me?

LERSE. Even so, my lord. From my youth upwards I have served as a trooper, and have had a tussle with many a knight. I was overjoyed when we met you; for I had heard of your prowess, and wished to know you. Yow saw I gave way, and that it was not from cowardice, for I returned to the charge. In short, I learnt to know you, and from that hour I resolved to enter your service.

GOETZ. How long wilt thou engage with me?

LERSE. For a year, without pay.

GOETZ. No; thou shalt have as the others; nay more, as befits him who gave me so much work at Remlin.

*Enter GEORGE*

GEORGE. Hans of Selbitz greets you. To-morrow he will be here with fifty men.

GOETZ. 'Tis well.

GEORGE. There is a troop of Imperialists riding down the hill, doubtless to reconnoitre.

GOETZ. How many?

GEORGE. About fifty.

GOETZ. Only fifty! Come, Lerse, we'll have a slash at them, so that when Selbitz comes he may find some work done to his hand.

LERSE. 'Twill be capital practice.

GOETZ. To horse! *[Exeunt]*

SCENE VII. *A Wood, on the borders of a Morass*

*Two IMPERIALIST TROOPERS meeting*

FIRST IMPERIALIST. What dost thou here?

SECOND IMPERIALIST. I have leave of absence for ten minutes. Ever since our quarters were beat up last night, I have had such violent attacks that I can't sit on horseback for two minutes together.

FIRST IMPERIALIST. Is the party far advanced?



SECOND IMPERIALIST. About three miles into the wood.

FIRST IMPERIALIST. Then why are you playing truant here?

SECOND IMPERIALIST. Prithee, betray me not. I am going to the next village to see if I cannot get some warm bandages, to relieve my complaint. But whence comest thou?

FIRST IMPERIALIST. I am bringing our officer some wine and meat from the nearest village.

SECOND IMPERIALIST. So, so! he stuffs himself under our very noses, and we must starve — A fine example!

FIRST IMPERIALIST. Come back with me, rascal.

SECOND IMPERIALIST. Call me a fool, if I do! There are plenty in our troop who would gladly fast, to be as far away as I am.

*[Trampling of horses heard]*

FIRST IMPERIALIST

Hear'st thou? — Horses!

SECOND IMPERIALIST. Oh dear! Oh dear!

FIRST IMPERIALIST. I'll get up into this tree.

SECOND IMPERIALIST. And I'll hide among the rushes.

*[They hide themselves]*

*Enter on horseback, GOETZ, LERSE, GEORGE, and TROOPERS,  
all completely armed*

GOETZ. Away into the wood, by the ditch on the left left — then we have them in the rear.

*[They gallop off]*

FIRST IMPERIALIST *(descending)*. This is a bad business — Michael! — He answers not — Michael, they are gone! *(Goes towards the marsh)* Alas, he is sunk! — Michael! — He hears me not: he is suffocated. — Poor coward, art thou done for — We are slain — Enemies! Enemies on all sides!

*Re-enter GOETZ and GEORGE on horseback*

GOETZ. Yield thee, fellow, or thou diest!

IMPERIALIST. Spare my life!

GOETZ. Thy sword! — George, lead him to the other prisoners, whom Lerse is guarding yonder in the wood — I must pursue their fugitive leader. *[Exit*

IMPERIALIST. What has become of the knight, our officer?

GEORGE. My master struck him head over heels from his horse, so that his plume stuck in the mire. His troopers got him up and ran as if the devil were behind them.

*[Exeunt*

### SCENE VIII. *Camp of the Imperialists*

CAPTAIN *and* FIRST OFFICER

FIRST OFFICER. They fly from afar towards the camp.

CAPTAIN. He is most likely hard at their heels — Draw out fifty as far as the mill; if he follows up the pursuit too far, you may perhaps entrap him. *[Exit OFFICER*

*The SECOND OFFICER is borne in*

CAPTAIN. How now, my young sir — have you got a cracked headpiece?

OFFICER. A plague upon you! The stoutest helmet went to shivers like glass. The demon! — he ran upon me as if he would strike me into the earth!

CAPTAIN. Thank God that you have escaped with your life.

OFFICER. There is little left to be thankful for; two of my ribs are broken — where's the surgeon? *[He is carried off*

### SCENE IX. *Jaxthausen*

*Enter GOETZ and SELBITZ*

GOETZ. And what say you to the ban, Selbitz?

SELBITZ. 'Tis a trick of Weislingen's.

GOETZ. Do you think so?

SELBITZ. I do not think — I know it.

GOETZ. How so?

SELBITZ. He was at the Diet, I tell thee, and near the emperor's person.

GOETZ. Well then, we shall frustrate another of his schemes.

SELBITZ. I hope so.

GOETZ. We will away! and course these hares.

## SCENE X. *The Imperial Camp*

CAPTAIN, OFFICERS *and* FOLLOWERS

CAPTAIN. We shall gain nothing at this work, sirs! He beats one troop after another; and whoever escapes death or captivity, would rather fly to Turkey than return to the camp. Thus our force diminishes daily. We must attack him once for all, and in earnest — I will go myself, and he shall find with whom he has to deal.

OFFICER. We are all content; but he is so well acquainted with the country, and knows every path and ravine so thoroughly, that he will be as difficult to find as a rat in a barn.

CAPTAIN. I warrant you we'll ferret him out. On towards Jaxthausen! Whether he like it or not, he must come to defend his castle.

OFFICER. Shall our whole force march?

CAPTAIN. Yes, certainly — do you know that a hundred of us are melted away already?

OFFICER. Then let us away with speed, before the whole snow-ball dissolves; for this is warm work, and we stand here like butter in the sunshine. [*Exeunt — A march sounded*]

## SCENE XI. *Mountains and a Wood*

GOETZ, SELBITZ *and* TROOPERS

GOETZ. They are coming in full force. It was high time that Sickingen's troopers joined us.

SELBITZ. We will divide our party — I will take the left hand by the hill.

GOETZ. Good — and do thou, Lerse, lead fifty men straight through the wood on the right. They are coming across the heath — I will draw up opposite to them. George, stay by me — when you see them attack me, then fall upon their flank: we'll beat the knaves into a mummy — they little think we can face them. [*Exeunt*

SCENE XII. *A heath — on one side an eminence, with a ruined tower, on the other the forest*

*Enter marching, the CAPTAIN OF THE IMPERIALISTS, with OFFICERS and his SQUADRON — Drums and standards*

CAPTAIN. He halts upon the heath! that's too impudent. He shall smart for it — what! not fear the torrent that threatens to overwhelm him!

OFFICER. I had rather you did not head the troops; he looks as if he meant to plant the first that comes upon him in the mire with his head downmost. Prithee ride in the rear.

CAPTAIN. Not so.

OFFICER. I entreat you. You are the knot which unites this bundle of hazel-twigs; loose it, and he will break them separately like so many reeds.

CAPTAIN. Sound, trumpeter — and let us blow him to hell!

*[A charge sounded — Exeunt in full career]*

SELBITZ, *with his TROOPERS, comes from behind the hill, galloping*

SELBITZ. Follow me! They shall wish that they could multiply their hands.

*[They gallop across the stage, et exeunt]*

*Loud alarm — LERSE and his party sally from the wood*

LERSE. Ho! to the rescue! Goetz is almost surrounded. — Gallant Selbitz, thou hast cut thy way — we will sow the heath with these thistle heads. [*Gallop off*]

*[A loud alarm, with shouting and firing for some minutes. SELBITZ is borne in wounded by two TROOPERS]*

SELBITZ. Leave me here, and hasten to Goetz.

FIRST TROOPER. Let us stay, sir — you need our aid.

SELBITZ. Get one of you on the watch-tower, and tell me how it goes.

FIRST TROOPER. How shall I get up?

SECOND TROOPER. Mount upon my shoulders — you can then reach the ruined part, and thence scramble up to the opening.

[FIRST TROOPER *gets up into the tower*

FIRST TROOPER. Alas! Sir!

SELBITZ. What seest thou?

FIRST TROOPER. Your troopers fly towards the hill.

SELBITZ. Rascally cowards! — I would that they stood their ground, and I had a ball through my head! — Ride one of you full speed — Curse and thunder them back to the field — Seest thou Goetz?

[*Exit* SECOND TROOPER

TROOPER. I see his three black feathers floating in the midst of the wavy tumult.

SELBITZ. Swim, brave swimmer — I lie here.

TROOPER. A white plume — whose is that?

SELBITZ. The captain's.

TROOPER. Goetz gallops upon him — crash! Down he goes!

SELBITZ. The captain?

TROOPER. Yes, Sir.

SELBITZ. Hurrah! hurrah!

TROOPER. Alas! alas! I see Goetz no more.

SELBITZ. Then die, Selbitz!

TROOPER. A dreadful tumult where he stood — George's blue plume vanishes too.

SELBITZ. Come down! Dost thou not see Larse?

TROOPER. No! — Everything is in confusion!

SELBITZ. No more. Come down. — How do Sickingen's men bear themselves?

TROOPER. Well! — One of them flies to the wood — another — another — a whole troop. — Goetz is lost!

SELBITZ. Come down.

TROOPER. I cannot — Hurrah! Hurrah! I see Goetz, I see George.

SELBITZ. On horseback?

TROOPER. Aye, aye, high on horseback — Victory! victory! — they fly.

SELBITZ. The Imperialists?

TROOPER. Yes, standard and all, Goetz behind them. They disperse, — Goetz reaches the ensign — he seizes the standard; he halts. A handful of men rally round him — My comrade reaches him — They come this way.

*Enter GOETZ, GEORGE, LERSE, and TROOPERS, on horseback*

SELBITZ. Joy to thee, Goetz! — Victory! victory!

GOETZ (*dismounting*). Dearly, dearly bought! Thou art wounded, Selbitz!

SELBITZ. But thou dost live and hast conquered! I have done little; and my dogs of troopers! How hast thou come?

GOETZ. For the present, well! And here I thank George, and thee Lerse, for my life. I unhorsed the captain, they stabbed my horse, and pressed me hard. George cut his way to me, and sprang off his horse. I threw myself like lightning upon it, and he appeared suddenly like a thunderbolt upon another. How camest thou by thy steed?

GEORGE. A fellow struck at you from behind: as he raised his cuirass in the act, I stabbed him with my dagger. Down he came! and so I rid you of an enemy, and helped myself to a horse.

GOETZ. Then we held together till Francis here came to our help; and thereupon we mowed our way out.

LERSE. The hounds whom I led were to have mowed their way in, till our scythes met, but they fled like Imperialists.

GOETZ. Friend and foe all fled, except this little band who protected my rear. I had enough to do with the fellows in front, but the fall of their captain dismayed them: they wavered, and fled. I have their banner, and a few prisoners.

SELBITZ. The captain has escaped you?

GOETZ. They rescued him in the scuffle. Come lads, come Selbitz. — Make a litter of lances and boughs: Thou can'st not mount a horse, come to my castle. They are scattered but we are very few; and I know not what troops they may have in reserve. I will be your host, my friends. Wine will taste well after such an action!

[*Exeunt, carrying Selbitz*]

### SCENE XIII. *The Camp*

*The CAPTAIN and IMPERIALISTS*

CAPTAIN. I could kill you all with my own hand. — What! to turn tail! He had not a handful of men left. To give way before one man! No one will believe it but those who wish to make a jest of us. Ride round the country, you, and you, and you: collect our scattered soldiers, or cut them down wherever you find them. We must grind these notches out of our blades, even should we spoil our swords in the operation.

[*Exeunt*]

### SCENE XIV. *Jaxthausen*

GOETZ, LERSE, and GEORGE

GOETZ. We must not lose a moment. My poor fellows, I dare allow you no rest. Gallop round and strive to enlist troopers, appoint them to assemble at Weilern, where they will be most secure. Should we delay a moment, they will be before the castle. — (*Exeunt LERSE and GEORGE*) — I must send out a scout. This begins to grow warm. — If we had but brave foemen to deal with! But these fellows are only formidable through their number.

[*Exit*]

*Enter SICKINGEN and MARIA*

MARIA. I beseech thee, dear Sickingen, do not leave my brother! His horsemen, your own, and those of Selbitz, all are scattered; he is alone. Selbitz has been carried home to his castle wounded. I fear the worst.



SICKINGEN. Be comforted, I will not leave him.

*Enter GOETZ*

GOETZ. Come to the chapel, the priest waits; in a few minutes you shall be united.

SICKINGEN. Let me remain with you.

GOETZ. You must come now to the chapel.

SICKINGEN. Willingly! — and then —

GOETZ. Then you go your way.

SICKINGEN. Goetz!

GOETZ. Will you not to the chapel?

SICKINGEN. Come, come!

*[Exeunt]*

## SCENE XV. *Camp*

CAPTAIN *and* OFFICERS

CAPTAIN. How many are we in all?

OFFICER. A hundred and fifty —

CAPTAIN. Out of four hundred. — That is bad. Set out for Jaxthausen at once, before he collects his forces and attacks us on the way.

## SCENE XVI. *Jaxthausen*

GOETZ, ELIZABETH, MARIA, *and* SICKINGEN

GOETZ. God bless you, give you happy days, and keep those for your children which he denies to you!

ELIZABETH. And may they be virtuous as you — then let come what will.

SICKINGEN. I thank you. — And you, my Maria! As I led you to the altar, so shall you lead me to happiness.

MARIA. Our pilgrimage will be together towards that distant and promised land.

GOETZ. A prosperous journey!

MARIA. That was not what I meant — We do not leave you.

GOETZ. You must, sister.

MARIA. You are very harsh, brother.

GOETZ. And you more affectionate than prudent.



*Enter GEORGE*

GEORGE (*aside to GOETZ*). I can collect no troopers: One was inclined to come, but he changed his mind and refused.

GOETZ (*to GEORGE*). 'Tis well, George. Fortune begins to look coldly on me. I foreboded it, however. [*Aloud* Sickingen, I entreat you, depart this very evening. Persuade Maria — You are her husband — let her feel it. — When women come across our undertakings, our enemies are more secure in the open field, than they would else be in their castles.

*Enter a TROOPER*

TROOPER (*aside to Goetz*). The Imperial squadron is in full and rapid march hither.

GOETZ. I have roused them with stripes of the rod! How many are they?

TROOPER. About two hundred — They can scarcely be six miles from us.

GOETZ. Have they passed the river yet?

TROOPER. No, my lord!

GOETZ. Had I but fifty men, they should not cross it. Hast thou seen Lerse?

TROOPER. No, my lord!

GOETZ. Tell all to hold themselves ready. — Wo must part, dear friends. Weep on, my gentle Maria — Many a moment of happiness is yet in store for thee — It is better thou shouldst weep on thy wedding-day, than that present joy should be the fore-runner of future misery. — Farewell, Maria! — Farewell, brother!

MARIA. I cannot leave you, sister. Dear brother, let us stay. Dost thou value my husband so little as to refuse his help in thy extremity?

GOETZ. Yes — it is gone far with me. Perhaps my fall is near. You are but beginning life, and should separate your lot from mine. I have ordered your horses to be saddled; you must away instantly!

MARIA. Brother! brother!

ELIZABETH (*to SICKINGEN*). Yield to his wishes.  
Speak to her.

SICKINGEN. Dear Maria! we must go.

MARIA. Thou too? My heart will break!

GOETZ. Then stay. In a few hours my castle will be surrounded.

MARIA (*weeping bitterly*). Alas! alas!

GOETZ. We will defend ourselves as long as we can.

MARIA. Mother of God, have mercy upon us!

GOETZ. And at last we must die or surrender. Thy tears will then have involved thy noble husband in the same misfortune with me.

MARIA. Thou torturest me!

GOETZ. Remain! Remain! We shall be taken together! Sickingen, thou wilt fall into the pit with me, out of which I had hoped thou should'st have helped me.

MARIA. We will away — Sister — sister!

GOETZ. Place her in safety, and then think of me.

SICKINGEN. Never shall I repose a night till I know thou art out of danger.

GOETZ. Sister! dear sister! (*Kisses her*)

SICKINGEN. Away! away!

GOETZ. Yet one moment! I shall see you again. Be comforted, we shall meet again. (*Exeunt SICKINGEN and MARIA*) I urged her to depart — yet when she leaves me, what would I not give to detain her. Elizabeth thou stayest with me.

ELIZABETH. Till death! [*Exit*]

GOETZ. Whom God loves, to him may He give such a wife.

*Enter GEORGE*

GEORGE. They are near! I saw them from the tower. The sun is rising, and I perceived their lances glitter. I cared no more for them than a cat would for a whole army of mice. 'Tis true *we* play the mice at present.

GOETZ. Look to the fastenings of the gates; barricade them with beams and stones. (*Exit GEORGE*) We'll exercise their patience, and they may chew away their valour in biting their nails. (*A trumpet from without. GOETZ goes to the window*) Aha! Here comes a red-coated rascal to ask me whether I will be a scoundrel! What says he? (*The voice of the HERALD is heard indistinctly, as from a distance. GOETZ mutters to himself*) A rope for thy throat! (*Voice again*) "Offended majesty!" — Some priest has drawn up that proclamation. (*Voice concludes, and GOETZ answers from the window*) Surrender — surrender at discretion! With whom speak you? Am I a robber? Tell your captain, that for the emperor I entertain, as I have ever done, all due respect; but as for him, he may — (*Shuts the window with violence*)

## SCENE XVII. *The Kitchen*

ELIZABETH *preparing food* — *Enter GOETZ*

GOETZ. You have hard work, my poor wife!

ELIZABETH. Would it might last! But you can hardly hold out long.

GOETZ. We have not had time to provide ourselves.

ELIZABETH. And so many people as you have been wont to entertain. The wine is well nigh finished.

GOETZ. If we can but hold out a certain time, they must propose a capitulation. We are doing them some damage I promise you. They shoot the whole day, and only wound our walls and break our windows. Lersé is a gallant fellow. He slips about with his gun: if a rogue comes too nigh — Pop! there he lies! (*Firing*)

*Enter TROOPER*

TROOPER. We want live coals, gracious lady!

GOETZ. For what?

TROOPER. Our bullets are spent; we must cast some new ones.

GOETZ. How goes it with the powder?

TROOPER. There is as yet no want: we save our fire.

(*Firing at intervals*)

[*Exeunt* GOETZ and ELIZABETH

*Enter* LERSE *with a bullet-mould. Servants with coals*

LERSE. Set them down, and then go and see for lead about the house; meanwhile I will make shift with this (*Goes to the window, and takes out the leaden frames*). Everything must be turned to account. So it is in this world — no one knows what a thing may come to: the glazier who made these frames little thought that the lead here was to give one of his grandsons his last headache; and the father that begot me, little knew whether the fowls of heaven or the worms of the earth would pick my bones.

*Enter* GEORGE *with a leaden spout*

GEORGE. Here's lead for thee! If you hit with only half of it, not one will return to tell his Majesty, "Thy servants have sped ill!"

LERSE. (*cutting it down*). A famous piece!

GEORGE. The rain must seek some other way. I'm not afraid of it — a brave trooper and a smart shower will always find their road. (*They cast balls*)

LERSE. Hold the ladle. (*Goes to the window*) Yonder is a fellow creeping about with his rifle; he thinks our fire is spent. He shall have a bullet warm from the pan. (*He loads his rifle*).

GEORGE (*puts down the mould*). Let me see.

LERSE. (*Fires*) There lies the game!

GEORGE. He fired at me as I stepped out on the roof to get the lead. He killed a pigeon that sat near me; it fell into the spout. I thanked him for my dinner, and went back with the double booty. (*They cast balls*)

LERSE. Now let us load, and go through the castle to earn our dinner.

*Enter* GOETZ

GOETZ. Stay, Lerse, I must speak with thee. I will not keep thee, George, from the sport. [*Exit* GEORGE

GOETZ. They offer terms.

LERSE. I will go and hear what they have to say.

GOETZ. They will require me to enter myself into ward in some town on my knightly parole.

LERSE. That won't do. Suppose they allow us free liberty of departure? for we can expect no relief from Sickingen. We will bury all the valuables, where no divining-rod shall find them; leave them the bare walls, and come out with flying colours.

GOETZ. They will not permit us.

LERSE. It is worth the asking. We will demand a safe-conduct, and I will sally out.

### SCENE XVIII. *A Hall*

GOETZ, ELIZABETH, GEORGE, and TROOPERS *at table*

GOETZ. Danger unites us, my friends! Be of good cheer; don't forget the bottle! The flask is empty. Come, another, dear wife! (ELIZABETH *shakes her head*) Is there no more?

ELIZABETH (*aside*). Only one, which I have set apart for you.

GOETZ. Not so, my love! Bring it out; they need strengthening, more than I, for it is my quarrel.

ELIZABETH. Fetch it from the cupboard.

GOETZ. It is the last, and I feel as if we need not spare it. It is long since I have been so merry. (*They fill*) To the health of the emperor!

ALL. Long live the emperor!

GOETZ. Be it our last word when we die! I love him, for our fate is similar; but I am happier than he. To please the princes, he must direct his imperial squadrons against mice, while the rats gnaw his possessions. — I know he often wishes himself dead, rather than to be any longer the soul of such a crippled body. (*They fill*) It will just go once more round. And when our blood runs low, like this flask; when we pour out its last ebbing drop (*empties the wine drop by drop into his goblet*), what then shall be our cry?

GEORGE. Freedom for ever!

GOETZ. Freedom for ever!

ALL. Freedom for ever!

GOETZ. And if that survive us we can die happy; for our spirits shall see our children's children, and their emperor happy! Did the servants of princes show the same filial attachment to their masters as you to me — did their masters serve the emperor as I would serve him ——

GEORGE. Things would be widely different.

GOETZ. Not so much so as it would appear. Have I not known worthy men among the princes? And can the race be extinct? Men, happy in their own minds and in their subjects, who could bear a free, noble brother in their neighbourhood without harbouring either fear or envy; whose hearts expanded when they saw their table surrounded by their free equals, and who did not think the knights unfit companions till they had degraded themselves by courtly homage.

GEORGE. Have you known such princes?

GOETZ. Ay, truly. As long as I live I shall recollect how the Landgrave of Hanau made a grand hunting-party, and the princes and free feudatories dined under the open heaven, and the country-people all thronged to see them; it was no selfish masquerade instituted for his own private pleasure or vanity. — To see the great round-headed peasant lads and the pretty brown girls, the sturdy hinds, and the venerable old men, a crowd of happy faces, all as merry as if they rejoiced in the splendour of their master, which he shared with them under God's free sky!

GEORGE. He must have been as good a master as you.

GOETZ. And may we not hope that many such will rule together some future day, to whom reverence to the emperor, peace and friendship with their neighbours, and the love of their vassals, shall be the best and dearest family treasure handed down to their children's children? Every one will then keep and improve his own, instead of reckoning nothing as gain that is not stolen from his neighbours.

GEORGE. And should we have no more forays?



GOETZ. Would to God there were no restless spirits in all Germany! — we should still have enough to do! We would clear the mountains of wolves, and bring our peaceable laborious neighbour a dish of game from the wood, and eat it together. Were that not full employment, we would join our brethren, and, like cherubims with flaming swords, defend the frontiers of the empire against those wolves the Turks, and those foxes the French, and guard for our beloved emperor both extremities of his extensive empire. That would be a life, George! To risk one's head for the safety of all Germany. (GEORGE *springs up*) Whither away?

GEORGE. Alas! I forgot we were besieged — besieged by that very emperor; and before we can expose our lives in his defence, we must risk them for our liberty.

GOETZ. Be of good cheer.

*Enter LERSE*

LERSE. Freedom! freedom! The cowardly poltroons — the hesitating, irresolute asses. You are to depart with men, weapons, horses, and armour; provisions you are to leave behind.

GOETZ. They will hardly find enough to exercise their jaws.

LERSE (*aside to GOETZ*). Have you hidden the plate and money?

GOETZ. No! Wife, go with Lerse; he has something to tell thee.

[*Exeunt*]

## SCENE XIX. *The Court of the Castle*

GEORGE (*in the stable. Sings*)

An urchin once, as I have heard,

Ha! ha!

Had caught and caged a little bird.

Sa! sa!

Ha! ha!

Sa! sa!

He viewed the prize with heart elate,

Ha! ha!

Thrust in his hand — ah treacherous fate!

Sa! sa!

Ha! ha!

Sa! sa!

Away the titmouse wing'd its flight,

Ha! ha!

And laugh'd to scorn the silly wight.

Sa! sa!

Ha! ha!

Sa! sa!

*Enter GOETZ*

GOETZ. How goes it?

GEORGE (*brings out his horse*). All saddled!

GOETZ. Thou art quick.

GEORGE. As the bird escaped from the cage.

*Enter all the besieged*

GOETZ. Have you all your rifles? Not yet! Go, take the best from the armoury, 'tis all one; we'll ride on in advance.

GEORGE (*sings*)

Ha! ha!

Sa! sa!

Ha! ha!

## SCENE XX. *The Armoury*

*Two TROOPERS choosing guns*

FIRST TROOPER. I'll have this one.

SECOND TROOPER. And I this — but yonder's a better.

FIRST TROOPER. Never mind — make haste.

*[Tumult and firing without]*

SECOND TROOPER. Hark!

FIRST TROOPER (*springs to the window*). Good heavens, they are murdering our master! He is unhorsed! George is down!



SECOND TROOPER. How shall we get off? Over the wall by the walnut-tree, and into the field. *[Exit*

FIRST TROOPER. Lerse keeps his ground; I will to him. If they die, I will not survive them. *[Exit*

END OF THE THIRD ACT

## ACT THE FOURTH

### SCENE I. *An Inn in the city of Heilbronn*

GOETZ (*solus*)

GOETZ. I am like the evil spirit whom the capuchin conjured into a sack. I fret and labour, but all in vain. The perjured villains! (*Enter ELIZABETH*) What news, Elizabeth, of my dear, my trusty followers?

ELIZABETH. Nothing certain: some are slain, some are prisoners; no one could or would tell me further particulars.

GOETZ. Is this the reward of fidelity, of filial obedience? — “That it may be well with thee, and that thy days may be long in the land!”

ELIZABETH. Dear husband, murmur not against our heavenly Father. They have their reward. It was born with them — a noble and generous heart. Even in the dungeon they are free. Think now of appearing before the imperial commissioners; their heavy gold chains become them —

GOETZ. As a necklace becomes a sow! I should like to see George and Lerse in fetters!

ELIZABETH. It were a sight to make angels weep.

GOETZ. I would not weep — I would clench my teeth, and gnaw my lip in fury. What! in fetters! Had ye but loved me less, dear lads! I could never look at them enough. — What! to break their word pledged in the name of the emperor!

ELIZABETH. Put away these thoughts. Reflect; you must appear before the council — you are in no mood to meet them, and I fear the worst.

GOETZ. What harm can they do me?

ELIZABETH. Here comes the serjeant.

GOETZ. What! the ass of justice that carries the sacks to the mill and the dung to the field? What now?

*Enter SERJEANT*

SERJEANT. The lords commissioners are at the Council-House, and require your presence.

GOETZ. I come.

SERJEANT. I am to escort you.

GOETZ. Too much honour.

ELIZABETH. Be but cool.

GOETZ. Fear nothing.

[*Exeunt*]

## SCENE II. *The Council-House at Heilbronn*

*The IMPERIAL COMMISSIONERS seated at a table. The CAPTAIN and the  
MAGISTRATES of the city attending*

MAGISTRATE. In pursuance of your order, we have collected the stoutest and most determined of our citizens. They are at hand, in order, at a nod from you, to seize Berlichingen.

COMMISSIONER. We shall have much pleasure in communicating to his imperial majesty the zeal with which you have obeyed his illustrious commands. — Are they artizans?

MAGISTRATE. Smiths, coopers, and carpenters, men with hands hardened by labour; and resolute here.

[*Points to his breast*]

COMMISSIONER. 'Tis well!

*Enter* SERJEANT

SERJEANT. Goetz von Berlichingen waits without.

COMMISSIONER. Admit him.

*Enter* GOETZ

GOETZ. God save you, sirs! What would you with me?

COMMISSIONER. First, that you consider where you are; and in whose presence.

GOETZ. By my faith, I know you right well, sirs.

COMMISSIONER. You acknowledge allegiance.

GOETZ. With all my heart.

COMMISSIONER. Be seated. *[Points to a stool]*

GOETZ. What, down there? I'd rather stand. That stool smells so of poor sinners, as indeed does the whole apartment.

COMMISSIONER. Stand, then.

GOETZ. To business, if you please.

COMMISSIONER. We shall proceed in due order.

GOETZ. I am glad to hear it. Would you had always done so.

COMMISSIONER. You know how you fell into our hands, and are a prisoner at discretion.

GOETZ. What will you give me to forget it?

COMMISSIONER. Could I give you modesty, I should better your affairs.

GOETZ. Better my affairs! could you but do that? To repair is more difficult than to destroy.

SECRETARY. Shall I put all this on record?

COMMISSIONER. Only what is to the purpose.

GOETZ. As far as I'm concerned you may print every word of it.

COMMISSIONER. You fell into the power of the emperor, whose paternal goodness got the better of his justice, and, instead of throwing you into a dungeon, ordered you to repair to his beloved city of Heilbronn. You gave your knightly parole to appear, and await the termination in all humility.

GOETZ. Well; I am here, and await it.

COMMISSIONER. And we are here to intimate to you his Imperial Majesty's mercy and clemency. He is pleased to forgive your rebellion, to release you from the ban and all well-merited punishment; provided you do, with becoming humility, receive his bounty, and subscribe to the articles which shall be read unto you.

GOETZ. I am his majesty's faithful servant, as ever. One word, ere you proceed. My people — where are they? What will be done with them?

COMMISSIONER. That concerns you not.

GOETZ. So may the emperor turn his face from you in the hour of your need. They were my comrades, and are so now. What have you done with them?

COMMISSIONER. We are not bound to account to you.

GOETZ. Ah! I forgot that you are not even pledged to perform what you have promised, much less —

COMMISSIONER. Our business is to lay the articles before you. Submit yourself to the emperor, and you may find a way to petition for the life and freedom of your comrades.

GOETZ. Your paper.

COMMISSIONER. Secretary, read it.

SECRETARY (*reads*). "I, Goetz of Berlichingen, make public acknowledgment, by these presents, that I, having lately risen in rebellion against the emperor and empire —"

GOETZ. 'Tis false! I am no rebel, I have committed no offence against the emperor, and with the empire I have no concern.

COMMISSIONER. Be silent, and hear further.

GOETZ. I will hear no further. Let any one arise and bear witness. Have I ever taken one step against the emperor, or against the house of Austria? Has not the whole tenor of my conduct proved that I feel better than any one else what all Germany owes to its head; and especially what the free knights and feudatories owe to their liege lord the emperor? I should be a villain could I be induced to subscribe that paper.

COMMISSIONER. Yet we have strict orders to try and persuade you by fair means, or, in case of your refusal, to throw you into prison.

GOETZ. Into prison! — Me?

COMMISSIONER. Where you may expect your fate from the hands of justice, since you will not take it from those of mercy.

GOETZ. To prison! You abuse the imperial power! To prison! That was not the emperor's command. What, ye traitors, to dig a pit for me, and hang out your oath, your

knightly honour as the bait! To promise me permission to ward myself on parole, and then again to break your treaty!

COMMISSIONER. We owe no faith to robbers.

GOETZ. Wert thou not the representative of my sovereign, whom I respect even in the vilest counterfeit, thou shouldst swallow that word, or choke upon it. I was engaged in an honourable feud. Thou mightest thank God, and magnify thyself before the world, hadst thou ever done as gallant a deed as that with which I now stand charged. (*The COMMISSIONER makes a sign to the MAGISTRATE of Heilbronn, who rings a bell*) Not for the sake of paltry gain, not to wrest followers or lands from the weak and the defenceless, have I sallied forth. To rescue my page and defend my own person — see ye any rebellion in that? The emperor and his magnates, reposing on their pillows, would never have felt our need. I have, God be praised, one hand left, and I have done well to use it.

*Enter a party of Artizans armed with halberds and swords*

GOETZ. What means this?

COMMISSIONER. You will not listen. — Seize him!

GOETZ. Let none come near me who is not a very Hungarian ox. One salutation from my iron fist shall cure him of head-ache, tooth-ache, and every other ache under the wide heaven! (*They rush upon him. He strikes one down; and snatches a sword from another. They stand aloof*) Come on! come on! I should like to become acquainted with the bravest among you.

COMMISSIONER. Surrender!

GOETZ. With a sword in my hand! Know ye not that it depends but upon myself to make way through all these hares and gain the open field? But I will teach you how a man should keep his word. Promise me but free ward, and I will give up my sword, and am again your prisoner.

COMMISSIONER. How! Would you treat with the emperor, sword in hand?

GOETZ. God forbid! — only with you and your worthy fraternity! You may go home, good people; you are only

losing your time, and here there is nothing to be got but bruises.

COMMISSIONER. Seize him! What! does not your love for the emperor supply you with courage?

GOETZ. No more than the emperor supplies them with plaister for the wounds their courage would earn them.

*Enter SERJEANT, hastily*

OFFICER. The warder has just discovered from the castle-tower, a troop of more than two hundred horsemen hastening towards the town. Unperceived by us, they have pressed forward from behind the hill, and threaten our walls.

COMMISSIONER. Alas! alas! What can this mean?

*A SOLDIER enters*

SOLDIER. Francis of Sickingen waits at the drawbridge, and informs you that he has heard, how perfidiously you have broken your word to his brother-in-law, and how the Council of Heilbronn have aided and abetted in the treason. He is now come to insist upon justice, and if refused it, threatens, within an hour, to fire the four quarters of your town, and abandon it to be plundered by his vassals.

GOETZ. My gallant brother!

COMMISSIONER. Withdraw, Goetz. (*Exit GOETZ*) What is to be done?

MAGISTRATE. Have compassion upon us and our town! Sickingen is inexorable in his wrath; he will keep his word.

COMMISSIONER. Shall we forget what is due to ourselves and the emperor?

CAPTAIN. If we had but men to enforce it; but situated as we are, a show of resistance would only make matters worse. It is better for us to yield.

MAGISTRATE. Let us apply to Goetz to put in a good word for us. I feel as though I saw the town already in flames.

COMMISSIONER. Let Goetz approach. (*Enter GOETZ*)



GOETZ. What now?

COMMISSIONER. Thou wilt do well to dissuade thy brother-in-law from his rebellious interference. Instead of rescuing thee, he will only plunge thee deeper in destruction, and become the companion of thy fall!

GOETZ (*sees Elizabeth at the door, and speaks to her aside*). Go; tell him instantly to break in and force his way hither, but to spare the town. As for these rascals, if they offer any resistance, let him use force. I care not if I lose my life, provided they are all knocked on the head at the same time.

SCENE III. *A large hall in the Council-House, beset by SICKINGEN'S Troops*

*Enter SICKINGEN and GOETZ*

GOETZ. That was help from heaven. How camest thou so opportunely and unexpectedly, brother?

SICKINGEN. Without witchcraft. I had dispatched two or three messengers to learn how it fared with thee; when I heard of the perjury of these fellows, I set out instantly, and now we have them safe.

GOETZ. I ask nothing but knightly ward upon my parole.

SICKINGEN. You are too noble. Not even to avail yourself of the advantage which the honest man has over the perjurer! They are in the wrong, and we will not give them cushions to sit upon. They have shamefully abused the imperial authority, and, if I know anything of the emperor, you might safely insist upon more favourable terms. You ask too little.

GOETZ. I have ever been content with little.

SICKINGEN. And therefore that little has always been denied thee. My proposal is, that they shall release your servants, and permit you all to return to your castle on parole — you can promise not to leave it till the emperor's pleasure be known. You will be safer there than here.



GOETZ. They will say my property is escheated to the emperor.

SICKINGEN. Then we will answer thou canst dwell there, and keep it for his service till he restores it to thee again. Let them wriggle like eels in the net, they shall not escape us! They may talk of the imperial dignity — of their commission. We will not mind that. I know the emperor, and have some influence with him. He has ever wished to have thee in his service. You will not be long in your castle without being summoned to serve him.

GOETZ. God grant it ere I forget the use of arms!

SICKINGEN. Valour can never be forgotten, as it can never be learnt. Fear nothing! When thy affairs are settled, I will repair to court, where my enterprises begin to ripen. Good fortune seems to smile on them. I want only to sound the emperor's mind. The towns of Triers and Pfalz as soon expect that the sky should fall, as that I shall come down upon their heads. But I will come like a hail storm! and if I am successful, thou shalt soon be brother to an elector. I had hoped for thy assistance in this undertaking.

GOETZ (*looks at his hand*). O! that explains the dream I had the night before I promised Maria to Weislingen. I thought he vowed eternal fidelity, and held my iron hand so fast that it loosened from the arm. Alas! I am at this moment more defenceless than when it was shot away. Weislingen! Weislingen!

SICKINGEN. Forget the traitor! We will thwart his plans, and undermine his authority, till shame and remorse shall gnaw him to death. I see, I see the downfall of our enemies. — Goetz — only half a year more!

GOETZ. Thy soul soars high! I know not why, but for some time past no fair prospects have dawned upon me. I have been ere now in sore distress — I have been a prisoner before — but never did I experience such a depression.

SICKINGEN. Fortune gives courage. Come, let us to the bigwigs. They have had time enough to deliberate, let us take the trouble upon ourselves.

[*Exeunt*]

SCENE IV. *The Castle of Adelaide — Augsburg*ADELAIDE and WEISLINGEN *discovered*

ADELAIDE. This is detestable.

WEISLINGEN. I have gnashed my teeth. So good a plan — so well followed out — and after all to leave him in possession of his castle! That cursed Sickingen!

ADELAIDE. The council should not have consented.

WEISLINGEN. They were in the net. What else could they do? Sickingen threatened them with fire and sword, — the haughty, vindictive man! I hate him! His power waxes like a mountain torrent — let it but gain a few brooks, and others come pouring to its aid.

ADELAIDE. Have they no emperor?

WEISLINGEN. My dear wife, he waxes old and feeble; he is only the shadow of what he was. When he heard what had been done, and I and the other counsellors murmured indignantly: "Let them alone!" said he; "I can spare my old Goetz his little fortress, and if he remains quiet there, what have you to say against him?" We spoke of the welfare of the state: "Oh," said he, "that I had always had counsellors who would have urged my restless spirit to consult more the happiness of individuals!"

ADELAIDE. He has lost the spirit of a prince!

WEISLINGEN. We inveighed against Sickingen! — "He is my faithful servant," said he; "and if he has not acted by my express order, he has performed what I wished better than my plenipotentiaries, and I can ratify what he has done as well after as before."

ADELAIDE. 'Tis enough to drive one mad.

WEISLINGEN. Yet I have not given up all hope. Goetz is on parole to remain quiet in his castle. 'Tis impossible for him to keep his promise, and we shall soon have some new cause of complaint.

ADELAIDE. That is the more likely, as we may hope that the old emperor will soon leave the world, and Charles, his gallant successor, will display a more princely mind.

WEISLINGEN. Charles! He is neither chosen nor crowned.

ADELAIDE. Who does not expect and hope for that event?

WEISLINGEN. You have a great idea of his abilities; one might almost think you looked on him with partial eyes.

ADELAIDE. You insult me, Weislingen. For what do you take me?

WEISLINGEN. I do not mean to offend; but I cannot be silent upon the subject. Charles's marked attentions to you disquiet me.

ADELAIDE. And do I receive them as if ——

WEISLINGEN. You are a woman; and no woman hates those who pay their court to her.

ADELAIDE. This from you?

WEISLINGEN. It cuts me to the heart — the dreadful thought — Adelaide.

ADELAIDE. Can I not cure thee of this folly?

WEISLINGEN. If thou would'st — Thou canst leave the court.

ADELAIDE. But upon what pretence? Art thou not here? Must I leave you and all my friends, to shut myself up with the owls in your solitary castle? No, Weislingen, that will never do; be at rest, thou knowest I love thee.

WEISLINGEN. That is my anchor so long as the cable holds. *[Exit]*

ADELAIDE. Ah! Is it come to this? This was yet wanting. The projects of my bosom are too great to brook thy interruption. Charles — the great, the gallant Charles — the future emperor — shall he be the only man unrewarded by my favour? Think not, Weislingen, to hinder me — else shalt thou to earth; my way lies over thee!

*Enter FRANCIS (with a letter)*

FRANCIS. Here, gracious lady.

ADELAIDE. Hadst thou it from Charles' own hand?

FRANCIS. Yes.

ADELAIDE. What ails thee? Thou look'st so mournful!

FRANCIS. It is your pleasure that I should pine away, and waste my fairest years in agonizing despair.

ADELAIDE (*aside*). I pity him; and how little would it cost me to make him happy. (*Aloud*) Be of good courage, youth! I know thy love and fidelity, and will not be ungrateful.

FRANCIS (*with stifled breath*). If thou wert capable of ingratitude, I could not survive it. There boils not a drop of blood in my veins but what is thine own — I have not a single feeling but to love and to serve thee!

ADELAIDE. Dear Francis!

FRANCIS. You flatter me. (*Bursts into tears*) Does my attachment deserve only to be a stepping stool to another — to see all your thoughts fixed upon Charles?

ADELAIDE. You know not what you wish, and still less what you say.

FRANCIS (*stamping with vexation and rage*). No more will I be your slave, your go-between!

ADELAIDE. Francis, you forget yourself.

FRANCIS. To sacrifice my beloved master and myself ——

ADELAIDE. Out of my sight!

FRANCIS. Gracious lady!

ADELAIDE. Go, betray to thy beloved master the secret of my soul! Fool that I was to take thee for what thou art not.

FRANCIS. Dear lady! you know how I love you.

ADELAIDE. And thou, who wast my friend — so near my heart — go, betray me.

FRANCIS. Rather would I tear my heart from my breast! Forgive me, gentle lady! my heart is too full, my senses desert me.

ADELAIDE. Thou dear, affectionate boy! (*She takes him by both hands, draws him towards her and kisses him. He throws himself weeping upon her neck*) Leave me!

FRANCIS (*his voice choked by tears*). Heavens!

ADELAIDE. Leave me! The walls are traitors. Leave me! (*Breaks from him*) Be but steady in fidelity and love, and the fairest reward is thine.

[Exit

FRANCIS. The fairest reward! Let me but live till that moment — I could murder my father, were he an obstacle to my happiness! [Exit

### SCENE V. *Jaxthausen*

GOETZ *seated at a table with writing materials.* ELIZABETH *beside him with her work.*

GOETZ. This idle life does not suit me. My confinement becomes more irksome every day; I would I could sleep, or persuade myself that quiet is agreeable.

ELIZABETH. Continue writing the account of thy deeds which thou hast commenced. Give into the hands of thy friends evidence to put thine enemies to shame; make a noble posterity acquainted with thy real character.

GOETZ. Alas! writing is but busy idleness; it wearies me. While I am writing what I have done, I lament the misspent time in which I might do more.

ELIZABETH (*takes the writing*). Be not impatient. Thou hast come to thy first imprisonment at Heilbronn.

GOETZ. That was always an unlucky place to me.

ELIZABETH (*reads*). "There were even some of the confederates who told me that I had acted foolishly in appearing before my bitterest enemies, who, as I might suspect, would not deal justly with me." And what didst thou answer? Write on.

GOETZ. I said, "Have I not often risked life and limb for the welfare and property of others, and shall I not do so for the honour of my knightly word?"

ELIZABETH. Thus does fame speak of thee.

GOETZ. They shall not rob me of my honour. They have taken all else from me — property — liberty — everything.

ELIZABETH. I happened once to stand in an inn near the Lords of Miltenberg and Singlingen, who knew me not. Then I was joyful as at the birth of my first-born; for they

extolled thee to each other, and said, — He is the mirror of knighthood, noble and merciful in prosperity, dauntless and true in misfortune.

GOETZ. Let them show me the man to whom I have broken my word. Heaven knows, my ambition has ever been to labour for my neighbour more than for myself, and to acquire the fame of a gallant and irreproachable knight, rather than principalities or power; and, God be praised! I have gained the meed of my labour.

*Enter GEORGE and LERSE with game*

GOETZ. Good luck to my gallant huntsmen!

GEORGE. Such have we become from gallant troopers. Boots can easily be cut down into buskins.

LERSE. The chase is always something — 'tis a kind of war.

GEORGE. Yes; if we were not always crossed by these imperial gamekeepers. Don't you recollect, my lord, how you prophesied we should become huntsmen when the world was turned topsy-turvy? We are become so now without waiting for that.

GOETZ. 'Tis all the same, we are pushed out of our sphere.

GEORGE. These are wonderful times! For eight days a dreadful comet has been seen — all Germany fears that it portends the death of the emperor, who is very ill.

GOETZ. Very ill! Then our career draws to a close.

LERSE. And in the neighbourhood there are terrible commotions; the peasants have made a formidable insurrection.

GOETZ. Where?

LERSE. In the heart of Swabia; they are plundering, burning, and slaying. I fear they will sack the whole country.

GEORGE. It is a horrible warfare! They have already risen in a hundred places, and daily increase in number. A hurricane too has lately torn up whole forests; and in the

place where the insurrection began, two fiery swords have been seen in the sky crossing each other.

GOETZ. Then some of my poor friends and neighbours no doubt suffer innocently.

GEORGE. Alas! that we are pent up thus!

END OF THE FOURTH ACT



## ACT THE FIFTH

SCENE I. *A Village plundered by the insurgent Peasantry. Shrieks and tumult. Women, old Men, and Children fly across the Stage*

OLD MAN. Away! away! let us fly from the murdering dogs.

WOMAN. Sacred heaven! How blood-red is the sky! how blood-red the setting sun!

ANOTHER. That must be fire.

A THIRD. My husband! my husband!

OLD MAN. Away! away! To the wood! [*Exeunt*]

*Enter LINK and Insurgents*

LINK. Whoever opposes you, down with him! The village is ours. Let none of the booty be injured, none be left behind. Plunder clean and quickly. We must soon set fire ——

*Enter METZLER, coming down the hill*

METZLER. How do things go with you, Link?

LINK. Merrily enough, as you see; you are just in time for the fun. — Whence come you?

METZLER. From Weinsberg. There was a jubilee.

LINK. How so?

METZLER. We stabbed them all, in such heaps, it was a joy to see it!

LINK. All whom?

METZLER. Dietrich von Weiler led up the dance. The fool! We were all raging round the church steeple. He looked out and wished to treat with us. — Baf! A ball through his head! Up we rushed like a tempest, and the fellow soon made his exit by the window.

LINK. Huzza!

METZLER (*to the peasants*). Ye dogs, must I find you legs? How they gape and loiter, the asses!



LINK. Set fire! Let them roast in the flames! forward! Push on, ye dolts.

METZLER. Then we brought out Helfenstein, Eltershofen, thirteen of the nobility — eighty in all. They were led out on the plain before Heilbronn. What a shouting and jubilee among our lads as the long row of miserable sinners passed by; they stared at each other, and, Heaven and earth! we surrounded them before they were aware, and then dispatched them all with our pikes.

LINK. Why was I not there?

METZLER. Never in all my life did I see such fun.

LINK. On! on! Bring all out!

PEASANT. All's clear.

LINK. Then fire the village at the four corners.

METZLER. 'Twill make a fine bonfire! Hadst thou but seen how the fellows tumbled over one another, and croaked like frogs! It warmed my heart like a cup of brandy. One Rexinger was there, a fellow, with a white plume, and flaxen locks, who, when he went out hunting, used to drive us before him like dogs, and with dogs. I had not caught sight of him all the while, when suddenly his fool's visage looked me full in the face. Push! went the spear between his ribs, and there he lay stretched on all-fours above his companions. The fellows lay kicking in a heap like the hares that used to be driven together at their grand hunting parties.

LINK. It smokes finely already!

METZLER. Yonder it burns! Come, let us with the booty to the main body.

LINK. Where do they halt?

METZLER. Between this and Heilbronn. They wish to choose a captain whom every one will respect, for we are after all only their equals; they feel this, and turn restive.

LINK. Whom do they propose?

METZLER. Maximilian Stumpf, or Goetz von Berlichingen.

LINK. That would be well. 'Twould give the thing credit should Goetz accept it. He has ever been held a worthy

independent knight. Away, away! We march towards Heilbronn! Pass the word.

METZLER. The fire will light us a good part of the way. Hast thou seen the great comet?

LINK. Yes. It is a dreadful ghastly sign! As we march by night we can see it well. It rises about one o'clock.

METZLER. And is visible but for an hour and a quarter, like an arm brandishing a sword, and bloody red!

LINK. Didst thou mark the three stars at the sword's hilt and point?

METZLER. And the broad haze-coloured stripe illuminated by a thousand streamers like lances, and between them little swords?

LINK. I shuddered with horror. The sky was pale red streaked with ruddy flames, and among them grisly figures with shaggy hair and beards.

METZLER. Did you see them too? And how they all swam about as though in a sea of blood, and struggled in confusion, enough to turn one's brain.

LINK. Away! away! [Exeunt

SCENE II. *Open country. In the distance two villages and an abbey are burning*

KOHL, WILD, MAXIMILIAN STUMF, *Insurgents*

STUMF. You cannot ask me to be your leader; it were bad for you and for me: I am a vassal of the Palsgrave, and how shall I make war against my liege lord? Besides, you would always suspect I did not act from my heart.

KOHL. We knew well thou wouldst make some excuse.

*Enter* GEORGE, LERSE, *and* GOETZ

GOETZ. What would you with me?

KOHL. You must be our captain.

GOETZ. How can I break my knightly word to the emperor. I am under the ban; I cannot quit my territory.

WILD. That's no excuse.

GOETZ. And were I free, and you wanted to deal with the lords and nobles as you did at Weinsberg, laying waste the country round with fire and sword, and should wish me to be an abettor of your shameless, barbarous doings, rather than be your captain, you should slay me like a mad dog!

KOHL. What has been done, cannot be undone.

STUMF. That was just the misfortune, that they had no leader whom they honoured, and who could bridle their fury. I beseech thee, Goetz, accept the office! The princes will be grateful; all Germany will thank thee. It will be for the weal and prosperity of all. The country and its inhabitants will be preserved.

GOETZ. Why dost not thou accept it?

STUMF. I have given them reasons for my refusal.

KOHL. We have no time to waste in useless speeches. Once for all! Goetz, be our chief, or look to thy castle and thy head! Take two hours to consider of it. Guard him!

GOETZ. To what purpose? I am as resolved now as I shall ever be. Why have ye risen up in arms? If to recover your rights and freedom, why do you plunder and lay waste the land? Will you abstain from such evil doings, and act as true men who know what they want? Then will I be your chief for eight days, and help you in your lawful and orderly demands.

WILD. What has been done was done in the first heat, and thy interference is not needed to prevent it for the future.

KOHL. Thou must engage with us at least for a quarter of a year.

STUMF. Say four weeks, that will satisfy both parties.

GOETZ. Then be it so.

KOHL. Your hand!

GOETZ. But you must promise to send the treaty you have made with me in writing to all your troops, and to punish severely those who infringe it.

WILD. Well, it shall be done.

GOETZ. Then I bind myself to you for four weeks.

STUMF. Good fortune to you! In whatever thou doest, spare our noble lord the Palsgrave.

KOHL (*aside*). See that none speak to him without our knowledge.

GOETZ. Lerse, go to my wife. Protect her; you shall soon have news of me.

[*Exeunt* GOETZ, STUMF, GEORGE, LERSE, and some PEASANTS.

*Enter* METZLER, LINK, and their followers

METZLER. Who talks of a treaty? What's the use of a treaty?

LINK. It is shameful to make any such bargain.

KOHL. We know as well what we want as you; and we may do or let alone what we please.

WILD. This raging, and burning, and murdering must have an end some day or other; and by renouncing it just now, we gain a brave leader.

METZLER. How? An end? Thou traitor! why are we here but to avenge ourselves on our enemies, and enrich ourselves at their expense? Some prince's slave has been tampering with thee.

KOHL. Come, Wild, he is like a brute-beast.

[*Exeunt* WILD and KOHL

METZLER. Aye, go your way, no band will stick by you. The villains! Link, we'll set on the others to burn Miltenberg yonder; and if they begin a quarrel about the treaty, we'll cut off the heads of those that made it.

LINK. We have still the greater body of peasants on our side.

[*Exeunt with Insurgents*

SCENE III. *A hill and prospect of the country. In the flat scene a Mill. A body of horsemen*

WEISLINGEN *comes out of the Mill, followed by* FRANCIS and a  
COURIER

WEISLINGEN. My horse! Have you announced it to the other nobles?

COURIER. At least seven standards will meet you in the wood behind Miltenberg. The peasants are marching in that direction. Couriers are dispatched on all sides; the entire

confederacy will soon be assembled. Our plan cannot fail; and they say there is dissension among them.

WEISLINGEN. So much the better. Francis!

FRANCIS. Gracious sir!

WEISLINGEN. Discharge thine errand punctually. I bind it upon thy soul. Give her the letter. She shall from the court to my castle instantly. Thou must see her depart, and bring me notice of it.

FRANCIS. Your commands shall be obeyed.

WEISLINGEN. Tell her she *shall* go. (*To the COURIER*) Lead us by the nearest and best road.

COURIER. We must go round; all the rivers are swollen with the late heavy rains.

#### SCENE IV. *Jaxthausen*

ELIZABETH and LERSE

LERSE. Gracious lady, be comforted!

ELIZABETH. Alas! Lerse, the tears stood in his eyes when he took leave of me. It is dreadful, dreadful!

LERSE. He will return.

ELIZABETH. It is not that. When he went forth to gain honourable victories, never did grief sit heavy at my heart. I then rejoiced in the prospect of his return, which I now dread.

LERSE. So noble a man —

ELIZABETH. Call him not so. There lies the new misery. The miscreants! they threatened to murder his family and burn his castle. Should he return, gloomy, most gloomy shall I see his brow. His enemies will forge scandalous accusations against him, which he will be unable to refute.

LERSE. He will and can.

ELIZABETH. He has broken his parole: — Canst thou deny that?

LERSE. No! he was constrained; what reason is there to condemn him?

ELIZABETH. Malice seeks not reasons, but pretexts. He has become an ally of rebels, malefactors, and murderers: — he has become their chief. Say No to that.

LERSE. Cease to torment yourself and me. Have they not solemnly sworn to abjure all such doings as those at Weinsberg? Did I not myself hear them say, in remorse, that, had not that been done already, it never should have been done? Must not the princes and nobles return him their best thanks for having undertaken the dangerous office of leading these unruly people, in order to restrain their rage, and to save so many lives and possessions?

ELIZABETH. Thou art an affectionate advocate. Should they take him prisoner, deal with him as with a rebel, and bring his grey hairs —— Lerse, I should go mad!

LERSE. Send sleep to refresh her body, dear Father of mankind, if thou deniest comfort to her soul!

ELIZABETH. George has promised to bring news, but he will not be allowed to do so. They are worse than prisoners. Well I know they are watched like enemies. — The gallant boy! he would not leave his master.

LERSE. The very heart within me bled as I left him. — Had you not needed my help, all the terrors of grisly death should not have separated us.

ELIZABETH. I know not where Sickingen is. — Could I but send a message to Maria!

LERSE. Write, then: — I will take care that she receives it.

[*Exit*

## SCENE V. *A Village*

*Enter* GOETZ *and* GEORGE

GOETZ. To horse, George! Quick! I see Miltenberg in flames — Is it thus they keep the treaty? — Ride to them, tell them my purpose. — The murderous incendiaries — I renounce them — Let them make a thieving gipsy their captain, not me! — Quick, George! (*Exit George*) Would that I were a thousand miles hence, at the bottom of the deepest dungeon in Turkey! — Could I but come off with honour from them! I have thwarted them every day, and told them the bitterest truths, in the hope they might weary of me and let me go.



*Enter an Unknown*

UNKNOWN. God save you, gallant Sir!

GOETZ. I thank you! What is your errand? Your name?

UNKNOWN. My name does not concern my business. I come to tell you that your life is in danger. The insurgent leaders are weary of hearing from you such harsh language, and are resolved to rid themselves of you. Speak them fair, or endeavour to escape from them; and God be with you!

[*Exit*

GOETZ. To quit life in this fashion, Goetz, to end thus! But be it so — My death will be the clearest proof to the world that I have had nothing in common with the miscreants.

*Enter Insurgents*

FIRST INSURGENT. Captain, they are prisoners, they are slain!

GOETZ. Who?

SECOND INSURGENT. Those who burned Miltenberg; a troop of confederate cavalry suddenly charged upon them from behind the hill.

GOETZ. They have their reward. O George! George! They have taken him prisoner with the caitiffs — My George! my George!

*Enter Insurgents in confusion*

LINK. Up, sir captain, up! — There is no time to lose — The enemy is at hand, and in force.

GOETZ. Who burned Miltenberg?

METZLER. If you mean to pick a quarrel, we'll soon show you how we'll end it.

KOHL. Look to your own safety and ours; — Up!

GOETZ (*to Metzler*). Darest thou threaten me, thou scoundrel — Thinkest thou to awe me, because thy garments are stained with the Count of Helfenstein's blood?

METZLER. Berlichingen!

GOETZ. Thou mayest call me by my name, and my children will not be ashamed to hear it.

METZLER. Out upon thee, coward? — Prince's slave!  
(*Goetz strikes him down — The others interpose*)

KOHL. Ye are mad! — The enemy are breaking in on all sides, and you quarrel!

LINK. Away! Away! — (*Cries and tumult — The Insurgents fly across the Stage*)

*Enter WEISLINGEN and TROOPERS*

WEISLINGEN. Pursue! Pursue! they fly! — Stop neither for darkness nor rain. — I hear Goetz is among them; look that he escape you not. Our friends say he is sorely wounded. (*Exeunt Troopers*) And when I have caught thee — it will be merciful secretly to execute the sentence of death in prison. Thus he perishes from the memory of man, and then, foolish heart, thou may'st beat more freely.

SCENE VI. *The front of a Gipsy-hut in a wild forest. — Night. — A fire before the hut, at which are seated the mother of the gipsies and a girl*

MOTHER. Throw some fresh straw upon the thatch, daughter: There'll be heavy rain again to night.

*Enter a GIPSY-BOY*

BOY. A dormouse, mother! and look! two field mice!

MOTHER. I'll skin them and roast them for thee, and thou shalt have a cap of their skins. Thou bleedest!

BOY. Dormouse bit me.

MOTHER. Fetch some dead wood, that the fire may burn bright when thy father comes: he will be wet through and through.

*Another gipsy-woman with a child at her back*

FIRST WOMAN. Hast thou had good luck?

SECOND WOMAN. Ill enough. The whole country is in an uproar, one's life is not safe a moment. Two villages are in a blaze.



FIRST WOMAN. Is it fire that glares so yonder? I have been watching it long. One is so accustomed now to fiery signs in the heavens.

*The Captain of the Gipsies enters with three of his gang*

CAPTAIN. Heard ye the wild huntsman?

FIRST WOMAN. He is passing over us now.

CAPTAIN. How the hounds give tongue! Wow! Wow!

SECOND MAN. How the whips crack!

THIRD MAN. And the huntsmen cheer them —  
Hallo — ho!

MOTHER. 'Tis the devil's chase.

CAPTAIN. We have been fishing in troubled waters. The peasants rob each other; there's no harm in our helping them.

SECOND WOMAN. What hast thou got, Wolf?

WOLF. A hare and a capon, a spit, a bundle of linen, three spoons, and a bridle.

STICKS. I have a blanket and a pair of boots, also a flint and tinder-box.

MOTHER. All wet as mire, I'll dry them, give them here!

*(Trampling without)*

CAPTAIN. Hark! — A horse! Go see who it is.

*Enter GOETZ on horseback*

GOETZ. I thank thee, God! I see fire — they are gipsies. — My wounds bleed sorely — my foes are close behind me! — Great God, this is a fearful end!

CAPTAIN. Is it in peace thou comest?

GOETZ. I crave help from you — My wounds exhaust me — assist me to dismount!

CAPTAIN. Help him! — A gallant warrior in look and speech.

WOLF *(aside)*. 'Tis Goetz von Berlichingen!

CAPTAIN. Welcome! welcome! — All that we have is yours.

GOETZ. Thanks, thanks!

CAPTAIN. Come to my hut!

[*Exeunt to the hut*]

SCENE VII. *Inside the Hut*

CAPTAIN, GIPSIES, and GOETZ

CAPTAIN. Call our mother — tell her to bring blood-wort and bandages. (GOETZ *unarms himself*) Here is my holiday doublet.

GOETZ. God reward you! [*The mother binds his wounds*]

CAPTAIN. I rejoice that you are come.

GOETZ. Do you know me?

CAPTAIN. Who does not know you, Goetz? Our lives and heart's blood are yours.

*Enter STICKS*

STICKS. Horsemen are coming through the wood. They are confederates.

CAPTAIN. Your pursuers! They shall not harm you. Away, Sticks, call the others: we know the passes better than they. We shall shoot them ere they are aware of us.

[*Exeunt CAPTAIN and MEN-GIPSIES with their guns*]

GOETZ (*alone*). O Emperor! Emperor! Robbers protect thy children (*A sharp firing*) The wild foresters! Steady and true!

*Enter WOMEN*

WOMEN. Flee, flee! The enemy has overpowered us.

GOETZ. Where is my horse?

WOMEN. Here!

GOETZ. (*Girds on his sword and mounts without his armour*). For the last time shall you feel my arm. I am not so weak yet.

[*Exit. — Tumult*]

WOMEN. He gallops to join our party.

[*Firing*]

*Enter WOLF*

WOLF. Away! Away! All is lost. — The Captain is shot! — Goetz a prisoner.

[*The WOMEN scream and fly into the wood*]

SCENE VIII. ADELAIDE'S *Bed-chamber*

*Enter ADELAIDE with a letter*

ADELAIDE. He or I! The tyrant — to threaten me! We will anticipate him. Who glides through the anti-chamber? [*A low knock at the door*] Who is there?

FRANCIS (*in a low voice*). Open, gracious lady!

ADELAIDE. Francis! He well deserves that I should admit him. [*Opens the door*]

FRANCIS. (*Throws himself on her neck*) My dear, my gracious lady!

ADELAIDE. What audacity! If any one should hear you?

FRANCIS. O — all — all are asleep.

ADELAIDE. What wouldst thou?

FRANCIS. I cannot rest. The threats of my master, — your fate, — my heart.

ADELAIDE. He was incensed against me when you parted from him?

FRANCIS. He was as I have never seen him. — To my castle, said he, she must — she *shall* go.

ADELAIDE. And shall we obey?

FRANCIS. I know not, dear lady!

ADELAIDE. Thou foolish, infatuated boy! Thou dost not see where this will end. Here he knows I am in safety. He has long had designs on my freedom, and therefore wishes to get me to his castle — there he will have power to use me as his hate shall dictate.

FRANCIS. He shall not!

ADELAIDE. Wilt thou prevent him?

FRANCIS. He shall not!

ADELAIDE. I foresee the whole misery of my fate. He will tear me forcibly from his castle to immure me in a cloister.

FRANCIS. Hell and damnation!

ADELAIDE. Wilt thou rescue me?

FRANCIS. Anything! Everything!

ADELAIDE. (*Throws herself weeping upon his neck*) Francis! O save me!

FRANCIS. He shall fall. I will plant my foot upon his neck.

ADELAIDE. No violence! You shall carry a submissive letter to him announcing obedience — Then give him this vial in his wine.

FRANCIS. Give it me! Thou shalt be free!

ADELAIDE. Free! — And then no more shalt thou need to come to my chamber trembling and in fear. No more shall I need anxiously to say, “Away, Francis! the morning dawns.”

SCENE IX. *Street before the Prison at Heilbronn*

ELIZABETH and LERSE

LERSE. Heaven relieve your distress, gracious lady! Maria is come.

ELIZABETH. God be praised! Lerse, we have sunk into dreadful misery. My worst forebodings are realized! A prisoner — thrown as an assassin and malefactor into the deepest dungeon.

LERSE. I know all.

ELIZABETH. Thou knowest nothing. Our distress is too — too great! His age, his wounds, a slow fever — and, more than all, the despondency of his mind, to think that this should be his end.

LERSE. Aye, and that Weislinger should be commissioner!

ELIZABETH. Weislingen?

LERSE. They have acted with unheard-of severity. Metzler has been burnt alive — hundreds of his associates broken upon the wheel, beheaded, quartered, and impaled. All the country round looks like a slaughter-house, where human flesh is cheap.

ELIZABETH. Weislingen commissioner! O Heaven! a ray of hope! Maria shall go to him: he cannot refuse her. He

had ever a compassionate heart, and when he sees her whom he once loved so much, whom he has made so miserable — Where is she?

LERSE. Still at the inn.

ELIZABETH. Take me to her. She must away instantly.  
I fear the worst. [*Exeunt*]

SCENE X. *An Apartment in Weislingen's Castle*

WEISLINGEN *alone*

WEISLINGEN. I am so ill, so weak — all my bones are hollow — this wretched fever has consumed their very marrow. No rest, no sleep, by day or night! and when I slumber, such fearful dreams! Last night methought I met Goetz in the forest. He drew his sword, and defied me to combat. I grasped mine, but my hand failed me. He darted on me a look of contempt, sheathed his weapon, and passed on. He is a prisoner; yet I tremble to think of him. Miserable man! Thine own voice has condemned him; yet thou tremblest like a malefactor at his very shadow. And shall he die? Goetz! Goetz! we mortals are not our own masters. Fiends have empire over us, and shape our actions after their own hellish will, to goad us to perdition. (*Sits down*) Weak! Weak! Why are my nails so blue? A cold, clammy, wasting, sweat drenches every limb. Everything swims before my eyes. Could I but sleep! Alas!

*Enter MARIA*

WEISLINGEN. Mother of God! Leave me in peace — leave me in peace! This spectre was yet wanting. Maria is dead, and she appears to the traitor. Leave me, blessed spirit! I am wretched enough.

MARIA. Weislingen, I am no spirit. I am Maria.

WEISLINGEN. It is her voice!

MARIA. I come to beg my brother's life of thee. He is guiltless, however culpable he may appear.

WEISLINGEN. Hush! Maria — Angel of heaven as thou art, thou bringest with thee the torments of hell! Speak no more!

MARIA. And must my brother die? Weislingen, it is horrible that I should have to tell thee he is guiltless; that I should be compelled to come as a suppliant to restrain thee from a most fearful murder. Thy soul to its inmost depths is possessed by evil powers. Can this be Adelbert?

WEISLINGEN. Thou seest — the consuming breath of the grave hath swept over me — my strength sinks in death — I die in misery, and thou comest to drive me to despair — Could I but tell thee all, thy bitterest hate would melt to sorrow and compassion. Oh Maria! Maria!

MARIA. Weislingen, my brother is pining in a dungeon — The anguish of his wounds — his age — O hadst thou the heart to bring his grey hairs — Weislingen, we should despair.

WEISLINGEN. Enough! — (*Rings a hand-bell*)

*Enter FRANCIS, in great agitation*

FRANCIS. Gracious sir!

WEISLINGEN. Those papers, Francis. (*He gives them. WEISLINGEN tears open a packet, and shows MARIA a paper*) Here is thy brother's death-warrant signed!

MARIA. God in heaven!

WEISLINGEN. And thus I tear it. He shall live! But can I restore what I have destroyed? Weep not so, Francis! Dear youth, my wretchedness lies deeply at thy heart.

[*FRANCIS throws himself at his feet, and clasps his knees*

MARIA (*apart*). He is ill — very ill. The sight of him rends my heart. I loved him! And now that I again approach him, I feel how dearly —

WEISLINGEN. Francis, arise and cease to weep — I may recover! While there is life, there is hope.

FRANCIS. You cannot! You must die!

WEISLINGEN. Must?

FRANCIS (*beside himself*). Poison! poison! — from your wife! I — I gave it. [*Rushes out*

WEISLINGEN. Follow him, Maria — he is desperate.

[*Exit MARIA*



Poison from my wife! Alas! alas! I feel it. Torture and death!

MARIA (*within*). Help! Help!

WEISLINGEN. (*Attempts in vain to rise*) God! I cannot.

MARIA. (*Re-entering*) He is gone! He threw himself desperately from a window of the hall into the river.

WEISLINGEN. It is well with him! — Thy brother is out of danger! The other commissioners, especially Seckendorf, are his friends. They will readily allow him to ward himself upon his knightly word. Farewell, Maria! Now go.

MARIA. I will stay with thee — thou poor forsaken one!

WEISLINGEN. Poor and forsaken indeed! O God, thou art a terrible avenger! My wife!

MARIA. Remove from thee that thought. Turn thy soul to the throne of mercy.

WEISLINGEN. Go, thou gentle spirit! leave me to my misery! Horrible! Even thy presence, Maria, even the attendance of my only comforter, is agony.

MARIA (*aside*). Strengthen me, heaven! My soul droops with his.

WEISLINGEN. Alas! alas! Poison from my wife! My Francis seduced by the wretch! She waits — listens to every horse's hoof for the messenger who brings her the news of my death. And thou too, Maria, wherefore art thou come to awaken every slumbering recollection of my sins? Leave me, leave me that I may die!

MARIA. Let me stay! Thou art alone: think I am thy nurse. Forget all. May God forgive thee as freely as I do!

WEISLINGEN. Thou spirit of love! pray for me! pray for me! My heart is seared.

MARIA. There is forgiveness for thee. — Thou art exhausted.

WEISLINGEN. I die! I die! and yet I cannot die. In the fearful contest between life and death lie the torments of hell.

MARIA. Heavenly Father, have compassion upon him! Grant him but one token of thy love, that his heart may be opened to comfort, and his soul to the hope of eternal life, even in the agony of death!

SCENE XI. *A narrow vault dimly illuminated. The Judges of the Secret Tribunal discovered seated, all muffled in black cloaks*

ELDEST JUDGE. Judges of the Secret Tribunal, sworn by the cord and the steel to be inflexible in justice, to judge in secret, and to avenge in secret, like the Deity! Are your hands clean and your hearts pure? Raise them to heaven, and cry, — Woe upon evil-doers!

ALL. Woe! woe!

ELDEST JUDGE. Cryer, begin the diet of judgment.

CRYER. I cry, I cry for accusation against evil-doers! He whose heart is pure, whose hands are clean to swear by the cord and the steel, let him lift up his voice and call upon the steel and the cord for vengeance! vengeance! vengeance!

ACCUSER (*comes forward*). My heart is pure from misdeed, and my hands are clean from innocent blood: God pardon my sins of thought, and prevent their execution. I raise my hand on high, and cry for Vengeance! vengeance! vengeance!

ELDEST JUDGE. Vengeance upon whom?

ACCUSER. I call upon the cord and the steel for vengeance against Adelaide of Weislingen. She has committed adultery and murder. She has poisoned her husband by the hands of his servant — the servant hath slain himself — the husband is dead.

ELDEST JUDGE. Dost thou swear by the God of truth, that thy accusation is true?

ACCUSER. I swear!

ELDEST JUDGE. Dost thou invoke upon thine own head the punishment of murder and adultery, should thy accusation be found false?

ACCUSER. On my head be it.

ELDEST JUDGE. Your voices?

*[They converse a few minutes in whispers]*

ACCUSER. Judges of the Secret Tribunal, what is your sentence upon Adelaide of Weislingen, accused of murder and adultery?



ELDEST JUDGE. She shall die! — she shall die a bitter and twofold death! By the double doom of the steel and the cord shall she expiate the double crime. Raise your hands to heaven and cry, Woe, woe upon her! Be she delivered into the hands of the avenger.

ALL. Woe! woe!

ELDEST JUDGE. Woe! Avenger, come forth!

*[A man advances]*

Here, take thou the cord and the steel! Within eight days shalt thou blot her out from before the face of heaven: wheresoever thou findest her, down with her into the dust. Judges, ye that judge in secret and avenge in secret like the Deity, keep your hearts from wickedness, and your hands from innocent blood!

*[The Scene closes]*

## SCENE XII. *The Court of an Inn*

LERSE and MARIA

MARIA. The horses have rested long enough; we will away, Lerse.

LERSE. Stay till to-morrow; this is a dreadful night.

MARIA. Lerse, I cannot rest till I have seen my brother. Let us away: the weather is clearing up — we may expect a fair morning.

LERSE. Be it as you will.

## SCENE XIII. *The Prison at Heilbronn*

GOETZ and ELIZABETH

ELIZABETH. I entreat thee, dear husband, speak to me. Thy silence alarms me; thy spirit consumes thee, pent up within thy breast. Come, let me see thy wounds; they mend daily. In this desponding melancholy I know thee no longer!

GOETZ. Seekest thou Goetz? He is long since gone! Piece by piece have they robbed me of all I held dear — my hand, my property, my freedom, my good name! My life! of what value is it to me? What news of George? Is Lerse gone to seek him?

ELIZABETH. He is, my love! Be of good cheer; things may yet take a favourable turn.

GOETZ. He whom God hath stricken lifts himself up no more! I best know the load I have to bear. — To misfortune I am inured. — But now it is not Weislingen alone, not the peasants alone, not the death of the emperor, nor my wounds — it is the whole united — My hour is come! I had hoped it should have been like my life. But His will be done!

ELIZABETH. Wilt thou not eat something?

GOETZ. Nothing, my love! See how the sun shines yonder!

ELIZABETH. It is a fine spring day!

GOETZ. My love, wilt thou ask the keeper's permission for me to walk in his little garden for half an hour, that I may look upon the clear face of heaven, the pure air, and the blessed sun?

ELIZABETH. I will — and he will readily grant it.

## SCENE THE LAST. *The Prison Garden*

LERSE *and* MARIA

MARIA. Go in, and see how it stands with them.

[*Exit* LERSE]

*Enter* ELIZABETH *and* KEEPER

ELIZABETH (*to the* KEEPER). God reward your kindness and attention to my husband! (*Exit* KEEPER) Maria, how hast thou sped?

MARIA. My brother is safe! But my heart is torn asunder. Weislingen is dead! poisoned by his wife. My husband is in danger — the princes are becoming too powerful for him: they say he is surrounded and besieged.

ELIZABETH. Believe not the rumour; and let not Goetz hear it.

MARIA. How is it with him?

ELIZABETH. I feared he would not survive till thy return: the hand of the Lord is heavy on him. And George is dead!

MARIA. George! The gallant boy!

ELIZABETH. When the miscreants were burning Miltenberg, his master sent him to check their villany. A body of cavalry charged upon them: Had they all behaved as George, they must all have had as clear a conscience. Many were killed, and George among them; he died the death of a warrior.

MARIA. Does Goetz know it?

ELIZABETH. We conceal it from him. He questions me ten times a-day concerning him, and sends me as often to see what is become of him. I fear to give his heart this last wound.

MARIA. O God! what are the hopes of this world!

*Enter* GOETZ, LERSE, *and* KEEPER

GOETZ. Almighty God! how lovely it is beneath thy heaven! How free! The trees put forth their buds, and all the world awakes to hope. — Farewell, my children! my roots are cut away, my strength totters to the grave.

ELIZABETH. Shall I not send Lerse to the convent for thy son, that thou may'st once more see and bless him?

GOETZ. Let him be; he needs not my blessing, he is holier than I. — Upon our wedding-day, Elizabeth, could I have thought I should die thus! — My old father blessed us, and prayed for a succession of noble and gallant sons. — God, thou hast not heard him. I am the last. — Lerse, thy countenance cheers me in the hour of death, more than in our most daring fights: then, my spirit encouraged thine; now, thine supports mine — Oh that I could but once more see George, and sun myself in his look! You turn away and weep. He is dead? George is dead? — Then die Goetz! Thou hast outlived thyself, outlived the noblest of thy servants — How died he? Alas! they took him among the incendiaries, and he has been executed?

ELIZABETH. No! he was slain at Miltenberg! while fighting like a lion for his freedom.

GOETZ. God be praised! He was the kindest youth under the sun, and one of the bravest — Now release my soul. My poor wife! I leave thee in a wicked world. Lerse,

forsake her not! Lock your hearts more carefully than your doors. The age of fraud is at hand, treachery will reign unchecked. The worthless will gain the ascendancy by cunning, and the noble will fall into their net. Maria, may God restore thy husband to thee! may he not fall the deeper for having risen so high! Selbitz is dead, and the good emperor, and my George —— Give me a draught of water! ——

Heavenly air! Freedom! freedom! *[He dies*

ELIZABETH. Freedom is above! above — with thee!  
The world is a prison-house.

MARIA. Noble man! Woe to this age that rejected thee!

LERSE. And woe to the future, that shall misjudge thee!

THE END



1162296R0

Printed in Great Britain by  
Amazon.co.uk, Ltd.,  
Marston Gate.





ISBN 0-543-94237-6



90000



9 780543 942371